Using Korean

This is a guide to Korean language usage for students who have already acquired the basics of the language. Unlike a conventional grammar, it highlights those areas of vocabulary and grammar which cause the most difficulty to English speakers. Clear, readable and easy to consult, it is essential for all those who wish to take their Korean beyond the beginner’s level.

- ideal for those who wish to extend their knowledge of Korean and organize accumulated bits of information into a comprehensive picture
- designed to promote the fluency and accuracy vital to effective communication
- focuses on the appropriateness of different language styles
- provides excellent coverage of proverbs, idioms, and sound symbolism
- offers up-to-date guidance on points of grammar and vocabulary
- tailored to the needs of the English-speaking user

MHO CHOO is Adjunct Associate Professor in the Department of Linguistics at the University of Hawaii at Manoa.

HYE-YOUNG KWAK is based in the Department of Linguistics at the University of Hawaii at Manoa.
Other titles in this series

Using French (third edition)
A guide to contemporary usage
R. E. Batchelor and M. H. Offord
(ISBN 0 521 64177 2 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 64593 X paperback)

Using Spanish (second edition)
A guide to contemporary usage
R. E. Batchelor and C. J. Pountain
(ISBN 0 521 00481 0 paperback)

Using German (second edition)
A guide to contemporary usage
Martin Durrell
(ISBN 0 521 53000 8 paperback)

Using Russian (second edition)
A guide to contemporary usage
Derek Offord and Natalia Goglitysyna
(ISBN 0 521 54761 X paperback)

Using Italian
A guide to contemporary usage
J. J. Kinder and V. M. Savini
(ISBN 0 521 48556 8 paperback)

Using Japanese
A guide to contemporary usage
William Mclure
(ISBN 0 521 64155 1 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 64614 6 paperback)

Using Portuguese
A guide to contemporary usage
Ana Sofia Ganho and Timothy McGovern
(ISBN 0 521 79663 6 paperback)

Using Arabic
A guide to contemporary usage
Mahdi Alish
(ISBN 0 521 64832 7 paperback)

Using Spanish Synonyms
R. E. Batchelor
(ISBN 0 521 44160 9 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 44694 5 paperback)

Using German Synonyms
Martin Durrell
(ISBN 0 521 46552 4 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 46954 6 paperback)

Using Italian Synonyms
Howard Moss and Vanna Motta
(ISBN 0 521 47506 6 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 47573 2 paperback)

Using French Synonyms
R. E. Batchelor and M. H. Offord
(ISBN 0 521 37277 1 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 37878 8 paperback)

Using Russian Synonyms
Terence Wade and NiJole White
(ISBN 0 521 79405 6 paperback)

Using French Vocabulary
Jean H. Duffy
(ISBN 0 521 57040 9 hardback)
(ISBN 0 521 57851 5 paperback)

Using German Vocabulary
Sarah Fagan
(ISBN 0 521 79700 4 paperback)

Using Italian Vocabulary
Marcel Danesi
(ISBN 0 521 52425 3 paperback)

Using Spanish Vocabulary
R. E. Batchelor and Miguel A. San José
(ISBN 0 521 00862 X paperback)

Using Arabic Synonyms
Dilworth Parkinson
(ISBN 0 521 00176 5 paperback)

Using Russian Vocabulary
Terence Wade
(ISBN 0 521 61236 5 paperback)
Using Korean
A guide to contemporary usage

MIHO CHOO

with

HYE-YOUNG KWAK
# Contents

Acknowledgements ix  

**Style and usage** 1  

1 Sentence endings 3  
1.1 Statements and questions 3  
1.2 What about commands? 7  
1.3 What about proposals? 8  
1.4 Speech samples 9  
1.5 When it comes to writing 11  
1.6 Writing samples 13  
1.7 A few minor styles 15  

2 Honorifics 17  
2.1 Subject honorification: the suffix -様 17  
2.2 Object honorification 26  
2.3 Honorific nouns 29  
2.4 Honorific particles 30  
2.5 Use of honorifics in several basic expressions 30  
2.6 Non-use of honorific expressions in impersonal language 31  

3 Address terms and pronouns 32  
3.1 Address terms (敬 私) 32  
3.2 Pronouns and related words 37  

4 Language for daily situations 46  
4.1 Greetings 46  
4.2 Leave-taking 47  
4.3 Expressing and responding to gratitude 48  
4.4 Apologies and regrets 50  
4.5 ‘Excuse me but…’ 51  
4.6 Expressing condolences and encouragement 52  
4.7 Extending an invitation or making an offer 53  
4.8 Telephone expressions 53  
4.9 Congratulations and good wishes 55
5 Conversational bridges
5.1 Fillers 56
5.2 Transition expressions 58
5.3 Interjections 64

6 Softening strategies 67
6.1 Use of questions in place of commands and proposals 67
6.2 Softening with the help of special verbs 68
6.3 Softening with the help of special endings 71
6.4 Other softening strategies 73

7 Local dialects 75
7.1 Ch’ungch’ông dialect 75
7.2 Ch’olla dialect 75
7.3 Kyǒngsang dialect 76
7.4 Cheju dialect 77
7.5 Hamgyǒng dialect 77
7.6 P’yǒng’‘an dialect 77

8 Written versus spoken language 78
8.1 Grammatical differences 78
8.2 Vocabulary differences 79
8.3 Spelling/pronunciation differences 80

Vocabulary 83

9 Native and borrowed words 85
9.1 Native Korean and Sino-Korean words 85
9.2 Loan words 89

10 Word formation 93
10.1 Compounding 93
10.2 Reduplication 95
10.3 Prefixation 96
10.4 Suffixation 100
10.5 Abbreviations 115
10.6 Some recently created expressions 117

11 Some vocabulary contrasts 119
11.1 Verbs of wearing 119
11.2 Verbs of taking off 122
11.3 Verbs of playing 123
11.4 Verbs of cleaning 124
# PROVERBS AND IDIOMS

12.1 Proverbs 126
12.2 Idioms 136

# SOUND SYMBOLISM

13.1 How sound symbolism works 150
13.2 Onomatopoeia (의성어) 152
13.3 Mimetic expressions (의태어) 157
13.4 Expressions denoting feeling and touch (의경어) 163

# NUMBERS

14.1 Native Korean numbers 166
14.2 Sino-Korean numbers 167
14.3 Native versus Sino-Korean numbers 169
14.4 Expressions of quantity 178

# GRAMMAR

15.1 Action verbs versus descriptive verbs 183
15.2 Intransitive verbs versus transitive verbs 185
15.3 Special sub-types of intransitive verbs 188
15.4 Special sub-types of transitive verbs 194

16.1 Tense and aspect on sentence-final verbs 199
16.2 Tense and aspect on non-final verbs 211
16.3 More aspect-related contrasts 214

17.1 Requests, suggestions, permission, and prohibition 219
17.2 Obligation, ability, and possibility 222
17.3 Regret, desire, and doubt 224
17.4 Degree 225
17.5 Evidentiality 226
17.6 Special verb-endings expressing the speaker’s attitude 230

# NEGATION

18.1 How to negate statements and questions 233
18.2 How to negate commands and proposals 236
18.3 Negative form, but positive meaning 237
18.4 Expressions that require negative verbs 238
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td><strong>Particles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>Omission of particles</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>-이/가</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>-은/는</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>-을/를</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>-도</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>-의</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>-에</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>-에서</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.9</td>
<td>-에 게(서)/한테(서)</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.10</td>
<td>-(으)로</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.11</td>
<td>-와/과, -하고, and -(이)랑</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.12</td>
<td>-만, -뿐, and -밖에</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.13</td>
<td>-부터</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.14</td>
<td>-까지</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.15</td>
<td>-조차 and -마저</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.16</td>
<td>-(이)나</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.17</td>
<td>Miscellaneous other particles</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td><strong>Comparison</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>How to express equality and similarity</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2</td>
<td>How to express differences</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>How to express superlatives</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>How to express proportions and gradation</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td><strong>Conjunctives</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>Combination of equal-status clauses</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>Combination of unequal-status clauses</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td><strong>Complex sentences</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.1</td>
<td>Quoted/reported clauses</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.2</td>
<td>Adnominal clauses</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.3</td>
<td>-지 clauses</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.4</td>
<td>Nominalization</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

English index 318
Korean index 321
Acknowledgements

Writing this book has been a huge challenge, and it would have been impossible without one very special person – William O’Grady. We are deeply indebted to him for his endless enthusiasm for the project, not to mention his enormous help from beginning to end with matters of content, translation, editing, and even formatting.

We are also grateful to the anonymous reviewers from Cambridge University Press for their valuable comments and advice, to Albert Rue Burch for his careful reading of various parts of our book, to Hae-Young Kim for sharing her lecture notes with us, and to Boonho Choo, Eun Young Kwak, Yong Won Kwak, Hyang Suk Song, and Jin Sun Choe for their assistance with the selection of Korean examples. Sang-gu Kang and Kyu-seek Hwang deserve our thanks for helping with the translation of the Korean examples into English.

Finally, we gratefully acknowledge the patience and support of the editorial and production team at Cambridge University Press, especially Helen Barton, Rosina Di Marzo, Sheila Sadler, Kate Brett, Sarah Parker, and Peter Ducker.
Style and usage
1 Sentence endings

Like English, Korean has different styles of speaking and writing that reflect the genre, the setting, and the audience. A chat in a gym with a friend employs quite different words and constructions than a news report to a national TV audience. This chapter focuses on the use of sentence-final verb endings, whose selection is sensitive to whether the genre is written or spoken, to whether the setting is formal or informal, and to how close the speaker feels to the hearer. (The verb form is also affected by the relationship between the speaker and the referent of the subject of the sentence, as we will see in the next chapter.)

1.1 Statements and questions

Style in Korean can be marked by sentence endings. There are two major types of formal endings (존댓말) and two types of casual endings (반말). Whereas 존댓말 signals general courtesy and the more formal use of language, 반말 connotes intimacy and informality. The two tables below illustrate these contrasts for the basic (present tense) forms of two action verbs, two descriptive verbs, and the copula verb.

**Statements (with a non-honorific subject):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합니다 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>줍니다; 받습니다</td>
<td>줬어요; 받아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쪼웁니다; 작습니다</td>
<td>쪼렇다; 작다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생입니다</td>
<td>학생이에요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions (with a non-honorific subject):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합니다 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>줍니다; 받습니다</td>
<td>줬어요; 받아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쪼웁니다; 작습니다</td>
<td>쪼렇다; 작다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생입니다</td>
<td>학생이에요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** The 하나 style is also used for neutral/impersonal writing (see 1.5).

**NOTE:** -느냐 instead of -냐 is also possible with action verbs (주느냐, 받느냐), but it is rarely used these days.
1.1.1 Distance versus politeness

It is often asserted that 존댓말 is necessarily ‘polite’ and that 반말 is ‘non-polite’ or even ‘impolite,’ but this is not right – no one style is polite (or not polite) in all situations. A formal style can in fact be considered impolite and distant if used with a close friend. The casual styles are by nature friendly and affectionate, but if they are used to the wrong person or in the wrong situation, they can be impolite. Ultimately, politeness lies in behaving in a considerate manner toward others. Each of the four styles is ‘polite’ as long as it is properly used.

Use of the formal 합니/합니까 and 해요 styles indicates a psychological distance between the speaker and the hearer. For that reason, these styles are used between people whose relationship is socially constrained in some way. They may have just been introduced, they may not know each other well, or they may be participating in a public meeting. Perhaps they have a very different social status, or perhaps their friendship developed after college. It’s even possible that they are simply old. A 60-year-old son could say 어머님, 어디 가세요? to his 85-year-old mother, whereas a young child would usually say 엄마, 어디 가?

Some Korean textbooks equate formal styles with speech to people of higher social standing or greater age, and casual styles with speech to someone who is younger or of lower social status. But this is misleading. Which style, for example, should students use to a younger waitress? The answer is that a formal 존댓말 style should be employed – unless the waitress is a close friend with whom they feel comfortable enough to use a casual 반말 style.

You should of course use 존댓말 when speaking to a social superior, but even the other person’s lower social rank or younger age does not warrant use of 반말. Regardless of age or status, you should not use 반말 to a stranger (unless he or she is a pre-adolescent child). This is why the only permissible first-time greeting is the highly formal 처음 뵐겠습니다 ‘How do you do?’ The point is also made clear by the expression 언제 뵐다고 반말이야! (‘When did he ever see me – what justifies his using 반말 to me!’).

This doesn’t mean that you should stick with 존댓말 no matter who you are speaking to. 존댓말 may be less likely than 반말 to get you into trouble, but it is not appropriate between close friends, especially for young people like high-school or college students.

Closeness, as well as respect, is highly valued in Korean culture. Use of the formal style can hurt the feelings of those who wish to be addressed in a more friendly way. A friendship may be damaged by use of 존댓말, and a couple in a romantic relationship who normally use an intimate casual style with each other will suddenly switch to a formal style after they fight, to demonstrate the distance they feel from each other.
1.1.2  *Formal versus casual – some general guidelines*

Here are some general guidelines that will help you decide whether a formal style is called for. As you can see, both the speaker–hearer relationship and the setting in which the speech act takes place are relevant to the choice of style.

- A formal style is necessary for addressing strangers or casual acquaintances, regardless of their age or social status (unless they are pre-adolescent children). The use of 반말 is automatic among close friends from childhood up to college (as long as they are in a similar age group), but it takes time and mutual agreement before it is used in a relationship that develops after college. The question 말 놓을까요/틀까요? ‘Shall we switch to a casual style?’ might be asked before the transition to 반말.

- Use of a formal ending is required when the other person has a higher social status, so you should always use a formal ending to your boss or professor, for example.

- If you are the boss or professor, you have a choice between a formal and a casual style, unless the other person is older than you (in which case 존댓말 has to be used). In most cases, the choice depends on the setting, your personality (whether you like to be formal or casual), the age of your students or social subordinates (the older they are, the more appropriate a formal ending), and the familiarity you feel with them. It is common for a boss or senior person to mix occasional 반말 with 존댓말 when his feelings are not clear-cut (e.g., he doesn’t feel comfortable using just 반말, but 존댓말 only is too formal). When addressed in 존댓말 by a teacher or boss in a one-on-one situation, a younger person may feel uncomfortable, in which case (s)he may ask, 말씀 낮추세요/놓으세요 ‘Please speak to me in a casual style.’

- Younger speakers are often encouraged to use 반말 when speaking with parents and older relatives in close-knit families, and even with older but extremely close friends. There is perhaps more 반말 in the speech of a husband to his wife than vice versa among older couples, but mutual 반말 is common these days in the younger generation between romantic partners or husband and wife.

- A formal style is called for in public settings such as meetings, interviews, conferences, and so on.

One factor that supersedes all others in the choice of style is the setting. Even two people who are in a romantic relationship and who normally use 반말 to each other must switch to 존댓말 if they are in a formal meeting with other people. Professors who are close friends and who chat with each other in 반말 while drinking 소주 at a 포장마차, will switch to 존댓말 if they are at a formal faculty meeting. And even elementary school students who use nothing but 반말 to each
other will switch to 존댓말 during formal classroom meetings (called ‘Home Room’ in Korea).

1.1.3 합니까/합니까 style versus 해요 style

The 합니까/합니까 style is usually mixed with the 해요 style even in formal situations, except in the case of news broadcasts, ceremonies, job interviews, public lectures and announcements, and so on, where the 합니까/합니까 style is used almost exclusively. In general, the more formal the situation is, the more the 합니까/합니까 style will be favored over the 해요 style. (Men tend to use the 합니까/합니까 style more than women do.)

In comparison to the 합니까/합니까 style, the more widely used 해요 style sounds soft and gentle. Most TV talk shows are conducted in the 해요 style, occasionally mixed with the 합니까/합니까 style, and it is employed in daily conversations with adult acquaintances or strangers. It is also used with close friends if the friendship developed after college or in adulthood, and with elder family members if ‘respect’ is more valued than ‘closeness.’

In addition to its use with verbs, -요 (-이요 after a consonant) can also be added to just about any word or phrase that stands alone as a separate utterance (책이요, 학교에서요, 그럼요, 건강하시구요). Its effect in such cases is to convert an otherwise casual-sounding utterance into a formal style. Even 아닙니다요 is possible, but it should be avoided in formal situations since this pattern is used to casually emphasize the point of view of the speaker or to make a correction.

1.1.4 해 style versus 한다/하니 style

The 해 and 한다/하니 styles are often mixed in speech to children and in conversations among children, adolescents, college students, or very close adult friends of similar age. The 해 style is derivable from the 해요 style by simply dropping -요. (The only exception here involves -이다. We say 책이야 and 얼마야 even though their 해요 style versions are 책이에요 and 얼마에요, respectively.)

- The 해 style sounds more gentle and intimate, compared to the 한다/하니 style.
- 하니 style questions are rarely acceptable with older siblings, parents, and senior friends, even in situations that favor use of 반말. Questions in such situations are better formulated with the 해 style ending – hence 뭐 해? rather than 뭐 하니?
• Perhaps because it is somewhat blunt-sounding, the 하냐 form is employed more commonly by males. (For a different use of 하냐 in indirect quotes, see 22.1.)

• The 한다 style is also used, often with a dramatic tone, to express an exclamatory statement that is not intended for anyone in particular (너무 안됐다. ‘That is too bad, I’m sorry to hear that.’).

• As we will see in 22.1, the 한다 style is also used in the expression of reports and quotes.

### 1.2 What about commands?

Commands are often made in a more deferential style than statements or questions, with more use of formal endings and of the -시 suffix (see 2.1.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하시오 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으시오</td>
<td>믿어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으십시오</td>
<td>믿으세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Most descriptive verbs cannot be used as commands (exceptions include 겸손해라 ‘be modest’ and 건강하세요 ‘be healthy’). When they have the 해라 ending, descriptive verbs usually take on an exclamatory meaning (어휴, 기막혀라! ‘How ridiculous!’ or 아이고 추워라! ‘How cold!’).

• The -(으)시오 ending is mostly restricted to written signs and instructions in contemporary Korean.

  미시오/당기시오.  
  잔디밭에 들어가지 마시오.  
  Push/Pull.  
  Keep off the grass.

• The -(으)십시오 ending is used regardless of the addressee’s age or status to convey high formality and deference (e.g., in a formal setting, or in the speech of salespeople and others serving the public). Due to its high formality and somewhat impersonal flavor, it is more often used in business letters or informational documents than in speaking.

  정문을 이용하십시오.  
  영수증을 보관하십시오.  
  Use the front door, please.  
  Please keep the receipt.

• The -(으)세요 ending is preferred for a formal but personal command.

  이쪽으로 오세요.  
  잠시만 기다리세요.  
  불고기 2 인분 주세요.  
  Come this way, please.  
  Just a moment, please.  
  Two orders of pulgogi, please.
• The -어요 ending is used with adult acquaintances or adulthood friends who are not older than the speaker.

이쪽으로 와요.  
잠시만 기다려요.  
Come this way, please.  
Just a moment, please.

• The 해 style sounds more gentle and intimate, compared to the 해라 style. The 해라 style is rarely acceptable with older siblings, parents, and senior friends, even in situations that favor use of 반말. Commands in such situations are better formulated in the 해 style – hence 전화해 may be okay while 전화해라 is not.

1.3 What about proposals?

The following table illustrates the four major styles for proposals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합시다 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>합시다</td>
<td>해 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>합시다</td>
<td>하자 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿읍시다</td>
<td>믿어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿음시다</td>
<td>믿어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿음시다</td>
<td>믿자</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE 1: There are no proposal forms for most descriptive verbs in Korean (exceptions include 솔직하자 ‘Let’s be frank’ and 건강합시다 ‘Let’s be healthy’).

NOTE 2: 믿자꾸나 instead of 믿자 may be used by an older person to a much younger person.

• The 합시다 style does not sound as formal as other formal statement or question styles when there is a particular intended audience. Even though it is employed among people who are on 존댓말 terms, it is not particularly recommended for use with someone who you have just met. It sounds rather blunt to say 식사하러 갑시다 ‘Let’s go eat’ or 핸드아웃 좀 같이 봅시다 ‘Let’s share the handout’ to someone who you are unfamiliar with even if that person is your age. The 합시다 style is mostly used among adults of similar age and status who are familiar with each other, especially males.

• The 합시다 style sounds highly formal when the proposal is addressed to a general audience, as in advertisements or in the speech of leaders.

건강은 건강할 때 지킵시다.  
불우이웃을 도웁시다.  
자연을 보호합시다.  
Let’s protect our health while we are healthy.  
Let’s help our less fortunate neighbors.  
Let’s preserve nature.

• The -요 ending is softer than the -시다 ending and may be used for gentle suggestions like 같이 가요 or 같이 가세요 to someone you don’t know well (use the latter if the person is older or superior).
• The 하자 style is slightly more casual than the 해 style but is far more frequently used, perhaps because the 해 style can be misinterpreted as a command.

1.4 Speech samples

The following speech samples illustrate how different sentence endings are used, depending on the situational context.

*News broadcast:* only 합합니다 style

```
공무원이 사실상 오늘부터 주 5일 근무제에 들어갔습니다. 근로자 3 0 0 명 이상 사업장도 다음 주부터 주 5일 근무에 합류하게 돼 본격적인 주말 연휴시대가 시작됩니다. 김기철 기자가 보도합니다.
```

*Today was effectively the first day for public servants to start the five-day work week schedule. Work places with over 300 employees will join the system from next week, so the real era of long weekends is about to begin. Ki-chul Kim reporting.*

*Weather Forecast:* only 합합니다 style

```
각 지역의 내일 날씨입니다. 중부지방 낮 기온은 서울 2 8도 등으로 오늘보다 낮겠습니다. 남부지방의 낮 기온은 오늘보다 6도 이상 낮겠습니다. 전국적으로 흐린 가운데 비가 오겠고 비의 양은 전국이 5에서 3 0 m m 가량으로 많지는 않겠습니다. 서해와 남해 해상에서는 2에서 4 m로 점차 높은 파도가 일겠습니다.
```

*Here is tomorrow’s weather forecast for each area. The day-time temperatures in the central region will be lower than today, with 28(C) degrees in Seoul, and so on. The southern region’s day-time temperature will be more than 6 degrees lower than today. The entire nation will be cloudy and rainy, but there will be only a little precipitation, ranging from 5 to 30 mm. Waves in western and southern waters will gradually increase in size, ranging from 2 to 4 meters.*

*Job interview:* mostly 합합니다 style by interviewee; 합합니다/해요 style by interviewer

```
A: 서하늘씨, 우리 회사에 지원하게 된 동기를 말씀해 주시겠습니까?
B: 제가 이번에 미래 회사에 지원하게 된 동기는 이동통신 분야에 원래 관심이 많았고 또 제 전공을 살리고 싶어서입니다.
A: 이쪽 분야에서 일해 본 경험이 있나요?
B: 지난 일년간 동양 회사에서 인턴십을 통해 경험을 쌓았습니다.
```
A: Ms. Ha-nul Seo, would you tell us your motivation for applying to our company?
B: I decided to apply to the Mirae Company because I have always been very interested in wireless communication, and I also wanted to make use of my university major.
A: Do you have work experience in this field?
B: Over the past year, I built up my experience through an internship at the Dong Yang company.

**With a stranger:** 합니다/해요 style

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A: 저, 죄송하지만 말씀 좀 더 들어보겠습니다. 경복궁을 가려고 하는데 길 좀 가르쳐 주시겠어요?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B: 저기 사거리에서 우회전해서 한 100 미터 정도 걸어가시면 됩니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: 네, 감사합니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Excuse me, but may I ask you a question? I am trying to go to Kyŏngbok Kung. Can you help me with directions?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: If you make a right turn at the intersection over there and walk about 100 meters, it’s right there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Oh okay, thank you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** 뭐 좀 물어볼게요 ‘Let me ask you a question’ is more appropriate than 말씀 좀 더 들어보겠습니다 when speaking to a younger person.

**With a travel agent:** mostly 합니다 style by agent; 합니다/해요 style by customer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A: 네, 스마일 여행사입니다.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B: 안녕하세요, 저, 제주도 가는 여행 상품을 좀 알아보려고 하는데요. 2 박 3 일로 가는 상품은 한 사람당 얼마예요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: 숙식비 포함해서 일인당 40 만원입니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: 7 월 말에 가려고 하는데, 언제 언제 출발하죠?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: 매주 월요일과 목요일에 출발합니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: 네, 알았습니다. 그럼 좀 생각해 보고 다시 전화 드릴게요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: 네, 그러세요. 감사합니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Hello, this is Smile Travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Hi. Well, I’m trying to get some information on travel packages for Cheju Island. How much is it per person for a two-night, three-day package?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: It is W400,000 per person, including hotel and meals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: I’m planning a trip this July. Which days do you have flights?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: There are flights every Monday and Thursday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: I see. Let me think about it some more and call you back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Sure, no problem. Thank you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.5 When it comes to writing

Of the four major types of endings we have discussed so far, the 합니다, 해요, and 해 styles are used primarily in the spoken language, while the 합니다 style is common both in casual speech and in impersonal writing for an unspecified audience.

The following table presents a comparison between the casual 합니다/하니/해라/하자 speech styles and the impersonal endings used in writing. As you can see, there are differences in the forms for questions and commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Casual (spoken)</th>
<th>Impersonal (written)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Statement</td>
<td>한다/하니(하냐)/해라/하자 style</td>
<td>합니다/하는가/하라/하자 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>본다</td>
<td>찾는다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>책이다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>보니/보(느)냐</td>
<td>찾니/찾(느)냐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>좋은니/좋으냐</td>
<td>뭐니/뭐냐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>뭐니/좋으냐</td>
<td>뭐니/좋으냐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>봐라</td>
<td>찾아라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td>보자</td>
<td>찾자</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The 합니다 style is used for statements in all scientific and impersonal writing, including newspapers, articles, journals, magazines, books, and so forth.
- -(는)가 is used for action verbs and -(은)가 is used for descriptive verbs for questions in questionnaires or exams.

한글은 언제 만들어졌는가?  When was hangul invented?
속담과 격언은 어떻게 다른가?  How are proverbs different from adages?
중력이란 무엇인가?  What is gravity?

NOTE: -(은)가 for descriptive verbs can be used for musing (just like the -나 ending; see 1.7) - 행복한가 ‘I wonder whether he’s happy,’ 학생인가 ‘I wonder whether he’s a student.’
• The 하라 style is used for commands in written instructions, as in exams. (An exception here is 주라, which can be used in casual speech to mean ‘give it to me.’)

다음 문항에 답하라.  
Fill in the blanks with appropriate words.

NOTE: The written style ending is -(으)라 while the casual speech ending is -아/어라.

• In impersonal writing of certain types (such as headlines, announcements, and want ads), the sentence often ends in a noun rather than a verb.

4 월 이후 입주가능  
Move-in possible after April.

미 대통령 내주 방문  
Visit of the U.S. president to Korea next week.

유경험자 환영  
People with experience welcome.

나이 제한 없음  
No age restrictions.

사진 동봉할 것  
Photo to be enclosed.

It is also common in headlines for sentences to be cut short, making it sometimes look as if they end in the casual speech 해 style.

올 들어 가장 추워  
Coldest day so far this year

입시경쟁 갈수록 심해  
Enterance exam getting more competitive

내일부터 추워질 듯  
It may get cold from tomorrow.

• None of the impersonal written styles employ the subject honorific -시 or any other honorific expressions (see 2.6).

Matters are somewhat different in the case of letter writing, where any of the four spoken styles can be used. Business letters are always written in the formal style (합니당, 합니까, 하십시오), while personal letters may employ a formal or a casual style depending on the relationship between the parties.

The 하시오 style in commands appears in written signs or exam instructions.

속도를 줄이시오.  
Reduce speed.

다음 질문에 답하시오.  
Answer the following questions.

The primarily spoken 합니당 and 해요 styles are often used in advertisements, informational documents, and children’s stories in order to give a spoken flavor and a feeling of more personal involvement with the reader.
1.6 Writing samples

Newspaper article: 한다 style for non-specified audience

诺무현 대통령은 12 일 오후 (이하 한국시간) 그리스, 루마니아, 핀란드 등 유럽 3 개국 순방을 마치고 미국 워싱턴으로 항한다.

After visiting three European countries, Greece, Romania, and Finland, President Roh Moo-hyun is leaving for Washington D.C. in the United States in the afternoon of the 12th (Korean standard time).

Advertisement: shortened expressions and 합니다 style

젊음을 돌려 드립니다. We restore your youth for you.
주름살 감소 Wrinkles reduction
체지방 감소 Fat reduction
갱년기 증상 개선 Alleviation of menopausal symptoms

사원모집 Company recruiting employees
교차로와 함께 성장할沉重한 인재를 모집합니다.
Kyoch’aro is hiring new and fresh talent to grow with the company.

Recipe: 한다 style (expressed as statements rather than commands)

잡채요리법:
1. 소고기는 가늘게 채 썰고 표고 버섯은 물에 불린 후 채 썰어 준비된 양념장에 재워 둔다. (양념장 재료: 간장, 마늘, 후추, 참기름, 설탕)
2. 당면과 시금치는 끓는 물에 살짝 데쳐 둔다.
3. 당근과 양파는 채 썰어 놓는다.
4. 후라이팬에 식용유를 두르고 준비된 당근, 양파, 소고기, 버섯 순으로 볶아 냈다.
5. 볶은 재료를 준비해 둔 당면, 시금치와 함께 담아 간을 맞추고, 깨소금, 설탕, 참기름을 더 넣고 버무린다.

Chapch’ae Recipe:
1. Cut beef into thin slices and shred pyogo mushrooms after soaking in water.
   Marinate the beef and mushrooms in the prepared sauce. (sauce ingredients: soy sauce, garlic, black pepper, sesame oil, and sugar)
2. Parboil vermicelli and spinach lightly in boiling water.
3. Shred a carrot and an onion.
4. Pour cooking oil into a frying pan and stir-fry the carrot, onion, beef, and mushroom in that order.
5. Combine the stir-fried items with the prepared vermicelli and spinach, and mix well, adding soy sauce, sesame seeds, sugar, and sesame oil.
**Personal letter to a social superior**: mixture of 합니까 and 해요 styles

오 선생님께,
선생님, 안녕하세요. 잘 지내시죠? 저도 잘 있습니다. 한국어 강의하고 논문 자료 수집하면서 바쁘게 지내요. 남편과 아이들도 잘 있구요.
그런데 선생님, 한가지 부탁드릴 게 있습니다. 다음이 아니라 제일대학 한국어 강사 자리에 지원해 보리고 하는데 선생님께서 추천서 좀 써 주실 수 있나 해서요. 바쁘신 거 알면서도 이렇게 또 부탁을 드리게 됐습니다. 참고하시라고 제 이력서와 그룹 학교 자리에 대한 정보를 같이 넣었습니다. 선생님 편지 받으시면 잘 받으셨는지 저한테 이메일이나 전화로 알려 주실 수 있을까요?
선생님 연구와 집필에 많은 성과가 있기 바랍니다. 건강하시구요. 그럼, 안녕히 계세요.

김영란 드림

Professor Oh,

Hi Professor Oh, how are you? I hope you are doing well. I am doing fine myself. I’ve been busy teaching Korean and collecting data for my thesis. My husband and children are all fine, too.

By the way, I have a favor to ask of you. I am trying to apply for a Korean teaching position at Jeil University and am wondering whether you would be able to write a letter of recommendation for me. Even though I know that you are busy, I have ended up having to ask you for a favor again. For your reference, I have enclosed my résumé and the job info. Would you let me know by e-mail or phone when you receive this letter?

I hope you make lots of progress in your research and writing. Please take care.

Good-bye.

Sincerely,
Young-nan Kim

---

**Personal letter to a niece**: mixture of casual styles

사랑하는 조카 성아에게,


그런데 성아야, 한가지 부탁할 게 있어. 만 개 아니라 이모 책 쓰는데 필요한 자료 중에서 여기서 구할 수 없는 게 하나 있는데 내가 그 곳에서 한 권 사서 부쳐 줄 수 있도록 해서. 너 요즘 무지 바쁜 거 아는데 이렇게 또 부탁을 하게 돼서 미안하다. (이모로부터 겪한 크리스마스 선물을 기대해도 좋음!) 책 제목하고 저자, 출판사등은 네 답장 받는데로 알려줄게.

그럼 건강하게 잘 지내기 바란다. 엄마 아빠한테 안부 전하구. 안녕.

이모가
My dear niece Sung-ah,

I trust that you’ve been doing well. Your thesis is going well too, I hope. I’ve been busy with my new job and also trying to finish up writing the book on Korean. Your uncle is doing fine, too.

By the way, I have a favor to ask of you, Sung-ah. Among the materials that I need for my book-writing, there’s one book that is not available here. So, I’m wondering whether you can buy a copy there and mail it to me. Sorry that I have to ask you again like this because I know how terribly busy you are. (You can expect a huge Christmas present from me!) I’ll let you know the book title, the author, and the publisher, as soon as I receive your response.

Take care then. And say hello to your parents for me. Bye.

Your aunt

1.7 A few minor styles

An important minor style is exemplified by 하네 (for a statement), 하나 (for a question), 하게 (for a command), and 하세 (for a proposal). Authoritarian-sounding and old-fashioned, these forms are now used only among (mostly male) adults of equal social status or by a senior addressing a grown-up junior. Typical cases include parents-in-law speaking to sons-in-law or older professors speaking to college students.

할말이 좀 있네. I have something to say to you.
자네 언제 졸업하나? When are you graduating?
자네 퇴근후에 좀 들르게. Drop by after you get off work.
한 잔 하고 가세. Let’s have a drink before going home.

The -네 and -나 endings have taken on special meanings in contemporary Korean: -네 is used to express moderate exclamation/surprise, and -나 is used to express wonderment.

금방 있었는데 없어졌네. It was just here, but it has disappeared.
밤에 비가 왔나? I wonder whether it rained overnight.
감기가 오나? 머리가 아프네. I wonder whether I’m coming down with a cold.
I’m getting a headache.

A few other minor styles, although still used by older people, are uncommon in contemporary Korean. The styles exemplified by 갓소 and 했소 are archaic and old-fashioned when it comes to letter writing, and they sound authorititarian when used in spoken sentences such as 당장 어떻게 안 되겠소? ‘Can’t it be somehow taken care of right away?’ The -수 variant of this style (갔수, 했수) is used quite casually among older women or to older mothers by their grown-up children.
The -리다 ending is employed among very old folks in place of -을게요.
내가 내일 가리다.  I will go tomorrow.
이따가 잠깐 들르리다.  I will stop by later for a minute.

NOTE: The spoken form of 들르다 is 들리다; see 8.3.

The -(으)마 ending has the same meaning as -리다, but is casually used by adults to a much younger person to whom they are close.
내가 하나 사서 보내마.  I’ll buy one and send it to you.
아기는 내가 업으마.  Let me piggyback the baby.

The -거라 ending for commands (-너라 if the verb is 오다), as in 가거라, 보거라, and 오너라, sounds somewhat archaic but may be used by older adults to a much younger person (e.g., a grandparent to a grandchild). It is otherwise heard mostly in historical dramas.

Finally, the following styles (-나이다/나이까, -느니라, -시옵소서) are archaic and are reserved for historical dramas, poems/proverbs, and prayers.
손님이 찾아오셨(사옵)나이다.  A guest is here to see you.
마님, 부르셨나이까?  Ma’am, did you call me?
한 우물을 파야 하느니라.  You must dig just one well. (Focus your efforts.)
부디 급여살피시옵소서.  May God help us.
2 Honorifics

As explained in the previous chapter, the styles associated with sentence endings signal formality or psychological distance between the speaker and the hearer. Coexisting and interacting with these contrasts is a system of distinctions relating to the status of the person being TALKED ABOUT, particularly the referent of the sentence’s subject and occasionally the direct object.

2.1 Subject honorification: the suffix -시

The suffix -시 (으시 after a consonant), is attached to the verbal root to show deference toward the referent of the subject. (When -시 combines with 어 in the 해요 style, they become 세; when it occurs with -었, contraction yields -셨.)

할머니께서 좀 편찮으신 거 같으세요.
My grandmother seems to be a little sick.
사장님께서 한국으로 출장가셨습니다.
The boss went on a business trip to Korea.

Use of -시 is mainly sensitive to considerations of age and social standing, although the setting and the genre have some role to play as well. (A somewhat parallel phenomenon involving the use of the special subject marker -께서 is discussed in 2.4.)

2.1.1 -시 in statements and questions – general guidelines

In general, -시 is used to indicate respect toward the referent of the subject when that person is older and/or has a higher occupational or social status. However, several subtleties and special considerations must be taken into account.

• Usually, -시 is called for if you or the hearer has a personal relationship to the referent of the subject (a grandparent, a teacher, a boss, etc.).

• Use of -시 is unnecessary for other people, even those who are older or have a higher social status (including colleagues, neighbors, and even the president of the country) – unless the person is within hearing range or the setting is formal.

• When the speaker and the hearer have different relationships to the referent of the subject, there is no single rule as to whose viewpoint should be adopted.
For example, when speaking about a close friend to the friend’s student, one may choose to use or not use -시:

이 교수님이 오늘 못 온다네요/오신다네요.

I heard that Professor Lee cannot come today.

It is perhaps more common and appropriate for speakers to take the hearer’s position and to use -시 where the hearer would be required to use it. However, speaking from the hearer’s position is not always more appropriate. If, for example, the referent of the subject is the speaker’s professor but the hearer’s student/daughter, the speaker should retain his/her own perspective and use -시.

- You may not have to use -시 when talking to your parents (especially your mother) about themselves. (The use of -시 in this case usually indicates conservatism.)

엄마, 어디 가(요)?

Mom, where are you going?

However, when you are speaking to someone outside your immediate family, you should use -시 if the subject refers to your parents.

엄마 어디 가셨는데요.

My mom went somewhere.

- Romantic partners and extremely close friends generally do not use -시 for each other, regardless of age.

- When age conflicts with social standing or occupational position, mutual use of -시 is expected. So, a social superior uses -시 for an older subordinate when the subject refers to him/her, and a social subordinate uses it for a younger superior under those same circumstances. The more formal and hierarchical the work environment is, the more obligatory is use of -시 for a superior despite age differences.

- -시 is not used in news broadcasts or in written material such as newspapers, magazines, books, and so on that are intended for a general audience (see 2.6 and 9.1).

한국을 방문하고 있는 클린턴 대통령은 암스트롱에게 전화를 걸어 승리를 축하한다고 전했다. (동양일보)

President Clinton, who was visiting Korea, called Armstrong and congratulated him on his victory. (Tong’yang Daily Press)

- In formulaic greetings such as 안녕하십니까 or 안녕하세요, -시 is used regardless of the age and social standing of the subject when a formal ending is called for.
• -시 should also be used in cases where the referent of the subject is closely connected to a person who is worthy of honorification. (How close is close? One’s age or health is undoubtedly close to the person, but what about one’s car, clothes, house, or book? When in doubt, use -시 if the hearer is the person in question or someone related to him/her.)

할머니께서 감기가 드셨어요. My grandmother has a cold.
장모님이 연세가 많으세요? Is your mother-in-law old?
손님, 신장이 어떻게 되세요?. Ma’am/Sir, what is your height?
아버지께서 부惝가 나셨거든요. My father had his company pay cheque bounce.
교수님, 사무실이 넓으시네요. Professor, your office is big.
사장님, 모자가 잘 어울리십니다. Boss, your hat looks good on you.
사모님, 따님이 미인이세요. Ma’am, your daughter is a beauty.

• These days, almost anything can trigger honorification in the speech of some people, especially service industry workers, provided it refers to something that is associated in some way with a guest or client. Some of the following examples involve over-honorification and may sound strange, but they are all actual quotes.

전화 오셨습니다. (by a hotel front desk clerk)

Here is a phone call for you.

보험료가 비싸시다구요? (in an advertisement)

You think the insurance premium is expensive?

복사기 잉크가 떨어지셨다구요? (in an advertisement)

So your copy machine cartridge ran out of ink?

저기 보이시는 저 건물입니다. (by a security guard)

It’s that building that you see [that is seen] over there.

꼬들꼬들 볶음밥이 되실 수 있으시죠. (in a TV cooking show)

It can turn into very dry fried rice.

• People who are normally on 반말 terms may use -시 for each other to produce special effects such as amusement or sarcasm. For instance, mothers often say to their child in an amusingly affectionate way, 우리 아기가 또 배가 고프시구나! ‘My baby is hungry again!’
2.1.2 *The subject honorific -시* and hearer-related sentence endings

The following tables offer an integrated picture of the relationship between the subject-related honorific suffix -시 and hearer-related sentence endings.

**Statements (with an honorific subject): in basic (present) tense**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합니다 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으십시오</td>
<td>믿으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친절하십시오</td>
<td>친절하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선생님이십니다</td>
<td>선생님이세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: -(으)서요 is old fashioned compared to -(으)세요.

**Questions (with an honorific subject): in basic (present) tense**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합니까 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으십니까</td>
<td>믿으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친절하십니까</td>
<td>친절하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선생님이십니까</td>
<td>선생님이세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: -(으)시니 alternates with -(으)시냐 (믿으시나, 친절하시나, 선생님이시나).

In choosing the right style and verb form, a speaker must take into account his/her relationship both to the referent of the subject and to the hearer. For instance, if you ask a stranger whether (s)he is Professor Kim, you must use 김교수님이십니까?/김교수님이세요? – with both a formal sentence ending (for the stranger who is the hearer) and the honorific suffix -시 (since that person is also the referent of the subject). On the other hand, if you are asking your younger sister whether someone is Professor Kim, you will say 김선생님이서?/김선생님이시니? – with a casual sentence ending (for your sister), but the honorific suffix -시 (for the professor).

If you are speaking about your younger sister to a close friend, you will say 내 동생이야, with neither a formal ending nor the honorific suffix -시. On the other hand, if you are talking to your professor, you will use 제 동생이에요, with a formal ending (for your professor, who is the hearer). But you will not use -시, since the referent of the subject is your younger sister. (See 3.2.1 for 내 vs. 제.)

One should be especially careful when the hearer and the referent of the subject are identical and happen to be someone with whom one has to be formal. For example, when you say to your teacher, ‘You go first’ or ‘You look tired,’
the teacher is both the hearer and the referent of the subject. Therefore, the sentence has to have both a formal ending AND -시 – you must say 먼저 가십시오/가세요 and 피곤해 보이십시오/보이세요.

2.1.3 -시 in commands and proposals
Additional guidelines apply in the case of commands and proposals.

Commands:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하시오 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으십시오</td>
<td>믿어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으시오</td>
<td>믿어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으십시오</td>
<td>믿으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿으시오</td>
<td>믿어라</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Courtesy calls for the use of -시 in commands even when the referent of the subject is not normally honorific. The so-called honorific -시 is used as a marker of deference to help soften the command and make it more acceptable to the hearer.

- Formal situations (classroom instructions, conferences, and formal meetings) tend to require more use of -시 in commands. For example, in speaking to much younger students, most teachers will say:

수업시간에 잡담하지 마세요.

Do not have private conversations during class.

다음 주까지 교과서를 준비하세요.

Please have your textbooks ready by next week.

In questions and statements, though, they would not use -시:

숙제 해 왔어요? Have you brought your homework?

기말시험에 결석하면 안 됩니다. You must not miss your final exam.

Similar practices are found in the speech of a boss to his workers or a senior person to his junior.

- The more formal the situation is, the more -시 is used, especially when the subject refers to a large group of people.

앞아 계실 때는 안전벨트를 매십시오. Please wear a seatbelt while seated.

화재발생시에는 계단을 이용하십시오. Please use stairs when there’s a fire.

- Psychological distance also plays a role. -시 is more likely to be used when one doesn’t know the hearer, regardless of his/her age. For instance, (잠시만) 기다리세요 is used instead of 기다려요 to a stranger on the phone. And a
fifty-year-old customer who is speaking to a much younger waitress should say:

고기 좀 바싹 구워 주세요.  
계산서 좀 갖다 주세요.  
Please make my meat well done.  
Bring me the bill please.

• The use of -시 and formal endings in all sentence types is perhaps most common among salespeople, who tend to employ these forms with all customers, regardless of age.

• In general, the deferential use of -시 in commands takes place in circumstances that are similar to those associated with the use of the formal 합니다 and 해요 styles in that the relevant factors involve formality and psychological distance. Those who are on 반말 terms do not have to worry about using -시 in their commands to each other, so you will never need to say 가시라 or 가셔 to a close friend unless it is for amusement or dramatic effect.

Proposals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합시다 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉으십시오</td>
<td>앉아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉으십시오</td>
<td>앉으세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• In proposals, where the subject refers jointly to the speaker and the hearer, use of -시 has lost much of its honorific impact – especially in the -(으)심시다 ending. For some reason, -시 does not have the same effect here that it has in command forms such as 드십시오 and 같이 드세요, where it increases the level of formality and deference.

• The -(으)심시다 ending (드십시다, 잡으십시다), with the honorific -시, is used only by quite old, mostly male speakers.

• The -(으)세요 form is softer than the -(으)심시다 form and may be used for gentle proposals (저하고 같이 가세요. ‘Let’s go together.’). Where additional deference is called for, the proposal is usually made indirectly, by changing it into a question or suggestion (see 6.1).

2.1.4 Special subject-honorific verbs

In the case of certain basic actions and relations, subject honorification must be expressed by the use of a special honorific verb. (The suffix -시 is an inherent part of these special verbs.)
### Plain form | Honorific counterpart
---|---
mukda | 드시다, 잡수시다
bapmukda | 식사 하시다, 진지 잡수시다
maida | 드시다, 하시다
beog포따 | 시장하시는다
lida | 게시다 ‘stay; be’ or 있으시다 ‘have’ (see 2.1.3)
jada | 주무시다
juda | 돌아가시다
ap포따 | 편찮으시다 (entire body), 아프시다 (specific area)

영수야, 저녁 먹어라, 배 고프지?
Youngsu, have dinner. You’re hungry, aren’t you?

할머니, 진지 잡수세요. 시장하시는요?
Grandma, have dinner. You’re hungry, aren’t you?

아빠, 안녕히 주무셨어요? 아침식사를 하셨어요?
Good morning, Dad. Have you eaten breakfast?

저는 커피부터 마실래요. 아빠도 커피 한 잔 드실/하실 거죠?
I’m going to have coffee first. You’ll have a cup of coffee too, Dad, right?

할머니 돌아가시던 날 어항에 물고기도 한 마리 죽었다.
The day when Grandma died, one fish in the fish tank died too.

할아버지가 요즘 좀 편찮으세요. 무릎이 많이 아프시네요.
My grandpa is not feeling well these days. His knee hurts a lot, he says.

- The verbs 드시다 and 식사하시다 are sufficiently respectful for most purposes in contemporary Korean, but some senior adults may prefer to hear 잡수시다 and 진지 잡수시다.

- 돌아가시다 is frequently glossed in English as ‘pass away,’ but this is misleading. While 돌아가시다 is both euphemistic and respectful, English ‘pass away’ is simply euphemistic, which is why it can be used even for a child (as can 목숨을 잃다 and 사망하다). In contrast, 돌아가시다 can be used in personal conversations only for an older or socially superior person (see 9.1).
2.1.5 Tricky subjects

It is not always straightforward to identify the subject of a Korean sentence, and it is important to look beyond the subject particle -이/가 (see 19.1). The verb 있다/없다, for instance, can be ambiguous.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>있다 (neg: 없다)</th>
<th>있다 (neg: 없다)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>‘have’</td>
<td>‘stay; be’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honorific form</td>
<td>있으시다 (없으시다)</td>
<td>계시다 (안 계시다)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When 있다/없다 means ‘have/not have,’ as in 이모가 없어요 ‘I don’t have an aunt,’ ‘I’ is the understood subject. So even though 이모 takes the particle -가, it is not the subject of the sentence and there is no honorific suffix on the verb. (For the same reason, -가 cannot be replaced by -께서 in this context.) On the other hand, if the understood subject refers to your teacher and you want to say ‘(My teacher) doesn’t have an aunt,’ 이모가 없으세요 is right because your teacher deserves the suffix -시.

Here are some additional examples containing an honorific subject and 있다 with the sense of ‘have.’

사장님, 오늘 10 시에 회의 있으십니다.  
Sir, you have a meeting at 10 o’clock today.

교수님, 지금 잠깐 시간 있으세요?  
Professor, do you have a minute?

의견이 있으신 분은 발표해 주시기 바랍니다.  
Please speak out if you have an opinion.

슬하에 자녀가 세 분 있으십니다.  
They have three children.

When 있다 is used to mean ‘stay’ or ‘be’ rather than ‘have,’ the noun marked by -이/가 is the subject. So, 할머니가 집에 안 계세요 means ‘Grandmother is not home,’ and the special honorific verb is called for. (할머니가 안 계세요 ‘Grandmother is not home’ or ‘Grandmother doesn’t exist’ is an indirect way of indicating that one’s grandmother has passed away.)

Psychological verbs such as 좋다, 싫다, and so on also call for caution. In the examples below, the understood subject (marked in bold-face in English) corresponds to the person/thing experiencing the state described by the sentence (coldness, enjoyment, need, and so forth). Only when that person is older and/or has higher social status is -시 used.

선생님, 밖에 안 추워요?  Teacher, isn’t it cold outside?
선생님, 안 추우세요?  Teacher, aren’t you cold?
저는 할아버지가 좋아요.  I like my grandfather.
아빠도 할아버지가 좋아세요?  Do you also like grandpa, Dad?
할아버지, 이 영화 재미있어요?  Grandpa, is this movie fun?
할아버지, 이 영화 재미있으세요?  Grandpa, do you find this movie fun?
저는 선생님이 필요해요.  I need a teacher.
선생님께서 책이 필요하신데요.  The teacher needs the book, I heard.
할머니가 보고 싶어요.  I miss Grandma.
할머니가 저를 보고 싶어하세요.  Grandma misses me.

2.1.6 Complex verbs and -시

When -시 is called for in expressions that consist of two verbs, it shows up sometimes on both verbs, sometimes just on the first verb, and sometimes just on the second verb. (The first column is for plain forms and the second one is for honorific forms.)

-시 appears on both verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>Honorific Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>할 수 있어요?</td>
<td>하실 수 있으세요?</td>
<td>Can you do it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가 본 적이 있다.</td>
<td>가 보신 적이 있으시다.</td>
<td>She has been there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다 만났어.</td>
<td>오시다 만나셨어.</td>
<td>He met them on his way here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피곤한 거 같아요.</td>
<td>피곤하신 거 같으세요.</td>
<td>I think she’s tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬고 싶어요?</td>
<td>쉬시고 싶으세요?</td>
<td>Would you like to rest?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(집을) 잘게 됐어.</td>
<td>(집을) 파시게 되셨어.</td>
<td>It turns out that he has to sell his house.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-시 appears on the first verb only:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>Honorific Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>갈 거예요?</td>
<td>가실 거예요?</td>
<td>Are you going to go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바쁘 가지고...</td>
<td>바쁘셔 가지고...</td>
<td>Because she’s busy...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피곤한가봐.</td>
<td>피곤하신가 봐.</td>
<td>Looks like he’s tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책 읽나 보다.</td>
<td>책 읽으시나 보다.</td>
<td>Seems like she’s reading.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떠나고 말았어.</td>
<td>떠나시고 말았어.</td>
<td>He ended up leaving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어야 돼요.</td>
<td>걸으셔야 돼요.</td>
<td>You must walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안 와도 됩니다.</td>
<td>안 오셔도 됩니다.</td>
<td>You don’t have to come.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• -시 appears on the second verb only:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>들어 와요.</td>
<td>Please come in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>않아 있어요.</td>
<td>Please be seated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊어 보인다.</td>
<td>He looks young.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해 죽어요.</td>
<td>Please do it for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해 죽어요.</td>
<td>Please give it a try.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해 놓아요/둬요.</td>
<td>Please do it (for later use).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해 치워요.</td>
<td>Just do it and get it over with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잃어 버려요.</td>
<td>Forget about it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the verb has a special honorific counterpart (see 2.1.4), that form must be used regardless of the verb’s position. So the honorific form of 먹어 봐요 is 드셔 보세요 even though the -시 normally appears only on the second verb in -어/아보다 patterns (해 보세요, 신어 보세요).

NOTE: Hereafter, the linking syllable -어/아 will be abbreviated as simply -어.

Matters are a bit different in quoted clauses. There, -시 appears either on the verb quoted or on the quoting verb, depending on the referent of the subject for each verb. For instance, 오래 (which is a reduced form of 오라고 해) can have -시 right after 오 or after 라.

할머니, 오빠가 오시래요 (< 오시라고 해요).

Grandma, brother is asking you to come

오빠, 할머니가 오라서 (< 오라고 하서).

Brother, grandma is asking you to come.

### 2.2 Object honorification

A small number of verbs are replaced by other verbs to indicate special respect for the referent of the direct or indirect object. These verbs are often called ‘humble’ verbs because object honorification is achieved by lowering the speaker/subject.
### Honorifics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain form</th>
<th>Honorific counterpart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>뵙다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>묻다/물어보다</td>
<td>여쭤보다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>데리고 (가다)</td>
<td>모시고 (가다)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달라(고)</td>
<td>주심사(고)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(해)주다</td>
<td>(해)드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알리다</td>
<td>알려 드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전하다</td>
<td>전해 드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다</td>
<td>말씀드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화하다</td>
<td>전화드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>축하하다</td>
<td>축하드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁하다</td>
<td>부탁드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연락하다</td>
<td>연락드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>약속하다</td>
<td>약속드리다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE 1:** 뵙다 is used for deliberate seeing only, not for seeing someone accidentally (from afar).

**NOTE 2:** When 하다 carries the meaning of ‘convey,’ it can be replaced by 드리다.

The following dialogue between an author (작가) and a publisher (출판인) illustrates the use of 주다 when the indirect object (or recipient) refers to oneself and 드리다 when it refers to another person.

**A:** 원고 마감일을 좀 연기해 주셨으면 하는데요.
**B:** 자꾸 연기해 달라 그러면 곤란한데요. 다음 달까지는 출판에 들어가야 하거든요.
**A:** 일주일만 좀 더 주실 수 없을까요?
**B:** 그럼 이번 한 번만 봐 드릴테니까 다음부터는 꼭 기한을 지켜 주셔야 합니다.
**A:** 고맙습니다. 약속드리겠습니다.

**A:** I am hoping that you’ll give me an extension for the manuscript deadline.
**B:** It is difficult for me if you keep asking for an extension. The manuscript has to go into production by next month, you know.
**A:** Could you please give me just one more week?
**B:** Well, I’ll give you a break just this time, but you must meet the deadline from next time.
**A:** Thank you. I promise.
When the referent of the subject and the referent of the direct or indirect object both call for special respect, an object-honorific verb carrying the -시 suffix is used (e.g., 할아버지가 책을 선생님께 드리셨어요).

Here are more examples of object honorific verbs. Notice that 보다 is replaced by 뵈다 when the direct object refers to a stranger or the speaker’s teacher, and that 축하하다 is replaced by 축하드리다 when the indirect object refers to a friend’s father, and so on.

처음 뵈겠습니다. 말씀 많이 들었습니다.
How do you do? I have heard a lot about you.

친구를 먼저 보고 나중에 선생님을 뵈거야.
I am going to meet my friend first and see my teacher later.

동생에게 용돈을 주고 할아버지께 선물을 드렸다.
I gave my brother pocket money and my grandfather a gift.

죄송하지만, 말씀 좀 여쭤 봤도 되겠습니까? (to a stranger)
Excuse me, but may I ask you something?

미안하지만, 말 좀 물어 봤도 될까요? (to a much younger stranger)
Excuse me, but can I ask you something?

학교 친구 한명 데리고 교수님도 모시고 온답니다.
She said that she would bring one of her classmates and also her teacher.

어동생에게 먼저 인사하고 시어머님 되실 분께도 인사를 드렸다.
I said hello to his younger sister first and greeted my future mother-in-law too.

나한테 도와 달라고 하지 말고 부장님께 도와 주십사고 부탁 드려.
Don’t ask me for help; ask the supervisor to give you some help.

지은이 축하한다. 지은이 아버님도 축하드려요.
Congratulations, Ji-eun. Congratulations too to Ji-eun’s father.

• In general, a person who merits -시 when (s)he is referent of the subject (that is, someone who is older and/or socially superior – a professor, boss, older neighbor, grandparent, parent-in-law, etc.) also deserves the object honorific verb when (s)he is referent of the direct or indirect object.

• On formal occasions (meeting someone for the first time, speaking at a professional meeting or ceremony, and in public announcements), the use of object-honorific verbs is expected as a courtesy, even when the referent of the object is younger or socially inferior – 안내 말씀 드리겠습니다 ‘May I have your attention?’ (in public announcements), 잘 부탁드립니다 (see below), and so on.

잘 부탁드립니다 ‘I hope we have a good relationship; I am counting on you’ is a request for cooperation or for a favor. It can be used at the end of a self-introduction to express the hope that the new relationship will go well or when you are asking for a favor. (In writing or formal speech, you can begin with 아무조로.)
2.3 Honorific nouns

A few special nouns, such as 말씀 for 말 and 진지 for 밥, are used to denote things associated with an esteemed person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain noun</th>
<th>Honorific counterpart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자식; 아이(들)</td>
<td>자제분; 자녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이름</td>
<td>성함; 존함</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>집</td>
<td>댁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>병</td>
<td>병환</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: 댁 cannot refer to one’s own home, so it cannot be used to refer to your parents’ or grandparents’ residence if you live with them.

저희 집은 서울인데 선생님 댁은 어디세요?
*My place is in Seoul; where is your place?*

어제는 친정집에 갔었고 시댁에는 다음 주에 가려고요.
*I went to my parents’ house yesterday and intend to go to my husband’s parents’ house next week.*

할아버지 말씀하시는 동안 아무 말 말고 잠자코 있도록 해.
*While Grandpa is speaking, make sure you don’t say anything and stay quiet.*

제 이름은 김기자인데 그쪽 성함은 어떻게 되세요?
*My name is Kija Kim; may I have your name?*

저는 아이가 둘입니다. 자제분이 몇이세요?
*I have two children. How many do you have?*

강아지가 병이 들었어. 근데 요즘 할아버지 병환은 좀 어떠시니?
*The puppy got sick. By the way, how is your grandfather’s sickness these days?*

아버지 존함이 어떻게 되세요?
*What is your father’s name, may I ask?*

NOTE: To give parents’ or grandparents’ names respectfully, -자 is attached after each syllable: 박자 교자 인자이십니다 ‘His name is Kyo-in Pak.’

Special care must be exercised in the use of nouns referring to age. Because 연세 is often treated as the honorific counterpart of 나이 and 생신 as the honorific counterpart of 생일, students often ask their teacher’s 연세 or 생신, which makes the teacher feel very old! For this reason, age-related honorifics are usually reserved for those who can safely be considered old.

However, even this does not ensure that a person will be happy to be asked about his or her 나이 or 생일. We therefore usually resort to various indirect and euphemistic ways of asking about age, saying 몇 년생이세요? ‘What was your birth year?’ or 몇 학번이세요? or 학번이 어떻게 되세요? ‘What was your college-entrance year?’ In addition, we often turn to a formal equivalent
(usually found in written documents) and ask 쓰년월일이 어떻게 되세요? ‘In what year, month, date were you born?’ Since it is very important in Korean language and culture to find out how old the other person is, there is no shortage of indirect ways of finding out someone’s age.

2.4 Honorific particles

Two particles have honorific counterparts. Under the appropriate circumstances, -이/가 on a subject is replaced by -께서, while the indirect object markers -한테 and -에게 give way to -께.

The use of the honorific subject marker -께서 is on the decline, and is optional nowadays for many people. Its use is highly honorific, making it appropriate in formal settings, but it is generally not impolite to use -이/가 in most situations. However, some people use -께서 for honorific subjects on all occasions.

Use of -께 is likewise on the decline, as many people find that -한테 generally sounds fine, regardless of who the indirect object refers to. However, the honorific -께 must always be employed in personal letters (김교수님께 ‘Dear Professor Kim’) if the recipient is someone who merits deference.

2.5 Use of honorifics in several basic expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Semi-formal</th>
<th>Casual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Good-bye</td>
<td>안녕히 가세요/계세요.</td>
<td>잘 가(라)/있어(라).</td>
<td>안녕.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good night</td>
<td>안녕히 주무세요.</td>
<td>잘 자요.</td>
<td>잘 자(라).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you eaten?</td>
<td>잔지 잡수셨어요?</td>
<td>식사했어요?</td>
<td>밥 먹었어요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>식사하셨어요?</td>
<td>밥 먹었어요?</td>
<td>밥 먹었니?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many of you are there?</td>
<td>몇 분이세요?</td>
<td>몇 명이에요?</td>
<td>몇 명이야?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>몇 명이에요?</td>
<td>몇 명이에요?</td>
<td>몇 명이니?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is your name?</td>
<td>성합이 어떻게 되세요?</td>
<td>이름이 어떻게 되세요?</td>
<td>이름이 뭐야?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>이름이 뭐예요?</td>
<td>이름이 뭐예요?</td>
<td>이름이 뭐니?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat; help yourself.</td>
<td>잡수세요. 드세요.</td>
<td>들어요. 먹어요.</td>
<td>먹어요(라).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The expressions in the first column (with -시) are reserved for a formal setting and/or for individuals such as your friend’s parents, strangers, your teacher, or your boss. Those in the middle column can be used for someone who you don’t
know well but is younger than you are. And the ones in the last column are for very close friends or children.

2.6 Non-use of honorific expressions in impersonal language

Honorific expressions are not employed in news broadcasts or in impersonal writing (as in newspapers and magazines). Because communication of this sort is intended for a non-specific general audience, there is no place for honorific suffixes (-시, -님), for honorific nouns (말씀, 연세, etc.), for honorific particles (-께, -께서), or for object-honorific verbs (드리다, 모시고, etc.), all of which are used to express PERSONAL respect. The following excerpt from a news report illustrates this point.

노무현 대통령은 김대중 전 대통령에게 위로의 말을 전했습니다.

President Roh conveyed his sympathetic words to the ex-president Kim.

Certain vocabulary items that are used in personal settings are also avoided in impersonal language. For instance, 선생 or 선생님 is replaced by 교사 or 교원 to refer to school teachers below the college level (교원대학교 ‘University of Teacher Education,’ 교사 연수 ‘teacher training,’ 교사 자격증 ‘teacher’s certificate’). Similarly, 집 or댁 is replaced by 자택, …을 테리고/모시고 (가다) is replaced by …을 동반하고 (가다), and so on (see 9.1).
3 Address terms and pronouns

As with verb forms, the choice of address terms and pronouns is conditioned by the speaker’s relationship with the person to whom (s)he is speaking or referring, as well as by the situation. These are highly important matters in Korean society: the wrong choice may negatively affect one’s career as well as personal relationships.

3.1 Address terms (호칭)

Koreans typically address each other by name (with an appropriate suffix) or by title (also with an appropriate suffix; see 10.4.4). The choice of address term is determined by the gender of the person being addressed, his or her relationship to the speaker, and his or her (apparent) age relative to the speaker. In general, address terms tend to be words with elevated or affectionate connotations. Thus 기사님 ‘technician’ is preferred to the plainer and more literal 운전사 아저씨 for driver, and 언니 ‘older sister’ is more welcome than the literal 올케 for an older sister-in-law.

3.1.1 Addressing an unfamiliar person or a stranger

The most appropriate way to get the attention of someone who you do not know personally (a waitress in a restaurant, or a stranger on the street) is to use any of the following hedging expressions:

저기요 (and 여기요, if it’s a restaurant)
저…
저 실패지만…
저 좌충하지만…
억보세요 (when you have to shout to be heard)

When a specific address term is called for, one of the following is generally appropriate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person being addressed</th>
<th>Address term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Child</td>
<td>고마야, 애(야)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student (younger looking)</td>
<td>학생</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Addressing a non-family member who you already know

A variety of family terms are used for non-family members to show closeness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person being addressed</th>
<th>Address term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close friends of similar age or younger and children</td>
<td>first name + 아/姪 성창아, 성창아 아, 애 아 임마/자식아 [familiar/casual] 이뻐, 이 사람아 (among older people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close friends who are somewhat older</td>
<td>(first name +) 형/누나 (연규)형 ‘male’s older brother/sister’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(first name +) 오빠/언니 (성아)언니 ‘female’s older brother/sister’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(first name +) 선배 ‘one’s senior at school’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boyfriend/girlfriend</td>
<td>자기, 자기야 first name + 아/姪 지성아, 연지야 first name + 씨 [formal] 연규씨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friend’s family</td>
<td>friend’s first name + family term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앵숙어머니/어머님, 오빠, 등.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTE: -이 in 앵숙어머니 is a particle (19.2.2).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familiar (married) adult, such as neighbor</td>
<td>아줌마/아주머니, 아저씨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>할아버지/할아버지님, 할머니/할머님</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영감님 (among very old males)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close male adult friend of similar age or younger</td>
<td>last name + 형/김형</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friend of similar age or younger with whom friendship developed after college</td>
<td>full name + 씨/김선아씨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first name + 씨/신아씨</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTE: See 10.4.4 for discussion of -씨.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familiar but much younger person by a senior person (e.g., professor to a student)</td>
<td>name + 군 (male)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김군, 김민호군, 민호군</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name + 양 (female)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김양, 김미아양, 미아양</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name (진)용주</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older or superior at workplace</td>
<td>(last name) title + 녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(장) 사장님, (곽) 박사님</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(full name) title + 녀</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(오강일) 교수님</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선배님 ‘one’s senior at school’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal at workplace</td>
<td>full name + 씨/정미아씨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close friend of same age or younger at workplace</td>
<td>last name + title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김과장, 김교수, 김박사, 닥터김</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign first name + title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>로스신생</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior at workplace</td>
<td>미스/미스터 + last name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titleless job holder such as janitor</td>
<td>(last name + 씨 +) 아저씨/아줌마</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(김씨) 아저씨, (박씨) 아줌마</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE1**: 형 may be used by female students for male seniors because 오빠 is often used to refer to a boyfriend who happens to be older.

**NOTE2**: Calling teachers by their first name or by using 미스 or 미스터 is not appropriate. The common ways of addressing teachers in English (including 미스 김 or 미스터 김) are not appropriate in Korean.
### 3.1.3 Addressing a family member

The full range of address terms for members of the extended family can be daunting, but the following should suffice in most modern families.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Family member</th>
<th>Address term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grandma/grandmother</td>
<td>할머니/할머님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandpa/grandfather</td>
<td>할아버지/할아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mom/mother</td>
<td>엄마/어머니, 어머님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother-in-law</td>
<td>어머님, 어머님 (husband’s mother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>어머님, 장모님 (wife’s mother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dad/father</td>
<td>아빠/아버지, 아버님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Father-in-law</td>
<td>아버님 (husband’s father)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>아버님, 장인어른 (wife’s father)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One’s own children</td>
<td>first name + 아/야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daughter-in-law</td>
<td>(세)아가, 어머야, 애미야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Son-in-law</td>
<td>last name + 서방 박서방</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>child’s name + 아범 용주아범</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aunt</td>
<td>이모, 이모님 (mother’s sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>고모, 고모님 (father’s sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aunt’s husband</td>
<td>이모부, 이모부님 (mother’s sister’s husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>고모부, 고모부님 (father’s sister’s husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncle</td>
<td>(외)삼촌 (mother’s brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>삼촌 (father’s brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>큰아버지, 큰아버지, 백부님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(father’s older, married brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>작은아버지, 작은아버지, 숙부님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(father’s younger, married brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncle’s wife</td>
<td>외숙모 (mother’s brother’s wife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>큰엄마, 큰머니, 큰머니, 백모님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(father’s older-brother’s wife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>작은엄마, 작은머니, 작은머니, 숙모님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(father’s younger-brother’s wife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibling</td>
<td>언니 (female’s older sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>오빠, 오라버니 (female’s older brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>형, 형님 (male’s older brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>누나, 누님, 누이 (male’s older sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(NOTE: 오라버니 &amp; 누이 are old-fashioned.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continued on the next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Brother’s wife (by female)</th>
<th>올케 올케 언니, (채)언니 (older-brother’s wife)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brother’s wife (by male)</td>
<td>형수님 (older-brother’s wife) 형수씨, 형수씨 (younger-brother’s wife)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister’s husband (by female)</td>
<td>형부 (older-sister’s husband) 형부 (younger-sister’s husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sister’s husband (by male)</td>
<td>자형, 매형 (older-sister’s husband) 매형 (younger-sister’s husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spouse</td>
<td>여보 (traditional) 자기야 (romantic) first name + 아/야 (usually by a young couple) child’s name + 아빠/엄마</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wife’s sister</td>
<td>처형 (wife’s older sister) 처제 (wife’s younger sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wife’s brother-in-law</td>
<td>형님 (wife’s older-sister’s husband) 동서 (wife’s younger-sister’s husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wife’s brother</td>
<td>처남, 형님 (wife’s older brother) 처남 (wife’s younger brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husband’s sister</td>
<td>형님 (husband’s older sister) 아가씨 (husband’s younger sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husband’s brother</td>
<td>아주버님 (husband’s older brother) 도련님 (husband’s younger, single brother) 서방님 (husband’s younger, married brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husband’s sister-in-law</td>
<td>형님 (husband’s older-brother’s wife) 동서 (husband’s younger-brother’s wife)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE1:** Terms with -님 are formal and used by older people in general and for in-laws.

**NOTE2:** The adjectives 큰 and 작은 (or the first name followed by an address term) are often used to distinguish among older and younger multiple siblings, aunts, sisters-in-law, and so forth (큰형, 작은형, 윤호오빠, 철호오빠, 큰고모, 작은고모, and so on).

Address terms for family members can be confusing even to native speakers, as people have less contact with members of their extended family these days than in the past. In addition, Koreans often replace the original address terms with the address terms that reflect their children’s point of view. For instance, instead of calling one’s husband’s sister 아가씨 or 형님, 고모 ‘aunt’ is often employed. A wife may even call her husband 아빠 ‘Dad,’ using exactly the same term she employs for her own father.
Most address terms can also be used to refer to people who are being spoken about, even when they are not present.

우리 이모가 이번 겨울에 하와이에 놀러 오래요.

My aunt is telling me to come visit her in Hawaii this winter.

An exception in this regard is 여보, which is exclusively used to address one’s spouse, not to talk about him/her. Reference to one’s spouse, or to someone else’s spouse, calls for use of the following terms, which are presented in approximate decreasing order of formality.

- One’s wife: 제처, 집사람, 안사람, 안식구, 이사람, 와이프, 마누라
- Someone else’s wife: 사모님, 부인, 와이프
- One’s husband: 제남편, 우리남편, 이사람, 신랑
- Someone else’s husband: 부군, 바깥어른, 남군, 아저씨, 남편, 신랑

Another difference involves the terms used by a wife for her husband’s mother and father. Whereas a wife uses 어머니/어버님 and 아버님 as address terms, she normally adds the prefix 시- (시어머니/시어버님, 시아버지) when talking about (rather than to) her parents-in-law to people outside the family.

### 3.2 Pronouns and related words

Personal pronouns (the equivalent of English I, you, he, she, etc.) are best avoided in Korean. There’s no need, for instance, to repeat 나는 or 저는 in sentence after sentence – the topic is assumed to be the same until there is an indication that it has changed.

안녕하십니까? 저는 텍사스대학교 학생입니다. 이름은 박성수입니다.
한국에서 왔습니다. 지금은 학교 기숙사에 살고 있습니다.

Hello, I am a student at the University of Texas. My name is Seongsoo Park.
I am from Korea. I am currently living in the school dorm.

If it is necessary to refer back to someone who was mentioned in a preceding sentence, the appropriate noun is usually repeated.

내가 혜수씨를 처음 만난 건 92 년 하와이에서였다. 그때 혜수씨는
영어교육학과 박사과정에 신입생이었다. 혜수씨하고 나는 처음부터
서로를 아주 편하게 느꼈던 것 같다. 그때 혜수씨는...

It was in Hawaii in 1992 when I first met Hyesoo. At that time, she was a new Ph.D. student in the Department of English as a Second Language. I think that Hyesoo and I felt comfortable with each other from the beginning. She...
This notwithstanding, there are a number of words in Korean that appear to do the work of pronouns under certain specific conditions.

### 3.2.1 First person pronouns and their equivalents

- **나/우리**: used to refer to oneself/oneselves when speaking with close friends, children, one’s students, siblings, parents (in a liberal family), and possibly even grandparents. Also used in writing for a non-specified audience.

- **저/저희**: as humble counterparts of **나/우리**, 저/저희 are used with teachers and bosses, with acquaintances or strangers who are not younger, as well as in formal meetings.

**NOTE**: 나 + 가 → 내가; 저 + 가 → 제가; 나의/저의 can contract to 내/제.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Difference between 나 and 저</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With 반말 endings, only 나 is appropriate (나는 안 갈래). But in the 해요 style, either 나 or 저 is used. If the hearer is clearly younger, 나 is appropriate even in 존댓말. For instance, a professor will use the -요 ending to a student but never 저, unless the student is older (내가 책을 빌려 줘요). The more formal 합니다 style, however, calls for only 저 (제가 하겠습니다).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **이쪽, 여기**: can be used to refer to ‘I/me’ or ‘we/us,’ in addition to its basic meaning of ‘this side’ or ‘here.’

  이쪽은 그쪽이 될 하단지 신경 안 써요.  
  *I don’t care what you do.*

  여기는 짤으니까 거기나 챙기세요.  
  *We’re okay here, so you just worry about your stuff.*

### 3.2.2 Second person pronouns and their equivalents

Extreme care is required in the use of second person pronouns (the equivalent of ‘you’). In general, including for parents, teachers, or strangers, kinship terms or titles (아버지, 선생님, etc.), not pronouns, are called for. A second person pronoun (너 or 당신) should not be used except for the limited cases listed below.

- **너/너희**: used for children or extremely close friends/siblings of a similar age or younger.

  내가 알아서 해.  
  *You just take care of it.*

  너희들끼리 먼저 가라.  
  *You guys go first.*

**NOTE**: 너 + 가 → 내가; for the spoken forms 니가 and 니들끼리, see 8.3.

- **당신**: extremely restricted (as in the first five examples below), although its use seems to be on the rise. (See 3.2.4 for the reflexive pronoun use of 당신.)
Traditionally used between husband and wife:

dangsin and geogi

It’s already been over ten years since I married you.

In traditional song lyrics and in poems:

dangsin

I wonder who you are, to come so deeply into my heart...

For a non-specified audience in advertisements or questionnaires:

dangsin

How well do you know your native language?

As a sign of disrespect when arguing or fighting:

dangsin

Who do you think you are to call me ‘tangsin’?

As a semi-formal pronoun for someone with equal or lower status (uncommon):

dangsin

It’s been a year since we started dating, but I still can’t figure you out.

The following words help fill the function of a second person pronoun under the right circumstances.

• 그쪽, 거기: frequently used with people of a similar age or younger. These forms are especially useful when one doesn’t know the other person’s name or doesn’t feel comfortable using it.

그쪽이 먼저 끝을 세요. You hang up first.
그쪽이 내가 누구를 만나든 Why do you care who I go out with?
무슨 상관이에요?
거기도 막지. Why don’t you also eat?

• 자기: used between romantic partners and between close (female) friends.

(See 3.1.3 & 3.2.4 for other uses of 자기.)

자기 오늘 늦어요? Are you going to be late today?

• 그대: used in song lyrics and in poems.

너랑 쫓아온 그 길을 정답게 걸었던 그대 그리고 나 you and I, who used to walk in love along the road covered with fallen leaves

• 귀하: originally used on an envelope for an honorific recipient (송계호 교수님 귀하 ‘TO: Dr. Kyeho Seung’), but nowadays often used in automated calling instructions.

귀하의 비밀번호를 눌러 주십시오. Please press your PIN number.
귀하의 잔액은 5 불립니다. Your balance is five dollars.
• 본인: means ‘person-in-question’ or ‘self.’ It can therefore be anyone (me, you, he, her), but is often used to cleverly avoid the use of ‘you.’

본인이 직접 오라는네요.

They say that you (the person-in-question) should come yourself.

• 렡: used among older people to refer to an adult stranger.

סים 누구신지요? May I ask who you are?

• 어르신: used for a very old person in a respectful way.

• 자네: used by a superior to a much younger adult or to an adolescent of lower status (like a student), or by a parent-in-law to a son-in-law.

• 제군 [formal]: used by a superior to subordinates or followers

오늘 제군들에게 매우 쓸쓸한 소식 하나를 전해丫头.

I have to give you guys a piece of sad news today.

• 여러분 [formal]: used toward a group of people

신사숙녀 여러분
친애하는 국민 여러분
여러분의 경험을 발표해 보세요. Try and talk about your own experiences.

3.2.3 Third person pronouns and their equivalents

Korean does not have a well-established category of true third-person pronouns such as English he and she. When it is necessary to refer back to a previously mentioned person, several possibilities are available.

One is to simply leave the person unmentioned, especially when he or she has been the topic of the conversation.

A: 할아버지 오셨어요.
B: 언제 오셨어요?
A: 그저께요.
B: 어디 사시는테요?
A: 서울에요.

Grandpa came.
When did he come?
The day before yesterday.
Where does he live?
In Seoul.

A second option is to employ titles or kinship terms, which can be repeated as many times as needed.

A: 할아버지 오셨어요.
B: 할아버지가 언제 오셨어요?
A: 그저께요.
B: 할아버지가 어디 사시는테요?
A: 서울에요.
Yet another possibility is to use a compound consisting of 이/?/저 plus a general noun.

이: is used to point out someone/something close to the speaker.
그: is used for someone/something either away from the speaker and close to the hearer or familiar to both the speaker and the hearer.
저: is used for someone/something away from both the speaker and the hearer but visible to both.

• (이/?/저) 기지배, 놀, 자식, 녀석: may be used affectionately or neutrally to refer to younger siblings or close friends, or by parents to refer to their own children.

이 기지배가 왜 이렇게 안 오지? I wonder why this girl is still not coming.
그 녀석 참 귀엽게 생겼네. The kid looks very cute.

It otherwise is used angrily to mean something like ‘punk’ or ‘bastard.’

별 옷기는 자식 다 보냈네.
What a ridiculous punk.

이놈의 세상이 어떻게 되려고...
What’s going to happen to this damned world...

• (이/?/저) 엄, 엄(네)들: used to refer to a child, a close friend, or a sibling of similar age or younger. (엄 < 아/애, 엄 < 이/애, 제 < 저 애, 개 < 그 애)

엄 (<이 엄) 는 제 친구고 제는 개 동생이예요.
This one is my friend and that one is that friend’s younger brother.

그럼 제네들은 누구야? 개네들은 엄하고 같은 반 학생들이래요.
Who are those kids then? They are the classmates of this guy, I heard.

• (이/?/저) 것/거: may be used to refer to one’s own child or someone extremely close. (이게 < 이것이, 그게 < 그것이)

이게 어디가 아픈 모양이다. Seems like he’s sick.
그게 또 말썽을 부렸구나. Oh, that kid caused trouble again.

• (이/?/저) 사람: may be used to refer to one’s husband or wife or to any stranger in a neutral manner.

이 사람은 김치찌개만 있으면 돼요.
Kimchitchigye is all he (my husband) needs.

걸어 가는데 그 사람이 갑자기 말을 걸어 왔어요.
I was walking and he started talking to me all of a sudden.
• (이/그/저) 여자, 남자: used to refer to a stranger in a neutral manner; if used for an older or unfamiliar person to his or her face, this expression can be extremely insulting.

어제 그 남자 누구니?  Who was that guy yesterday?
A: 이 여자가 왜 이레, 정말?  What’s wrong with this woman, really?
B: 이 여자라는?  Are you calling me ‘this woman’?

• (이/그/저) 분: used to refer to a stranger in a formal and respectful way.

어제 그 분이 누구세요?  Who was that person yesterday?
이 분은 제 고등학교 은사님이십니다.

• (이/그/저) 이: may be used to refer to one’s husband or wife (usually among older couples).

Thanks to the influence of English, the following forms are employed in literary writing and song lyrics.

• 그, 그(들): used as a third person equivalent of ‘(s)he’ and ‘they’ only in rather formal speech or writing (as well as in translations of pronouns in Western languages). In its literal use, it has the meaning of ‘that’ and is impersonal.

• 그녀: used in writing by authors for ‘she.’

• 그님: used in song lyrics or in poems.

The following items can also be used as pronoun substitutes.

• 사람: ‘(s)he [the person]’

사람이 참 착한 거 같아요.  She seems really nice.

• 사람들: ‘they’

사람들이 그러는데 그 음식점이 장사가 안 돼서 문을 닫았대.

They say that the restaurant closed because its business wasn’t good.

• 누가, 누군가가: ‘someone’

누가 그러는데, 이 동네는 밤에 다녀도 안전하대요.

Someone says that this neighborhood is safe to go around in even at night.

• 김모씨: ‘one Mr. Kim’ (usually used in news report)

경찰은 수표 위조범 김모씨 동 일당 4 명을 검거했습니다.

The police arrested a gang of four people including a Kim so-and-so for forgery of checks.
3.2.4 Reflexive pronouns

The following expressions are used as reflexive pronouns (roughly equivalent to ‘myself,’ ‘himself,’ ‘oneself,’ and so on).

- 저/지 [spoken/colloquial]: (See 8.3 for the 저/지 alternation.)
  내 동생은 저만 알아, 제(<저의) 생각만 하는 거 있지.
  *My younger brother is self-centered. He only cares about himself.*

- 자기: used for reference to a third party.
  혜수는 자기가 직접 가겠다고 말했다.
  *Hyesu said that she would go herself.*

- 자신: can be used in combination with a personal pronoun/noun, or by itself for emphasis.
  그 여자는 (자기) 자신을 미인이라고 생각한다.
  *She considers herself beautiful.*

- 자체: used in an emphatic manner for any person or thing.
  건물 자체는 틀튼한 거 같습니다.
  *The building itself seems solid.*

- 당신: can be used for an honored third person referent.
  (할아버지) 당신이 손수 끓여서 드셨다.
  *Grandfather cooked it himself and ate it.*

NOTE: 당신 is not used that often except for grandparents.
3.2.5 Indefinite pronouns

Korean has a series of words that can be used as either interrogative pronouns (question words) or indefinite pronouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>As question word</th>
<th>As indefinite pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>누구/누가</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뭐</td>
<td>what</td>
<td>something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떻게</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>somehow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어느</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>some/certain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떤</td>
<td>which/what type of</td>
<td>some/certain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몇</td>
<td>what/how many</td>
<td>several</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

어디 가세요?  
Where are you going? or Are you going somewhere?

뭐 먹을까?  
What shall we eat? or Shall we eat something?

누가 왔어?  
Who came? or Did someone come?

When used with the special particles -(이)나, -도, -든지, or -라도, indefinite pronouns as well as 아무나 and 얼마 can take on interpretations equivalent to English everyone, anything, nothing, etc.

- Everyone, anyone
  
 누구나 할 수 있는 일은 아니다.  
It’s not something that everyone can do.

아무나 할 수 있는 일은 아니다.  
It’s not something that anyone can do.

 관심있는 사람은 누구든지 오세요.  
Anyone who is interested is welcome.

- Everything, anything
  
그 사람 일이라면 뭐든지 다 알아.  
I know everything about him.

아무거나 괜찮아.  
Anything will do.

- Everywhere, anywhere
  
휴가철에는 어디나 붐비다.  
It’s crowded everywhere during vacation season.

어디든지/아무 데라도 가고 싶어요.  
I want to go just about anywhere.

그런 사람은 어디서든지 환영을 받을 겁니다.  
That kind of person will be welcome anywhere.

- Always, every time
  
언제나 환하게 웃으세요.  
Always have a bright smile.

책만 보면 언제나 줄음이 온다.  
I get drowsy every time I read.
• Any time
언제든지/언제라도 전화 하세요.  
Call me any time.
아무 때나 드르세요.  
Drop by any time.

• Every way, any way
아무래도 갤찰아요.  
Any way is fine with me.

• No matter what
무슨 일이 있어도 절대 포기하지 마세요.  
Don’t give up no matter what happens.
어떻게(께서)든(지) 이 어려운 상황을 잘 이겨내 봅시다.  
Let’s try to overcome this difficult situation no matter what it takes.

• As much as one likes
부페니가 얼마나든지 드세요.  
It’s a buffet, so eat as much as you like.

The following forms must be used in combination with a negated verb.

• No one, anyone
아무도 장담 못한다.  
No one can guarantee it.
아무한데서도 연락이 없어요.  
There’s no word from anyone.

• Nothing, anything
어느 것도 쌓게 없어요.  
Nothing is cheap.
아무 것도 안 샀다.  
I didn’t buy anything.

• Nowhere, anywhere
아무 데도 안 갔다.  
I didn’t go anywhere.
아무 데나 앉지 말고 여기 앉아.  
Don’t sit just anywhere; sit here.

• Not many, not much
날짜가 얼마 안 남았다.  
There aren’t many days left.
값이 얼마 안 돼요.  
It’s not very expensive.
4 Language for daily situations

Like every language, Korean has a large number of formulaic and fixed expressions for use in common everyday situations. This chapter focuses on frequent expressions of this type that you should find particularly useful.

4.1 Greetings

• Greeting someone who you have not seen in a very long time

A: 오래간만입니다. 그동안 안녕하셨어요?
B: 정말 오랜만이네요. 이게 얼마나이예요? 별일 없으시죠?
A: 네, 별일 없어요. 다 잘 지내요. 근데, 요즘 어떡세요?
B: 그래져, 늘 그렇죠, 뭐.

A: It’s been a long time. How have you been?
B: It’s really been a long time. How long has it been? Is everything okay with you?
A: Yes, everything’s fine. We’re doing well. How about you?
B: It’s alright, the same as always, I guess.

A: 야, 오랜만이다. 그동안 어떻게 지냈어? 여자친구랑은 잘 돼가니?
B: 잘 돼가긴. 별써 깨진 지가 언제인테. 너는 요즘 어때?

A: Wow, long time no see. How have you been? Is everything going well with your girlfriend?
B: Going well, what are you talking about? We broke up a long time ago.

• Upon entering unfamiliar places

Hello, are you there? Is no one inside?

Excuse me.
Excuse me. Can I come in?

• Upon returning to your home

I’m home (from school/work).
I’m home. (or I’m here.)
• Welcoming someone
어서 오세요. (in general)
오셨어요? (to a familiar person)
이제 오세요? (to someone you are expecting)

4.2 Leave-taking

• Upon leaving for school or work
A: 아빠 회사 갈다 올게. Bye, Daddy is going to the office to work.
B: 아빠, 안녕히 다녀오세요. Bye, Daddy, have a good day.
A: 학교 다녀오겠습니다. Bye, I’m going to school.
B: 그래, 잘 다녀와/갔다 와. Okay, bye, have a good day.

• Saying good-bye
A: 오늘 즐거웠습니다. 저 그럼… (가보겠습니다).
B: 조심해 가세요, 내일 회사에서 뵐어요.
A: 네, 들어가세요.
   A: I had fun today. Well, then...(I’ll get going).
   B: Goodbye. I’ll see you tomorrow in the office.
A: 시간이 벌써 이렇게 됐네요. 저 먼저 설례해야겠습니다.
   말씀들 나누세요.
B: 벌써 일어나시라고요? 좀 더 있다 가시지.
A: 집에 일이 좀 있어서요. 죄송합니다.
B: 그럼 살펴 가세요. 안 나간게요.
   A: Wow, it’s already this late. I think I’ll have to be excused first.
      Enjoy your chatting.
   B: You are going to leave this early? Why don’t you stay a bit longer?
   A: I have something to take care of at home. I’m sorry.
   B: Alright, then, goodbye. Let me just see you off here.
A: 장인어른, 말씀도중에 죄송한데요, 저 그만 가 봐야겠습니다.
B: 그래, 김서방, 그럼 가 봐. 운전 조심하고.
   A: Father-in-law, I’m sorry to interrupt but I think I’ll have to get going.
   B: Okay, my son-in-law, go ahead and leave. Be careful with driving.
A: 연규야, 나 간다.  
B: 응, 가. 또 보자. 연락할게.

• Talking to people who are sick

폭 쉬어.  
몸조리 잘 하세요.  
빨리 낳기/나으시기 바래요.  
속히 페유하시기 바랍니다.  

Get plenty of rest.  
Take good care of your health.  
I hope you’ll recover soon.  
I wish you a speedy recovery. [formal/written]

4.3 Expressing and responding to gratitude

• In formal speech or writing

대단히 감사합니다.  
다시 한 번 감사드립니다.  
진심으로 감사드립니다.  
깊이 감사드리는 바입니다.  

Thank you very much.  
Thank you again.  
Thank you from the bottom of my heart.  
I’d like to express my deep gratitude.

• Expressing overwhelming gratitude

A: 너무너무 고맙습니다. 뭐라고 감사의 말씀을 드려야 할지 모르겠습니다. 이 신세를 어떻게 갈아야 할지 모르겠네요.  
B: 별말씀을요. 

A: Thank you so much. I don’t know how I can thank you enough. I owe you so much that I don’t know how I will ever repay you.  
B: Don’t mention it.

A: 그런데, 보수가 너무 적어서...  
B: 별말씀을요. 이렇게 기회를 주신 것만 해도 황송하죠. 선생님하고 같이 일하게 된 것만 해도 감지덕지로 생각합니다.  

A: But the compensation is so little...  
B: Not at all. I’m grateful even just for the fact that you gave me this opportunity. I’m very thankful just to be able to work with you, sir.

• Gift giving and taking

A: 보내주신 선물 잘 받았어요. 잘 쓸게요.  
B: 마음에 들겠으면 좋겠네요.  

A: Thank you for the gift you sent me. I’ll make good use of it.  
B: I hope you like it.
A: 선물 감사합니다. 예쁘게 입을게요.
B: 마음에 들지 모르겠다.
A: 마음에 쓰어요. 고마워요.
B: 고맙습니다.

\[ \text{A: Thank you for the gift. I’ll enjoy wearing it.} \]
\[ \text{B: I don’t know whether you like it.} \]
\[ \text{A: I love it. Thank you.} \]
\[ \text{B: You’re welcome.} \]

A: 그냥 오셔도 되는데 뭐 이런 걸 갖고 오셨어요? 비쌀텐데, 너무 과용하신 거 아니에요?
B: 별거 아니에요. 약소해요.

\[ \text{A: You didn’t have to do this; why did you bring this? It must be expensive, I hope you didn’t spend too much.} \]
\[ \text{B: It’s nothing much. It’s something small.} \]

A: 이거 받아도 되는 건지 모르겠네요.
B: 필요. 부담갖지 말고 받으세요.

\[ \text{A: I wonder whether I should accept this.} \]
\[ \text{B: It’s nothing. Don’t worry, just take it.} \]

* After being treated to a meal

A: 잘 먹었습니다. 그런데, 미안해서 어쩌지요? 번번이 이렇게 신세를...
B: 아니에요. 신세는요?

\[ \text{A: Thank you for the meal. But I feel bad. I keep imposing on you...} \]
\[ \text{B: Not at all. Imposing, what are you talking about?} \]

A: 오늘 신세 많이 쳤습니다. 괜찮으시고 가세요.
B: 별말씀을요. 종종 놀러 오세요.

\[ \text{A: Thank you for your hospitality; I owe you. I guess I was a bother.} \]
\[ \text{B: Don’t mention it. Please come over often.} \]

A: 고마워, 근데 출혈이 너무 큰 거 아니니?
B: 고맙긴, 그 정도야, 약소하지.

\[ \text{A: Thanks. I hope you didn’t go over your budget.} \]
\[ \text{B: No problem. That’s nothing much.} \]
• Routine thanking (e.g., at a store)

‘네’ is most appropriate in response to a ritualistic expressions of thanks, between a store clerk (점원) and a customer (손님), for instance.

A: 커피 여기 있습니다. 감사합니다.  
Here’s your coffee. Thanks.
B: 네.  
Sure.
A: 안녕히 가세요. 또 오세요.  
Bye. Come again.

NOTE: 천만에요 is a literal translation of English ‘You’re welcome,’ and is used mainly by Koreans living in English-speaking countries. It is rarely used in this way in Korea.

• Responding to compliments

A: 정말 잘 하시네요.  
You’re so good at it.
B: 잘 하긴요. 별로예요.  
I’m not really good. I’m just okay.

A: 이 과장 홀륭해요. 정말 대단한 능력이야.  
B: 아이 필요. 과장이십니다.

A: Mr. Lee, you’ve done a fantastic job. Your abilities are truly amazing.  
B: Not at all. You’re too kind.

4.4 Apologies and regrets

• Serious and formal apologies

대단히 죄송합니다.  I’m truly sorry.
드릴 말씀이 없습니다. I’m so sorry that I don’t know what to say.
사죄드립니다. I apologize. (I beg your forgiveness.)
심려를 깠쳐드려 송구스럽습니다. I’m terribly sorry that I caused you concern.
면목이 없습니다. I’m so sorry that I cannot face you.

A: 죄송합니다. 제 잘못입니다. 다시는 그런 일이 없도록 하겠습니다.  
B: 아니에요. 괜찮아요. 신경 쓰지 마세요.

A: I’m sorry. It’s my fault. I will make sure it won’t happen again.  
B: No, it’s okay. No need to worry.

A: 엄마, 잘못했어요. 다시는 안 그런 게요.  
B: 이번 한 번만 용서해 줄테니까 다음부터는 조심해야 된다.

A: Mom, I’m sorry. I’ll never do that again.  
B: I’ll forgive you just this once so you must be careful from next time.

A: 죄송합니다. 사과드립니다.  
B: 사과는요? 아무 일도 아닌 걸 갖고. 걱정 마세요.

A: I’m very sorry. Please accept my apology.  
A: 미안하게 됐습니다.
B: 미안하다니요? 제가 오히려 더 미안하죠.
   A: I'm so sorry.
   B: Not at all. It's actually me who should be sorry.

A: 어제는 미안해야요. 사과하게요.
B: 무슨 말씀을요? 미안할 것도 많네요. 사실 미안한 건 나지요.
   A: I'm sorry about yesterday. I apologize.
   B: What are you talking about? There was nothing to be sorry for.
   Actually, I'm the one who should be sorry.

A: 쏘리!
B: 미안하다면 다야?
A: 사정이 있었어.
   한 번만 죄 주라.
B: 했어, 뭐 그런 수도 있지.

NOTE: 쏘리, borrowed from English, is the lightest apology and can be used only to someone with whom one is on 반말 terms.

• Expressing regret in a formal setting

이번 사건에 대해 유감스럽게 생각합니다.

We are truly sorry about the recent incident.

양국 간에 불미스러운 일이 생긴 것은 유감으로 생각하는 바입니다.

We regret that an unfortunate incident has occurred between the two countries.

4.5 ‘Excuse me but…’

The difference between 죄송(/미안)합니다 and 실례합니다

The literal translation of these two expressions can be misleading because either can correspond to English ‘excuse me.’ In such cases, 죄송합니다 offers a thankful way to start asking for a favor; it is not really an apology. In contrast, 실례합니다 is restricted to the following three cases: (1) asking a personal question, (2) calling for attention when entering someone else’s place, or (3) addressing a stranger – all of which involve making an unwarranted imposition. In its third use, 실례합니다 can be replaced by 죄송합니다 if it is to ask for a favor, such as directions. (미안합니다 instead of 죄송합니다 is used to a person you don’t know well, but is younger than you are.)

실례지만 결혼하셨어요?
   Excuse me, but are you married?

저 실례합니다, 안에 누구 계세요?
   Excuse me, is someone in?
Excuse me, but could you tell me how I can get to the subway station?
Excuse me, is this seat taken?
Excuse me, but could you watch my bag for a minute?
I’m sorry, but can you find out for me where our meeting place is tomorrow?

4.6 Expressing condolences and encouragement

• Expressing condolences in formal speech or writing

Please accept my sincere condolences.
I express my deepest condolences.
I pray that his soul will be blessed.

• Expressing condolences in person

You must be very sad. I can’t find the words to console you...
You must have been very shocked. It must be very hard on you.

Please let me know anytime if there is any way I can be of help.

NOTE: A sympathetic look or silence might be all you can offer under some circumstances. In any event, 응답(‘죄송’)합니다 is to be avoided as it is not equivalent to English ‘sorry’ in this situation. 응답(‘죄송’)합니다 can be used only to apologize or to thank for a favor, not to express condolences.

• Encouragement

A: I’m worried about the new business that we are undertaking. It’s got to work out.
B: Don’t worry too much. It’ll be fine.

A: 이번에 중간 고사를 완전히 완성했어.
B: 팬맛이. 다음에 기말고사를 더 잘 보면 되지. 헌내.

A: I completely messed up on the mid-term exam this time.
B: That’s okay. You can make up for it on the final exam. Cheer up.

A: 작장도 잘리고 여자친구한테도 차이고 요즘 갈아서 정말 살맛이 안 난다.
B: 용기를 내세요. 쟁하고 해둘 날 반드시 올 거예요.
A: I got laid off from work and got dumped by my girlfriend. If it’s like this every day, I really have no desire to live.
B: Cheer up. After it rains, the sun will surely come out.

4.7 Extending an invitation or making an offer

- Treating someone to a meal
  A: 교수님, 식사대접을 한 번 하고 싶은데 시간 편찮으세요?
  B: 시간은 편찮은데 학생이 무슨 돈이 있다고?
  A: Professor, I’d like to invite you to a meal. Would you have time for it?
  B: My time is okay, but how can a student have the money?
  A: 시간들 편찮으시면 이번 금요일 저녁에 제가 한턱 내겠습니다.
  B: 야, 우리 과장님 최고다! 감사합니다.
  A: If you are available this Friday evening, I’ll treat you to a nice dinner.
  B: Wow, what a great manager! Thank you.
  A: 오늘 저녁은 내가 쓰게. 뭐 먹고 싶은 거 있으면 말해.
  B: 저녁을 쓰다고? 홈…갑자기 랩스터가 망기는데.
  A: Tonight’s dinner is on me. Let me know if there’s anything you want to eat.
  B: You’re paying? Hmm… suddenly I’m hungry for lobster.

- At a person’s house
  A: 차린 건 없지만 많이 드세요. 임맞에 맞으실지 모르겠네요.
  B: 맞여져 보이는테요. 잘 먹겠습니다.
  A: There’s not much, but help yourself. I hope the food will be to your taste.
  B: Everything looks delicious. Thank you, I’ll enjoy it.

4.8 Telephone expressions

- Asking who is calling
  설레지만 어디세요? 누구세요? May I ask who’s calling?
  어디라고/누구시라고 전해 드릴까요? Who may I tell him is calling?

- Transferring a phone call
  전화 바꿔 드리겠습니다. I will put him on the phone.
  전화 돌려/연결해 드리겠습니다. I will put you through (to the number).
  잠시만 기다리세요.
  (잠시만 is formal-sounding compared to 잠깐만.)

- Answering a phone call which has been transferred to you
  전화 바꿨습니다.
Taking/leaving messages

메시지 전해 드릴까요? or 전할 말씀 있으세요?

May I take a message? or Would you like to leave a message?

그냥 전화 왔었다고 전해 주세요.

Just tell him that I called.

나중에 다시 걸겠다고 전해 주십시오.

Please tell her that I will call again later.

들어오면 저한테 전화 좀 해 달라고 전해 주시겠어요?

Would you tell him to call me when he gets back?

Saying ‘bye’

들어가세요. or 안녕히 계세요.

들어가. or 안녕.

끊어요.

끊어. or 끊을게.

Automated calling instructions

카드의 비밀번호와 우물 ‘정’자 키를 눌러 주시기 바랍니다.

Press your PIN number followed by the pound sign (key).

NOTE: The pound sign resembles the Chinese character 井 (‘정’).

통화를 원하시는 전화번호를 눌러 주시십시오.

Enter the phone number that you wish to call.

국제통화를 원하시면 국가번호, 지역번호, 상대방 전화순으로

입력하십시오.

If you want to make an international call, enter the country code, then

the area code, followed by the phone number you wish to call.

통화 가능 시간은 한시간 십분입니다.

You have 1 hour and 10 minutes of calling time.

지금 거신 번호는 없는 번호이니 확인 후 다시 걸어 주시기 바랍니다.

The number you dialed is not in service. Please check the number and dial again.

지금은 전화를 받을 수 없어 소리센으로 연결됩니다.

The person at this number is not available, so you will be connected
to the answering machine.
4.9 Congratulations and good wishes

- In formal speech or writing

  *I hope all your wishes for the New Year will come true.*

  *I wish you a happy New Year, free of worries and filled with peace.*

  *I wish you a happy New Year with lots of good news.*

  *Wishing you a Merry Christmas...*

  *Congratulations on your wedding. May your marriage be full of happiness!*

  *Congratulations on the birth of your new baby.*

- Either in cards or in person

  *Congratulations on your graduation.*

  *Congratulations on passing the exam.*

  *Take care.*

  *Have a good Christmas/Ch’usŏk.*

  *Happy New Year.*
5 Conversational bridges

Conversations don’t consist just of complete sentences. Speakers need ways to link their utterances, to indicate surprise, to get people’s attention, and so forth. The appropriate use of these ‘bridges’ makes for more authentic and naturally-sounding speech and contributes to smoother communication.

5.1 Fillers

Fillers provide a way to hesitate without ‘losing the floor’ during a conversation. They give speakers a chance to clear their throat, to politely get people’s attention when beginning an utterance, or to think of the right word.

• 그러니까, 그러니까 ‘so; let’s see’

내일 퀴즈 보는 날인데…그러니까, 결석을 하겠다 이 말인가?

Tomorrow is our quiz day...so, are you saying that you will be absent from class?

영주가 지난 주에 교통사고를 당했어. 그러니까 비가 많이 온 수요일이었나 보.

Youngjoo got into a car accident last week. Let’s see, I think it was Wednesday, when it rained a lot.

• 그럼 ‘well; then’

그럼 또 연락하자.                       Well, let’s get in touch again.

그럼 먼저 가 보겠습니다.               Well, excuse me, I will get going first.

• (그) 왜…지(요)/잖아(요) ‘you know,…’

사진 이메일로 보내줄까? 아니면…그 왜…요즘 유행하는 거 있지?

블로그인가 된다는 거. 거기다 올릴까?

Shall I send you photos by e-mail? Or you know, the thing that is popular these days? Blog or something. Shall I upload the photos there?

• 그래 ‘so…’ (to introduce a question)

그래, 요즘 어떻게 지내?             So, how are you doing these days?

그래, 언제 떠날 생각이야?             So, when are you going to leave?
**글쎄(요) ‘well; let’s see’**

A: 이번에 새로 오신 과장님은 어떠세요?
B: 글쎄요, 사람을 평강히 편하게 대해주시는 분 같아요.

   A: What’s your new section chief like?
   B: Well, it seems like he makes people very comfortable.

**뭐 ‘well; you know’**

A: 차 있는데 중고차를 또 샀어요?
B: 뭐, 내가 쓸려고 삼 것이 아니라 동생 추려고.

   A: You bought a used car again even though you already have a car?
   B: Well, it was not for me to use but to give to my younger sister.

**뭐예요/뭐야 ‘you know’**

가족여행을 갔다 갔다가 하면서 한번도 못 갔지 뭐예요.

   We’ve been planning on our family trip, saying ‘we’re going, we’re going.’
   but haven’t made it even once, you know.

친구 생일을 까맣게 뭐야.

   My friend’s birthday slipped my mind, you know.

**뭐라 그렇게(요) ‘How shall I put it?’**

영화가 제작비는 많이 들여서 불거리지는 많지만, 뭐라 그렇게, 내용은 없다고나 할까…

   The movie offers a lot to see, thanks to the high production cost, but how shall I put it, shall I say that it lacks substance…

**그게 뭐더라, 그게 뭐지(요) ‘What do you call it?’**

A: 우리 이번에 좌석 가서 뭐 할까?
B: 하이킹도 하고 또 그게 뭐지, 바다 속에 들어가서 물고기 구경하는 거.

   A: What shall we do when we go on summer vacation this time?
   B: Let’s do hiking and also what do you call it when we go into the ocean and watch the fish. Is it snorkeling?

**어…, 애…, 음 ‘uh…’**

부탁이 있는데요, 어…, 돈 좀 빌려 줄 수 있어요?

   I have a favor to ask of you, uh…can you lend me some money?
• 어디 ‘well; now; let me see’

어디 한 번 먹어 봐가?  Well, shall I try it (the food)?
어디 누가 더 잘 하나 보자.  Now, let’s see who’s doing it better.

• 차 ‘well; here; here you are’

차 이제 시작할까요?  Well, shall we begin?
차 식기 전에 듣시다.  Here, let’s eat before it gets cold.

• 저… ‘well; excuse me’

저 혹시 진호 아버님 아니세요?  Excuse me, are you Jinho’s father by any chance?

• 있지(요), 잃잡아(요) ‘well; excuse me’

언니, 있지, 언니가 새로 산 옷 내일 좀 빌려 줄래?  Sis, well, can I borrow your new clothes tomorrow?
형, 잃잡아요, 지난 번 형이 부탁한 일 다 못 끝냈는데, 시간 좀 더 줄 수 있어요?  Brother, well, I haven’t finished the work that you asked me to do.
Can you give me some more time?

• 저기(요), 저기 잃잡아(요) ‘well; excuse me’

저기 잃잡아요, 내일 바쁘지 않으면 차 한 잔 하실래요?  Well, if you’re not busy tomorrow, would you like to have a cup of tea with me?
저기...혹시 한국분이세요?  Excuse me, are you Korean by any chance?

• 저기 말이에요/말이야 ‘you see, you know,…’

엄마, 저기 말이에요, 제가 용돈이 다 떨어져 가기든요.  Mom, you know, I’m running out of spending money.

5.2 Transition expressions

The following expressions are used in speaking or writing, particularly when there is a need to indicate a ‘logical’ relation between one sentence and another, to change the subject, or to mark a contrast.

• According to rumor

소문에 의하면 이 작품은 한국영화 사상 최고의 코미디영화라고 한다.  According to rumor, this movie is the best comedy in Korean movie history.

• Against one’s will

생일 모임을 조촐하게 가지려고 했는데 본의 아니게 규모가 커졌어요.  I was planning on a small birthday party, but against my will it became large.
• As I said

As I said earlier, bilateral summit talks are scheduled for tomorrow.

As I said earlier, I’m not going to participate in the voting process this time.

• As you know; as is known

As you know, doing well in school does not guarantee success.

As is generally known, Beethoven’s symphony no. 5 is named ‘Fate.’

• As you mentioned

I met that friend yesterday by chance. As you mentioned, he is very manly and big-hearted.

• At any rate; anyway; no matter what

It would have been nice if I passed the test. At any rate, knowing the result makes me feel less burdened.

No matter what, there’s nothing that person cannot do.

What’s the point of training hard? The competing players have already been designated anyway.

• By the way

Hyesu got married this summer? By the way, what did you do this summer?

• Consequently

That factory was not used for a long time. Consequently, the interior is now almost entirely dilapidated.

• For example

The so-called ‘nut class’ includes, for example, chestnuts, gingko nuts, walnuts, pine nuts, etc.
Try some exercise. Like jogging or swimming, for example.

- Frankly speaking
  솔직히 말씀드리자면, 제가 좀 서운했었어요.
  Frankly speaking, I was a little disappointed.
  (특) 까놓고 말해서, 너는 너무 남에 대한 배려가 없어, 자식아.
  Frankly speaking, you’re really not considerate of others, dude. [familiar/casual]

- Furthermore
  미스터 박은 이 프로젝트를 하기에는 너무 경험이 없고 더욱이/
  너무나/더군다나 추진력도 없습니다.
  Mr. Park is too inexperienced and furthermore not very motivated
  for this project.
  그 호텔은 서비스도 좋지 않고 게다가 청결하지도 않아요.
  That hotel has bad service, and furthermore is not clean.

- In contrast
  최신형 국산 디지털 카메라는 4 GB 메모리를 인식할 수 있습니다.
  반면에(예) 외국 제품들은 이러한 메모리에 대한 대처가 뒤떨어집니다.
  The latest Korean-made digital camera can take a 4 GB memory card.
  In contrast, foreign products are behind in dealing with memory.

- Indeed; really
  이번 사고는 참으로/실로 개탄스러운 일이 아닐 수 없습니다.
  This accident is indeed deplorable. [written/formal]
  그 사람은 정말 인간성이 좋아.
  That person has a really good personality.
  홍작 탓에 과일 값이 그야말로 급값이에요.
  Because of a bad harvest, the price of fruit is really like the price of gold.

- In fact
  무뚝뚝해 보이지만 실은/사실 아주 자상한 사람이야.
  He appears to be brusque, but in fact, he’s a very thoughtful person.
  먼저 3 승을 거둔 우리팀은 사실상 본선 진출이 확정됐습니다.
  Being the first team to have three wins, our team has in fact been guaranteed
  to advance to the championship game.
  이 케이크, 고마워요. 안 그래도/그렇지 않아도 단 게 먹고 싶었는데.
  Thanks for this cake. In fact, I wanted to eat something sweet.

- In my opinion
  제 생각에는 이번 상반기에 물가가 상승할 것 같습니다.
  In my opinion, it seems like prices will increase in the first half of the year.
In my opinion, it seems that especially home prices will increase a lot.

In short, managing stress is the most important thing for your health.

In some respects

Living as a single person is sometimes lonely and tough; however, in some respects there are many advantages as well.

In spite of that; even so; nevertheless

This year, our company’s sales decreased. In spite of that, in terms of competition with other companies, we still have the upper hand.

In the end; finally

For the last two years, various public relations efforts raised the popularity of the product. In the end, we had 200 million dollars in sales this year.
• In other words; that is to say; so-called

That person is very knowledgeable. In other words, he is a walking encyclopedia.

The fact that someone is given a lot of responsibilities means (is to say) that there will also be an increased workload for him/her.

Mr. Park was arrested for selling imitation name brands, the so-called, ‘tchakt’ung.’

• No wonder; as expected; sure enough

After being that lazy in the morning, no wonder you were late. It was totally predictable.

South Korean soccer players are strong, just as expected.

I knew we were sure to win, and sure enough...

• Now that I think of it

A: They say that eating an apple once a day is good for your health.
B: Now that I think of it, I didn’t eat an apple today!

• On the one hand…on the other hand

On the one hand, I’m happy now that the dissertation I’ve been working on for a long time is finished; but on the other hand, I feel that I could have done better.

• Otherwise

If the two parties jointly engage in friendly negotiations, then problems can be quickly solved. Otherwise, the dispute will continue for a long time.

• Rather; on the contrary

모자리를 쓰는 것 자체가 탈모를 유발하지는 않는다. 오히려 여름에는 모자가 강렬한 자외선으로부터 머리를 보호해 준다.
Wearing hats in and of itself does not cause hair loss. On the contrary, in the summer, hats protect the head from UV rays.

Rather than praise, I just received punishment.

• Speaking of which

A: 요즘 회사 사정이 많이 안 좋아지고 있다지?
B: 말이 나왔으니까 말인데, 잘하면 두더기로 명퇴를 당할지도 모른대.
   A: I hear that our company situation is getting very bad these days, is that right?
   B: Speaking of which, I heard that if we are unlucky, we may be faced with a call for massive ‘voluntary’ retirements.

• That’s why; so

A: 배가 고파서 이것저것 막 먹었더니 배가 아프네.
B: 그러니까 내가 뭐라 했어? 조금만 먹으라고 했잖아.
   A: I was hungry, so I ate anything I could get my hands on and now my stomach hurts.
   B: So what did I say? I told you to just eat a little.

• Therefore

어제 또 늦게 쫓구나. 그러니까 늦 아침에 일찍 몫 일어나지.
   I bet you went to bed late again last night. That’s why you can never get up early in the morning.

그 당시 나는 성격이 매우 외향적이었다. 그래서 내 주변에는 늘 많은 친구들이 있었다.
   At that time, my personality was very outgoing. Therefore, I always had many friends around me.

인간은 말을 할 수 있다. 그러므로/고로 동물과 구별된다. [written/formal]
   Humans can speak. Therefore, they can be distinguished from animals.

• Too; also

형이 공부를 잘 하더니 동생도 역시 잘 한다.
   The older brother did well in school, and the younger brother is doing well too.

태풍으로 벼길이 모두 끊기고 국내선 여객기 운항 또한 중단됐습니다.
   [written/formal]
   A typhoon caused sea routes to be closed and also domestic flights to be cancelled.

• Perhaps; maybe; in all likelihood

아마 내가 이 프로젝트를 맡았어도 잘 했을 거야.
   Perhaps, if you had taken on this project, you would have done just as well.

어쩌면 이번 겨울에 한국에 출장 갈지 모릅니다.
   I may go to Korea on a business trip this winter.
It remains to be seen whether there will be side effects from the LASIK surgery.

In all likelihood, that person will not deceive other people at least.

5.3 Interjections

Interjections are typical of the spoken language, and are most common in more casual speech. As in English, their appropriateness varies with the speaker’s personality and with the setting.

- Go! (when cheering someone or a team)
  우리 팀, 화이팅!
  합내자, 아아야자 화이팅!  Go team, go!
  Cheer up, let’s fight!

- Cheers! (when making a toast)
  건배
  원샷 <one shot>
  위하여
  Cheers; To (our health, etc.)
  Bottoms up.
  Bottoms up.

- Hurrah
  (우)와 /만세, 우리가 이겼다!  Hurrah, we’ve won!

- Go to hell
  염병할, 얼어 죽음, 빙어 먹을

- No way
  설마, 그럴리가.  No way, it cannot be true.

- Oh; oh by the way
  아, 알았다.
  참, 오늘 모임이 몇 시지요?  Oh, I see.
  Oh, what time is our meeting today?

- Oh dear; oh boy; oh no
  아침/아차, 깨밥 잇고 지갑을 안 갖고 나왔네.
  Oh dear, I forgot to bring my purse.

  이런, 가스볼을 끄고 나온다는 거.
  Oh no, I should have turned off the gas before coming out.

  어휴, 답답해, 수십번 설명을 해도 이해를 못하니.
  Oh boy, how frustrating. You just don’t get it no matter how many times I explain.

  어이 정말, 약속을 해 놓고 안 나타나면 어먹해!
  Oh boy, how can he not show up after having made an appointment!
Oh dear, how tough it must be for a little child to study while working.

Oh no, to lose parents at such a young age...

Oh no, how sad, I feel so sorry for them.

Oh no, how sad, I feel so sorry for them.

Oh fuck; damn it

Oh, I got another parking ticket.

Damn it, how come nothing’s going well today?

Oh my (goodness); oh my god

Oh my goodness, who is this? Welcome.

Oh my goodness, I’m so glad to see you. What brought you here?

Oh my god, you’re late again?

Ah? 대문이 열려 있어! 나갈 때 분명히 잠갔는데.

Oh my god, the door is open! I swear I locked it when I went out.

Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ, I’ve never seen such a weird thing.

Oh lord, so much gray hair...

Jesus Christ, how can he be yelling at me when he is the one at fault?

Oops

Oops, I’m so sorry. I poured coffee on your new purse...

Oops, I almost tripped.

Ouch

Ouch! There’s a rock in the rice.

Ouch, it hurts!
• Ta-dah
   제안! 찾아봤어요.  
   Ta-dah! I found it.
   제안, 기대하시라.  
   Ta-dah, guess what you are going to see.

• What a bastard/bitch
   망할 놈/녀, 미친 놈/녀, 못된 놈/녀

• What the heck; I don’t care
   될 대로 되라지, 까짓것.  
   Que sera sera, what the heck.
   에라, 모르겠다. 내일 하지 뭐.  
   What the heck, I don’t care. I will do it tomorrow, I guess.

• Whew; phew
   어떨, 이제 살았다!  
   Whew, I survived!
   휴우, 싱한 감수했네.  
   Phew, I got so scared that I lost 10 years of my life.

• Wow, yeah
   야 진난다, 드디어 방학이다!  
   Wow, exciting, it’s a vacation at last!
   와, 번지점프 정말 재미있다.  
   Wow, isn’t the bungee jump fun?
   어ulumi, 너무 멋있다!  
   Wow, how cool! [feminine]
   아싸, 또 이것네.  
   Yeah, I won again.

• Yikes
   요, 징그러.  
   Yikes, it’s gross.

Here are some additional examples expressing emotion or a strong reaction.

홍, 지가 잡았으면 얼마나 잘낫어?  
Give me a break – who does he think he is?
체/치/피, 웃기고 있어 정말.  
Shhh – give me a break.
개개, 겨우 천원을 주세요?  
So little – are you giving me just W1,000?
아주, 겁도 없이 나한테 대들어 보겠다는 거야?  
How dare you – are you starting a fight with me?
얼씨구, 늘고 있는데.  
Look at you – how ridiculous!
에이, 이런 태우를 받느니 차라리 그만두는 게 낫겠다.  
Gee – it would be better to quit than be treated like this.
6 Softening strategies

A vital feature of courteous communication in Korean is the avoidance of directness, especially with respect to commands, requests, and queries.

6.1 Use of questions in place of commands and proposals

Commands and proposals tend to be softened especially when the speaker is not close to the addressee, unless the action being requested is for the benefit of that person (잘 자요, 안녕히 가세요, etc.). This is very commonly achieved by expressing requests as questions.

Command forms:

소금 좀 주라/취/취요/주세요. (See 1.5 about 주라.)

Please pass the salt.

Question forms:

소금 좀 줄래요/줄래요요/주실래요요/주시겠어요?

Could you pass the salt?

The contrasts among the various sentence endings in these examples, and even the presence of the honorific suffix -시, don’t have much to do with softening. Rather, the softening effect is associated with the use of the question.

A word of caution is in order here. The English patterns (‘Would/Could you…?’) typically used to translate Korean formal endings and honorific verb forms are misleading. Whereas these patterns can be used in English to anyone, including close friends or even children, the Korean formal endings and honorific verb forms are inappropriate for close friends or children. For example, you never say 소금 좀 주시겠어요? to a five-year-old child, even though you could say ‘Could you pass me the salt?’ in this situation in English. It is always appropriate to be courteous and polite no matter who you are speaking to, be it a child or a close friend, but it is not appropriate to be formal and deferential to such a person.

Proposal forms such as 믿으십시오다, with both the formal 합시다 style and honorific -시, are not used, except by quite old, mostly male speakers. Where additional deference is called for, the proposal is usually made indirectly, by changing it into a suggestion or a question.
Let’s go together. (most direct)

Let’s go together.

Why don’t we go together?

Shall we go together?

Would you like to go together? (least direct)

6.2 Softening with the help of special verbs

6.2.1 The verb: 주다

Commands are often turned into requests with the help of 주다, which is used to indicate that compliance with the request would be of benefit to the speaker. Turning a command into a request for a favor has a dramatic softening effect.

The following examples illustrate how different sentence endings, in combination with the verb 주다, vary in terms of directness (and, therefore, courtesy). They are presented in descending order of directness, from most direct to least direct (softest).

Keep quiet.

Please keep quiet.

We’d like it if you would keep quiet.

Would you please keep quiet for us?

Would it be possible for you to keep quiet for us?

Come right away.

Please come right away.

We’d like you to come right away.

Would you please come right away?

Would it be possible to come right away?

Let me borrow your book.

Please let me borrow your book.

Would you please let me borrow your book?

Would it be possible to borrow your book?

To further soften your request, you can start with 죄송하지만 ‘excuse me’ (see 4.5).
6.2.2 *The verb:* 보다

The auxiliary verb 보다 is widely used to soften the speaker’s assertion by making it less direct and by reducing his/her commitment to the statement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>저는 가 보겠습니까.</td>
<td>I’ll get going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한번 해 보겠습니다.</td>
<td>I’ll give it a try.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제가 알아보겠습니다.</td>
<td>I’ll try to find out about it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use of 보다 turns a command into a suggestion such as ‘Why don’t you...(for your own sake)?’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이제 그만 가.</td>
<td>Go now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why don’t you go now?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thanks to the use of 보다, commands become milder and less direct, creating the impression that the speaker is leaving some room for the other person to make a choice by saying ‘Try it (if you’d like).’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이 거 하나 드셔 보세요.</td>
<td>Try (to eat) this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 영양크림 좀 발라 보세요.</td>
<td>Try this nourishing cream.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2.3 *The verb:* 되다

The -게 되다 pattern indicates that something happens in a way that is out of one’s control. It can be used to avoid indicating direct involvement by the speaker in an event or a decision, thereby reducing his/her responsibility for it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>실례인 줄 알면서도 이렇게 늦게 전화드리게 됐습니다.</td>
<td>Even though I know it’s a breach of etiquette, I’ve ended up phoning you this late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본의 아니게 약속을 어기게 돼서 죄송합니다.</td>
<td>I’m sorry I ended up having to break my promise even though I didn’t mean to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한꺼번에 추천서를 3 통씩이나 부탁드리게 됐어요.</td>
<td>It has turned out that I have to ask for as many as three recommendation letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어떻게 하다 보니까 그렇게 됐어요.</td>
<td>One thing led to another and it just turned out that way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여자 친구하고 혼자기게 됐어.</td>
<td>It turns out that I’ll be breaking up with my girlfriend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래 된 옷은 안 입게 된다.</td>
<td>I tend not to wear old clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자꾸 밤에 늦게 자게 된다.</td>
<td>I keep ending up going to bed late at night.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The -게 되다 pattern can also be used to imply that because events have transpired beyond the control of the speaker, (s)he cannot take credit for them. By not bragging, the speaker softens his/her statement.
It turns out that I’ll be receiving a full scholarship next semester.

It turns out that I’ll be getting promoted this time.

6.2.4 The verb: 하다

The verb 하다 provides a useful strategy for expressing a thought less directly, thereby softening the statement. As the following examples illustrate, expressions with 하다 are often more appropriate than their counterparts, especially in a formal situation.

어떤 걸로 하시겠어요? What would you like to have?
뭐 드시겠어요? What would you like to eat?
이 배 한 상자에 어떻게 해요? How much does a box of pears go for?
이 배 한 상자에 얼마예요? How much is a box of these pears?
나쁜 습관은 좀 고치도록 해. Make sure to correct your bad habits.
나쁜 습관은 좀 고쳐. Correct your bad habits.
너무 늦지 않도록 하세요. Make sure not to be too late.
너무 늦지 마세요. Don’t be too late.

6.2.5 The verb: 그렇다

The expression 그렇다 proves especially useful when trying to avoid saying something unpleasant or something that one doesn’t feel comfortable going into detail about. It therefore provides an efficient hedging device.

A: 이 옷 어때요?
B: 그 옷은 좀 그렇다. 색깔이 좀 그렇지 않니?  
   A: What do you think of these clothes?
   B: Those clothes are a bit…not quite. Isn’t the color a little off?

A: 이런 말씀 드리기 좀 그렇지만, 내일부터 못 나올 것 같습니다.
B: 아니, 이렇게 갑작스럽게 그만두면 어떻게 해요?  
   A: It’s a bit hard for me to say this, but I won’t be able to come, starting tomorrow.
   B: What, how can you quit suddenly like this?

A: 무슨 일 있어요? 기분이 안 좋아 보여요.
B: 오늘 집안 분위기가 좀 그래서 나도 기분이 좀 그래네요.
   A: Are you alright? You don’t seem to be in a good mood.
   B: I feel a little down because the atmosphere at home is kind of bad.

A: 무슨 안 좋은 일 있었어요?  
B: 그런 일이 좀 있었어요.  
   A: Has anything bad happened?
   B: There was something.
6.3 Softening with the help of special endings

The following endings offer a way to soften an assertion and/or close a sentence in a non-abrupt manner.

6.3.1 -데(요): non-abrupt ending

-데(요), which is derived from the connective 그런데 ‘but then/and then,’ is in general used to imply that the speaker has something to add or that (s)he expects the listener to respond. It provides a nice way to avoid ending the dialogue too abruptly, and makes statements sound less direct and more polite than they would be with just - 요.

A: 선생님 지금 택에 계신지요?
B: 안 계시는데요. (실례지만 누구세요?)  (vs. 안 계세요.)
   A: Is the teacher home?
   B: He’s not home. (But may I ask who’s calling?)

A: 제가 뒤 도와 드릴 일 있나요?
B: 없는데요. (신경써 주셔서 감사합니다.)  (vs. 없어요.)
   A: Is there anything I can help with?
   B: No. (But thank you for your concern).

6.3.2 -지(요): gentle questions and suggestions

Questions with the -지(요) ending, as in 누구시죠?, are gentler than ones with the 해(요) style ending, as in 누구세요? (지요 is often reduced to 조.)

지금 몇 시나 됐죠?  What time is it now?
여기가 어디죠?  Where are we?
다 함께 쫓아 얼마나죠?  How much is it in total?
A direct proposal (안을시다) or command (으세요) turns into a soft suggestion with the -지(요)/요 ending.

이쪽으로 앉으시지요.  Why don’t you sit over here?
다운데 선풍기 좀 끄요.  It’s hot; why don’t we turn on the fan?

6.3.3 -구(요): gentle questions and commands

-구(요) is associated with a softer variety of commands and questions. It is usually intermixed with the regular 해(요) style ending when there are multiple questions/commands.

그동안 잘 지냈어요? 논문은 잘 마쳤어요?
How have you been? And how is your dissertation going?
이거 무슨 나물이에요? 겠은 얼마구요?
What kind of vegetable is this? And how much is it?

5박 6일 페키지로 예약해 주세요. 호텔은 바닷가 근처로 잡아 주시구요.
Please reserve a 5-night, 6-day package for me. And get a hotel near the beach.
그럼 건강하게 잘 지내세요. 한국 나오시면 연락 주시구요.
Take care and goodbye. And let me know if you are coming to Korea.

6.3.4 -나요, -은가요: gentle questions

-나요 (for action verbs and past tense) and -은가요/ㄴ가요 (for present tense descriptive verbs) form gentle questions for which an answer is not strongly demanded.

진선이 지금 집에 있나요? 보통 몇 시쯤 들어오나요?
Is Jin-sun home right now? Around what time does she usually come home?
김선님 지금 밖에 게시가요? 보통 몇 시쯤 들어오시나요?
Is Mr. Kim home right now? Around what time does he usually come home?

NOTE: For some reason, 게시다 (the honorific counterpart of 있다) takes -가요 more frequently than -나요.

국이 너무 싱거운가요? 소금이 좀 덜 들어갔나요?
Is the soup too bland? Did it not have enough salt?
목 마르니? 쥐개가 너무 쏣나?
Are you thirsty? I wonder whether the stew was too salty.
6.4 Other softening strategies

6.4.1 어떻게

Questions with 어떻게 are considered gentler than those with 왜. So 어떻게 오셨습니까? ‘What brings you here?’ is preferred to 왜 오셨습니까? ‘Why are you here?’

The 어떻게 되요/되세요? pattern offers a polite indirect way of asking for information in general.

전화번호가 어떻게 되요? (vs. 전화번호가 뭐예요?)
What is your phone number?
연세가 어떻게 되세요? (vs. 연세가 몇이세요?)
How old are you?
가격이 어떻게 되요? (vs. 값이 얼마예요?)
What’s the price?
사이즈가 어떻게 되요? (vs. 사이즈가 얼마예요/몇이예요?)
What’s the size?
생일이 어떻게 되요? (vs. 생일이 언제예요?)
When is your birthday?

6.4.2 좀

Questions or commands are often softened by the use of an imploring 좀 ‘please!’, which literally means ‘a little bit.’

좀 어떠세요?
So, how are you feeling?
 어떻게 좀 안 될까요?
Is there any way to make it work?
방 청소 좀 해라. 빨리 좀 해!
Please clean up the room. Quickly, please.
제발 가볼지 좀 마.
Please calm down and behave.
귀찮게 좀 하지 마라.
Leave me alone, please.

6.4.3 -고 해서

This is a useful hedging device when one doesn’t want to pinpoint a specific reason or enumerate all the reasons for one’s action. It is less direct than -어서.

A: 안녕하세요? 웨밀이세요?
B: 드릴 말씀도 있고 해서 찾아 왔어요. (vs. 드릴 말씀이 있어서…)

A: How are you? What brought you here?
B: I have something to tell you and so forth, so I came to see you.
A: 아니, 그냥 와도 되는데 무슨 선물을 이렇게 많이 사 왔어요?
B: 그전에 신세진 것도 있고 해서요. (vs. 신세진 것이 있어서요.)

A: Oh no, you didn’t have to do this. What did you bring all these presents for?
B: Because there’s something I owe you from the past and stuff like that.

A: 또 이사가시려구요?
B: 예, 교통도 좀 불편하고 해서 학교 근처로 가려구요.

A: You are going to move again?
B: Yes, the commute is inconvenient and so on, so I am going to move near school.

6.4.4 -는/은 편이다

This expression of approximation ‘kind of…’ is useful in toning down a statement when pointing out characteristics that are negative. It diminishes the negative impact of the statement.

공부를 못하는 편이야. (vs. 공부를 못해.)

She’s sort of not good academically.

성격이 까다로운 편이다. (vs. 성격이 까다롭다.)

He’s kind of finicky.

In general, -편이다 is a convenient way of making one’s statement less assertive and less committal by not being specific.

A: 머느리가 자주 찾아 와요? Does your daughter-in-law come to see you often?
B: 자주 오는 편이에요. She kind of does. (She tends to.)

A: 지도 교수가 친절하니? Is your academic supervisor nice?
B: 응, 그런 편이야. Yes, she is, kind of.

6.4.5 -거 같다, -을까 하다/싶다

These are useful when it comes to softening the speaker’s assertion.

음식이 맛이 좀 갈 거 같다.

I think that the food has gone bad.

두 사람이 승진하기 위해 서로 경쟁하는 거 같아요.

I think that those two are competing to get promoted.

경기가 무승부로 끝날 거 같네요.

I think that the game will end in a tie.

제 생각엔 결혼을 졸업 후로 미루는 게 좋지 않을까 하는데요.

In my opinion, it might be better to postpone the wedding until after graduation.

사업자금 좀 대 주실 수 있을까 해서 왔습니다.

I came wondering whether you can help me with my business start-up fund.

그 장관이 내일 사임의사를 표명하지 않을까 싶습니다.

I think that the Cabinet minister may express his intention to resign tomorrow.
7 Local dialects

Throughout this book, we focus on Standard Korean (표준말), which is spoken by educated people in the Seoul area. However, a familiarity with non-standard dialects (사투리) is also useful because they are often encountered when traveling and in movies and TV dramas. This section offers a brief summary of the distinctive features of various of these dialects. Aside from the fact that the Kyŏngsang dialect and the Hamgyŏng dialect have tones – unlike all other varieties of Korean – the differences involve mainly verb endings and the way certain words are pronounced. (In the examples of dialectal speech that follow, the standard Korean equivalents are provided in the right-hand column.)

7.1 Ch’ungch’ŏng dialect (충청도 사투리)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>뭐여?</td>
<td>뭐야? (Brother, that’s not it.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성, 그게 아니여.</td>
<td>형, 그게 아니야.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안녕하세요?</td>
<td>안녕하세요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알겠슈?</td>
<td>알겠어요 (Do you get it?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>진지 드셨슈?</td>
<td>진지 드셨어요. (Have you eaten?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니유, 안 먹었시유.</td>
<td>아니오, 안 먹었어요. (No, I haven’t eaten.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어쩔 수 없어서 그랬나 뷔.</td>
<td>...그랬나 뷔. (Maybe she did it because she couldn’t help it.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2 Chŏlla dialect (전라도 사투리)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>뒷 맘세?</td>
<td>무엇때문에? (Because of what?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그란디</td>
<td>그런데</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그랑께 or 궁께</td>
<td>그러니까</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거시기</td>
<td>그것, 저기/거기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정말로 부탁한당께.</td>
<td>정말 부탁한다. (I’m really counting on you.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방갑당께요. 오매 반가운 거.</td>
<td>반가워요. 정말 반갑다. (So glad to see you.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안녕하신구라?</td>
<td>안녕하세요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘 계신당가요?</td>
<td>잘 계신가요? (Is he doing well?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
그간에 잘 있었느가?
(How have you been?)
어마만어요!
(Long time, no see!)
고맙구만이라이.
고마워요.
미안하구만이라이.
미안해요.
정하게 날씨가 좋아부러.
정말 날씨가 좋다.
여기 오시능마요.
여기 오시는구만요.
워디가쳤 commodo?
어디가쳤어요?

7.3 Kyŏngsang dialect (경상도 사투리)
반갑심니데이나 or 반갑싿디더.
반갑습니다.
(Nice meeting you.)
고맙심니데이나 or 고맙싿디더.
고맙습니다.
(It’s been a long time.)
욕봤심니데이나 or 욕봤심디더.
욕봤습니다, meaning 수고했습니다.
오랜만입니다.
(It’s been a long time.)
아닙니다 or 아니야예.
아닙니다. 아니에요.
(No, it’s not; Not at all.)
쌤님 질문 있심더.
쌤님 질문 있습니다.
어디 가노?
어디 가나?
(Where are you going?)
어디 갔느나?
어디 갔었느니?
(Where have you been?)
왜 그러니?
(Why…?)
뭐라고 하니?
(What is she saying?)
잘 가라.
( Bye.)
미안하니예 or 미안네.
미안하다.
7.4 Cheju dialect (제주도 사투리)

하르방/할망 | 할아버지/할머니
아방/어명 | 아버지/어머니
혼저 옮서예. | 어서 오십시오.
어드러 감수광? | 어디 가세요?
고맙쑤다. | 고맙습니다.
미안허우다. | 미안합니다.
이거 얼마봐? | 이거 얼마입니까?

7.5 Hamgyŏng dialect (함경도 사투리)

아주바이 | 아저씨
무시기 | 무엇
날래 가지비. | 빨리 가지.
하꼬마/함매? | 합니까?
했소꼬마/됬습니까? | 했습니다/했습니다?
하겠소꼬마/하겠습니까? | 하겠습니다/하겠습니다?

7.6 P’yŏng’ an dialect (평안도 사투리)

denggjang | 정거장 (train station)
과자가 보수라더. | 과자가 부스러져. (The cookies are crumbling.)
그 노래 드뎌 왔? | 그 노래 들어 왔니까? (Have you heard the song?)
아무도 없었수다. | 아무도 없었습니다. (There was no one.)
그 사람 어드메 간? | 그 사람 어디 갔니? (Where is he gone?)
8 Written versus spoken language

Except for informal personal letters, written language differs from colloquial speech in many ways. (Many features of written language are also employed in formal speech.) Wherever possible throughout this book, we provide information about whether particular expressions are more appropriate for formal writing/speech or colloquial speech. The following is a summary of recurring features of written/formal language. (Throughout this chapter, spoken counterparts are provided in square brackets.)

8.1 Grammatical differences

8.1.1 Sentence endings (see 1.5)

• Different sentence endings are used for formal writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>독촉행사가 열린다.</td>
<td>Fireworks will take place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어가지 마시오.</td>
<td>Do not enter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하늘을 보라.</td>
<td>Look at the sky.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>통일은 가능한가?</td>
<td>Is unification possible?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Sentences often end in a noun or are shortened in headlines or announcements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>경숙</td>
<td>Keep quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>접근금지</td>
<td>Keep out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦으면 절대 안 됩</td>
<td>No tardiness allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉽지 않을 듯</td>
<td>Looks like it won’t be easy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>항상 건강하시길.</td>
<td>Take care.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.2 Particles (see ch. 19)

• Different particles are used for formal writing/speech.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>전문가에게 문의하시오.</td>
<td>Consult an expert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작가에게 원고를 보내라고 하십시오.</td>
<td>Tell the author to send the manuscript.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.1.3 Others

- No honorific expressions are used in impersonal writing/speech (see 2.6).

서울 시장은 격노한 시민들에게 사죄의 뜻을 밝혔다.
The mayor of Seoul expressed his intention of apologizing to the infuriated citizens.

- Different types of pronouns are used in formal writing/speech (see 3.2).

그는 누구인가? [그 남자/여자/분/사람은 누구입니까?]

- Different quoting verb forms are used in formal writing/speech (see 22.1.2).

위험하다고 한다. [위험하다 그런다. or 위험하다.]

It’s said to be dangerous.

방문한다고 밝혔다. [방문하다 그랬어요. or 방문한답어요.]

He announced that he would visit.

8.2 Vocabulary differences (see 9.1)

Vocabulary tends to be more technical-sounding in formal writing/speech.

신장과 체중 [키하고 몸무게] height and weight
신속한 회복을 바랍니다. [빨리 납기를 바랍니다.] I wish you a speedy recovery.
경찰에 검거되었다. [경찰에 잡혔다.] He got arrested by the police.
협상이 결렬되었다. [협상이 깨졌다.] The negotiations fell through.
바퀴가 파열되었다. [타이어가 터졌다] /بابбил났다.] We got a flat tire.
화재가 발생했다. [불이 났다.] A fire broke out.
무척 많다. [무지/되게/엄청 많다.] There’s a lot.
대단히 감사합니다. [정말 고맙습니다.] Thank you very much.
8.3 Spelling/pronunciation differences

8.3.1 Contraction

Contraction in general is not allowed in highly formal writing. The spellings in square brackets below reflect what is said. (Some formal speech such as news broadcasts tend to use an extremely careful style of speech that is as faithful as possible to the written form of the language.) These spellings may or may not be permitted in writing, depending on the degree of formality. The more formal the writing, the less contraction is allowed. The following groups of examples are presented in approximate descending order of tolerability in writing with (a) being the most tolerable and (c) being the least. (A small glossary containing some of the less familiar items is provided at the end of the section.)

(a) 그러면 [그럼] 아니오 [아뇨]
   얼마지요 [얼마죠] 되었습니다 [רא었습니다]
   보았어요 [봤어요] 나의/저의 [내/제]
   무엇 [뭐] 무엇이 [뭐가]
   무엇을 [뭐] 한 눈 파는 사이 […세]

(b) -것 [~거] 이것 [이거]
   이것은 [이게] 이것은 [이건]
   이것을 [이걸] 어느 것인가 [어느 건가]
   이야기 [얘기] 이 아이 [얘]
   그 아이 [개] 지 아이 [제]
   그런데 [근데] 도리어 [되려]
   놓아 두어 [뇌 뒀] 그만두세요 [관두세요]
   나는 [난] 너를 [널]
   누구를 [누구] 어디인지 [어딘지]
   좋으냐고 [좋나고] 작으니? [작니?]

(c) 사과는 [사관] 학교를 [학교]
   왔다는 소리 [왔단 소리] 가수인 것 같다 [가수건 같다]
   작가입니다 [작가입니다] 재미있다 [재밌다]
   어디 있어 [어디 있어] 마음 [말]
   처음 [처] 다음 [담]
   친구때문에 [친구 때문에] 아무 말 하지마 [알말 하지마]
   아무리 싫어도 [암만 싫어도] 아니면 말고 [아님 말 IDD]
   싫으면 그만둬 [싫음 관뒤] 다 했으면 나가 [다 했음 나가]
8.3.2 Gaps between spelling and pronunciation

The current standard spelling conventions for the following words do not actually represent how they are often pronounced.

- **Spelled with 부 but often pronounced 푆**
  - 그리고 [그리غو] 자고 나서 [자구 나서]
  - 먹고 싶다 [먹구 싶다] 먹어도 배고파 [먹어두 배고파]
  - 빵도 사자 [빵두 사자] 아무리 해도 [아무리 해두]
  - 바로 와 [바루 와] 앞으로 [앞으로]
  - 위로 올라가 [위루 올라가]

- **Spelled with 뒤 but often pronounced 푆**
  - 거내 [끄내] 성질 [승질]
  - 덜 답다 [들 답다] 하던 일 [하든 일]
  - 오디라 [오드라] 아버지 [아브지]

- **Spelled with 뒤 but often pronounced 뒤 (sometimes even spelled with 뒤)**
  - 알아 [약어] 바빠요 [바뻐요]
  - 알아 [약어] 아파서 [아파서]

- **Spelled with 뒤 but often pronounced 뒤**
  - 갑아요 [갑애요] 아기 [애기]
  - 보자기 [보재기] 창피해 [탱피해]

- **Spelled with 뒤 or 뒤 but often pronounced 뒤**
  - 저희들 [지들] 너희들 [너들]
  - 네 거 [니 거] 제 거 [지 거]

- **Miscellaneous vowel sound changes**
  - 들려요 [들려요] 들르세요 [들리세요]
  - 예쁘다 [이쁘다]
• Spelled with a plain consonant but often pronounced with a tense consonant

버스 [배쓰] 배지 [배찌]
詹姆 [詹姆] 닭아요 [닭아요]
잘렸어 [잘렸어] 숙맥 [쑥맥]

• Loan words spelled one way but often pronounced differently

스웨터 [세타] 팬티 [빤쓰]
런닝셔츠 [난닝구] 브레지어 [布拉자]

• Usually spelled without an extra ᵋ, but often pronounced with one

아프다기에 [아프다킬래]
좋아 보이기에 [좋아 보이킬래]
이기로 [이 길로]
가려다가 [갈려다가 or 갈래다가]
가려면 [갈려면 or 갈래면]
보러는데 [불러는데 or 불래는데]
먹으려고 [먹을려고 or 먹을라고]
자르려고 [잘들려고 or 잘올라고]
하려고 해도 [할려고 해도 or 할라고 해도]

‘Phonetic spelling’ is sometimes employed for expressions that are used exclusively in speaking. One such form is -(더라)구요, which is usually written with a 구 to reflect its pronunciation even though it is really the suffix -고. Another form that is rarely used in writing is 콰다. In fact, the correct spelling for its -요 form is not clear even to many native speakers (is it 뵤어요, 뵤요, or 뵤워요?). The official spelling is supposedly 뵤어요, which is what we use in this book.

Why can’t we just write words the way we say them – 떡럼다 instead of 더럽다 ‘be dirty,’ 꼬메다 instead of 움메다 ‘sew,’ and so on? You can if there is no danger of anyone judging you by how you spell things. In fact, ‘phonetic spelling’ is very common these days in personal notes and e-mail. However, it would be a mistake to write things in this way in important documents such as your résumé! Spelling is often considered to be an important indicator of whether someone is well educated or not.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selected glossary</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>속맥 foolish person</td>
<td>채 jam</td>
<td>배지 badge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보자기 wrapping cloth</td>
<td>창피하다 be embarrassed</td>
<td>들르다 stop by</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작가 author</td>
<td>캐내다 take (something) out</td>
<td>도리어 on the contrary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성질 disposition; temper</td>
<td>한 눈 꽤는 사이 while distracted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vocabulary
About 35 percent of Korean vocabulary is native (고유어) and about 60 percent can be traced to Chinese (한자어). For the most part, these Sino-Korean words were borrowed prior to 1945 and are now perceived to be fully ‘Korean.’

In recent years, Korean has been borrowing heavily from western languages, especially English, in fields such as advertising, entertainment, sports, business management, and engineering. (Prior to 1945, western loan words (외래어) entered Korean indirectly via Japanese.)

9.1 Native Korean and Sino-Korean words

It is not unusual to find native Korean and Sino-Korean words with similar or overlapping meanings. When this happens, the native Korean word tends to be more colloquial, while the Sino-Korean word is usually more formal and literary (e.g., 엄마/아버지 versus the formal and impersonal 모친/부친). Occasionally, the Sino-Korean words take on a more specialized and narrower meaning – 손위 ‘someone older’ and 손아래 ‘someone younger’ versus 연상 (年上) ‘older girlfriend/wife and 연하 (年下) ‘younger boyfriend/husband.’

The majority of the vocabulary used in written materials such as newspapers, magazines, documents, and books is of Sino-Korean origin. The same is true of news broadcasts, lectures, and ceremonies, as well as just about any conversation on a topic that goes beyond ordinary daily life.

Take for example the verbs 죽다 and 돌아가시다, both of which mean ‘die.’ (The latter is an honorific verb; see 2.1.3.) Although both words are common in personal conversation, neither would ever be used in a news broadcast or in formal writing. Such situations call for a Sino-Korean verb such as 사망하다 or the more indirect 승천하다, 작고하다, 타계하다, 별세하다, 유명을 달리하다, or 세상을 하직하다. Native but euphemistic expressions such as 목숨을 잃다 or 숨지다 may also be used.

The verbs 주다 and 드리다 work the same way. Both mean ‘give,’ with the latter being used to show deference to the referent of the indirect object; see 2.2. Although these verbs are common in ordinary conversation, other situations require Sino-Korean expressions.

나는 형에게 토지 소유권을 양도했다.

I deeded my land title to my older brother.
그는 고아원에 백만원을 기부했다.  
*He donated ₩1,000,000 to an orphanage.*

교장 선생님이 학생들에게 우등상장을 수여했다.  
*The principal awarded students certificates of excellence.*

대통령이 장병들에게 위문품을 하사했다.  
*The President gave care packages to soldiers.*

화장품 회사가 손님에게 기념품을 증정했다.  
*The cosmetic company presented customers with souvenirs.*

A prescription drug may be accompanied by written Sino-Korean instructions that say 1일 3회 식후 복용. But this would sound strange in the spoken language, where you would say 하루에 세번 밥 먹고 나서 먹어 or, more formally, 하루에 세번 식사 하신 후에 드세요. A mother will say to her child, 단 걸 너무 많이 먹으면… ‘If you eat too much sweet stuff…,’ but a medical doctor will convey the same thought to his/her patient as 당분을 과도하게 섭취하면…

Here are further examples of the native versus Sino-Korean contrast.

Nouns and noun phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>맨날</td>
<td>매일</td>
<td>every day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더운물, 찬물</td>
<td>온수, 냉수</td>
<td>hot water, cold water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>키</td>
<td>신장</td>
<td>height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무게, 몸무게</td>
<td>중량, 체중</td>
<td>weight, (body) weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옷</td>
<td>의상, 의복</td>
<td>clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이, 이빨</td>
<td>치아</td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈, 남은 돈</td>
<td>자금, 금전, 잔액, 잔금, 잔고</td>
<td>money, fund balance (money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맨딸, 맨아들</td>
<td>장녀, 장남</td>
<td>eldest daughter, eldest son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>둘째딸, 둘째아들</td>
<td>차녀, 차남</td>
<td>second eldest daughter, second eldest son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사람</td>
<td>인간</td>
<td>human being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나이</td>
<td>연령</td>
<td>age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자리</td>
<td>좌석</td>
<td>seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native</td>
<td>Sino-Korean</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠 (sleep)</td>
<td>수면 (sleep)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깊은 잠 (sound sleep)</td>
<td>수면 (sleep)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>새해 (new year)</td>
<td>신년 (new year)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지난 해 (last year)</td>
<td>작년 (last year)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옛 해 (this year)</td>
<td>길년 (this year)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 해 (next year)</td>
<td>내년 (next year)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내는 사람 (sender)</td>
<td>발신인 (sender)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받는 사람 (recipient)</td>
<td>수신인 (recipient)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나가는 곳 (exit)</td>
<td>출구 (exit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어가는 곳 (entrance)</td>
<td>입구 (entrance)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손님 (customer)</td>
<td>고객 (customer)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남 or 다른 사람 (others)</td>
<td>타인 (others)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이 (child)</td>
<td>아동 (child)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어른 (adult)</td>
<td>성인 (adult)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽은 사람 (the dead)</td>
<td>사망자, 고인 (the dead)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다친 사람 (the wounded)</td>
<td>부상자 (the wounded)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>믿음 (faith)</td>
<td>신뢰 (faith)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몸 (body)</td>
<td>신체 (body)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지은이 (author)</td>
<td>저자 (author)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>땅 (land)</td>
<td>토지 (land)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: 이빨 is familiar/casual; 인간 may be used derogatorily (어휴, 저 인간).

Verbs and verb phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(값이) 떨어지다 (price) to fall</td>
<td>(가격이) 하락하다 (price) to fall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(값이) 내리다 (price) to fall</td>
<td>(가격이) 인하되다 (price) to fall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(값이) 오르다 (price) to increase</td>
<td>(가격이) 인상되다 (price) to increase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(기온이) 오르다 (temperature) to rise</td>
<td>(기온이) 상승하다 (temperature) to rise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(값이) 싸다 to be cheap</td>
<td>(가격이) 저렴하다 to be cheap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(인구가) 늘다 (population) to increase</td>
<td>(인구가) 증가하다 (population) to increase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(실력이) 늘다 (ability) to improve</td>
<td>(실력이) 향상하다 (ability) to improve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>줄다 to decrease</td>
<td>감소하다 (decrease)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들키다 to be detected/caught</td>
<td>발각되다, 적발되다 to be detected/caught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어</td>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>의미</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to breathe</td>
<td>숨 쉬다, 호흡하다</td>
<td>to breathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to beat</td>
<td>때리다, 구타하다</td>
<td>to beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mention</td>
<td>말하다, 언급하다</td>
<td>to mention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to collect</td>
<td>모으다, 수집하다</td>
<td>to collect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to buy/purchase</td>
<td>(물건을) 사다</td>
<td>to buy/purchase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to win/gain a victory</td>
<td>이기다, 승리하다</td>
<td>to win/gain a victory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to dismiss</td>
<td>(직장에서) 자르다</td>
<td>to dismiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be fired</td>
<td>(직장에서) 잘리다</td>
<td>to be fired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be seated</td>
<td>자리에 앉다, 착석하다</td>
<td>to be seated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be insufficient/short</td>
<td>모자라다, 부족하다</td>
<td>to be insufficient/short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to get rid of</td>
<td>없애다, 제거하다</td>
<td>to get rid of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to exclude</td>
<td>빼다, 제외하다</td>
<td>to exclude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power/water to be cut off</td>
<td>전기가/물이 꺼지다, 단전/단수되다</td>
<td>power/water to be cut off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(news) to be cut off</td>
<td>(소식이) 꺼지다, 단절되다</td>
<td>(news) to be cut off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to get in a car (ship, plane)</td>
<td>차(배, 비행기)에 타다</td>
<td>to get in a car (ship, plane)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to get out of a vehicle</td>
<td>차에서 내리다</td>
<td>to get out of a vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be drowned</td>
<td>물에 빠져죽다, 익사하다</td>
<td>to be drowned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to reconsider</td>
<td>다시 생각하다, 재고하다</td>
<td>to reconsider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to exchange (money)</td>
<td>돈을 바꾸다</td>
<td>to exchange (money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to return</td>
<td>돌려 주다, 반환하다</td>
<td>to return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to expand a road</td>
<td>길을 넓히다, 도로를 확장하다</td>
<td>to expand a road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to construct a bridge</td>
<td>다리를 놓다</td>
<td>to construct a bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to eradicate</td>
<td>뿌리뽑다, 근절하다</td>
<td>to eradicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to take (time) duration of a trip</td>
<td>(시간이) 걸리다, 걸리는 시간, (시간이) 소요되다, 소요시간</td>
<td>to take (time) duration of a trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rent (skis)</td>
<td>(스키를) 빌려 주다, 대여하다</td>
<td>to rent (skis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be stingy</td>
<td>(사람이) 쳐다, 인색하다</td>
<td>to be stingy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be confused/confusing</td>
<td>헛갈리다</td>
<td>to be confused/confusing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to add/supplement</td>
<td>보태다, 추가하다</td>
<td>to add/supplement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.2 Loan words

Western loan words often end up contrasting with already existing native Korean and/or Sino-Korean words with similar meanings. When this happens, the loan words are generally associated with a more modern version of the concept.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>Loan words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>춤</td>
<td>무용</td>
<td>dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가게</td>
<td>상점</td>
<td>store, mart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빵집</td>
<td>제과점</td>
<td>bakery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술집</td>
<td>주점</td>
<td>drinking bar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: 빵 is a borrowing from Portuguese, but since it has been in the language for so long, it is considered native Korean.

In some cases, loan words are used to denote things for which there is no Korean word – 꼬, 커피, 버스, 핸드, 택시 are examples of this. In other cases, Korean words may be pushed aside by their borrowed equivalents – 사진기 by 카메라, 사증 by 비자, 포도주 by 와인, 정구 by 테니스, and so on.

Unless they have become fully Koreanized, foreign expressions tend to be more casual and colloquial. 파킹 ‘parking’ and 컨셉 ‘concept’ may be common among younger people when speaking casually, but they are to be avoided in formal writing and speech.

The following samples show just how freely fashion magazines use loan words these days.

Let’s go for an overnight hotel beauty trip. What caught my eye recently is the ‘Home Spa and Food’ package from the Western Chosŏn. It’s a short ‘well-being’ trip where you can enjoy the home spa using high-quality products that are used in overseas resort areas and enjoy delicious food. Furthermore, you can also get advice on your exercise plan from the fitness club and take ‘well-being’ classes such as stretching or pilates.

The newly opened Japanese fusion restaurant has an interior as great as its excellent-tasting food. So, it has already become well-known through word of mouth, attracting even the trend setters.
9.2.1 Innovations in loan words

Loan words often have a somewhat different meaning in Korean than in their language of origin, either because only one sense of the word was borrowed or because its meaning shifted after borrowing. For instance, 플라스틱 means only hard plastic while 비닐 (‘vinyl’) means only soft plastic. So when Koreans visit American supermarkets for the first time, they misunderstand what the cashier means by a plastic bag! Here are more examples of this sort.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loan Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>린스</td>
<td>rinse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스킨</td>
<td>skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팝송</td>
<td>pop song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빌라</td>
<td>villa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>콘도</td>
<td>condo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커닝</td>
<td>cunning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서비스</td>
<td>service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미팅</td>
<td>meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부킹</td>
<td>booking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스킨십</td>
<td>skinship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>헌티</td>
<td>panty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>린닝셔츠</td>
<td>running shirts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커친타월</td>
<td>kitchen towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이태리타월</td>
<td>Italy towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>콤비</td>
<td>combi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잭바</td>
<td>jumper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파스</td>
<td>PAS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사인</td>
<td>sign</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, English loan words are sometimes combined in novel ways (see 10.5).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Loan Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>백미러</td>
<td>back mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>핸드폰</td>
<td>hand phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에스라인</td>
<td>S-line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커트라인</td>
<td>cut line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골인</td>
<td>goal in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오픈게임</td>
<td>open game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>애프터 서비스</td>
<td>after service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모닝콜</td>
<td>morning-call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sometimes, parts of loan words are combined with other words to create new words:

오피스텔 < office-(ho)tel > a place where one can do office work and sleep

웰빙버거 < well-being burger > healthy burger

9.2.2 Phonetic changes to loan words

A loan word’s pronunciation is refashioned to fit the sound pattern of Korean. The following changes are particularly common.

- The sound ‘f’ becomes ㅍ:
  팬 fan 카페인 caffeine 유니폼 uniform

- The sounds ‘j,’ ‘z,’ and sometimes ‘s’ become ㅈ:
  엔진 engine 비자 visa 카지노 casino

- The sounds ‘l’ and ‘r’ merge into ㄹ at the beginning of a word:
  로션 lotion 레이저 laser 라이벌 rival

- The sound ‘sh’ becomes ㅅ:
  샴푸 shampoo 샤워 shower 시트 sheet

- The sound ‘th’ becomes ㅅ in most cases (exception: 멕베드 Macbeth):
  스릴 thrill 헬스 health 스미스 Smith

- The sound ‘v’ becomes ㅂ:
  베테랑 veteran 비타민 vitamin 인터뷰 interview

- Sequences of consonants are broken up with vowels (usually 으):
  클럽 club 스탠드 stand 토스트 toast
  드라이브 drive 스카프 scarf 유니폼 uniform

- A vowel (usually 으, but sometimes ㅣ) is added to words that end in sounds such as ‘s,’ ‘z,’ and ‘ch’:
  키스 kiss 치즈 cheese 스포츠 sports
  스위치 switch 이미지 image 가스 레인지 gas range
Addition of the extra vowel is optional for words that end in the sounds ‘p,’ ‘t,’ ‘k,’ or ‘g’:

- 테잎/테이프 tape
- 컷/커트 cut
- 케익/케이크 cake

- Words that end in the sound ‘t’ are spelled with a final ㅅ:
  - 라켓 racket
  - 에티켓 etiquette
  - 인터넷 Internet

  If the final ㅅ is followed by a suffix that begins with a vowel, it is pronounced as if it were ‘s’ rather than ‘t’: 인터넷 [인터넷] vs. 인터넷을 [인터넷을].

- The sounds ‘p’ and ‘b’ are neutralized into ㅂ; the sounds ‘k’ and ‘g’ are neutralized into ㄱ:
  - 캡 cap/cab
  - 백 bag/back

  Because of this, Koreans may mistake ‘Doug called’ for ‘Duck called’ and Americans may hear 크랩버거 as ‘crap burger’ rather than ‘crab burger’!

- The sound ‘r’ is dropped after a vowel (exceptions: 코르크 ‘cork,’ 레퍼토리 ‘repertoire’):
  - 코트 court
  - 디저트 dessert
  - 포크 fork
  - 마트 mart
  - 포스터 poster
  - 레저 leisure

  Because of these various changes, different borrowed words can end up with the same pronunciation in Korean: pan/fan 팬, passion/fashion 패션, coat/court 코트, folk/fork 포크.

### 9.2.3 The grammar of loan words

Most loan words are nouns that, like Sino-Korean nouns, can be converted into verbs by adding -하다, -나다, and so on as the need arises.

- 웰빙하다 live a healthy life-style
- 오바하다 overreact; overinterpret
- 이메일하다 do e-mail
- 폼나다 look stylish
- 워너하다 (appointment) gets broken

  NOTE: The @ in e-mail addresses is called 골뱅이, which is a type of fish that looks similar to the symbol.

Words that are adjectives in the original language tend to become nouns in Korean, and are then converted into descriptive verbs with the help of -하다.

- 쿨하다 be cool
- 섹시하다 be sexy
- 스마트하다 be smart
- 유머러스하다 be humorous
# 10 Word formation

A language’s vocabulary is a work in progress. New words are constantly being added, sometimes through borrowing from other languages but more often by making adjustments to currently existing words.

## 10.1 Compounding

A particularly common strategy for word formation in Korean involves combining two or more elements to create a compound word.

### 10.1.1 Compound nouns

A very large number of Sino-Korean compounds consist of two roots. (These roots are often bound — that is, they cannot be used as words on their own.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>주차(駐 車)</td>
<td>parking violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>운전 (運 転)</td>
<td>driver’s license</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통 (交 通)</td>
<td>traffic accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속도(速 度)</td>
<td>speed violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보험 (保 険)</td>
<td>life insurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주차위반</td>
<td>parking violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주차금지</td>
<td>No Parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>운전면허</td>
<td>driver’s license</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초보운전</td>
<td>beginner’s driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통사고</td>
<td>traffic accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대중교통</td>
<td>mass transit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속도위반</td>
<td>speed violation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제속도</td>
<td>economical speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보험료</td>
<td>insurance premium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>불법주차</td>
<td>illegal parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주차난</td>
<td>parking difficulties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음주운전</td>
<td>driving while intoxicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대리운전자</td>
<td>designated driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통체증</td>
<td>traffic congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통신호</td>
<td>traffic signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제한속도</td>
<td>speed limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속도계</td>
<td>speedometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자동차보험</td>
<td>car insurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의료보험</td>
<td>medical insurance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The meanings of these long compounds can usually be predicted from their component parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>불법주차</td>
<td>&lt; not-law-park-car &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음주운전</td>
<td>&lt; drink-alcohol-move-turn &gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Another type of compound noun is formed by combining two independent words of native Korean origin.

비: 비구름 rain cloud 비바람 rain and wind; rainstorm 가을비 autumn rain 이슬비 dew-like rain; drizzle

Some compound nouns are hybrid in nature, consisting of words of different origin (e.g., loan word + Korean word, or vice versa).

메모지 memo pad 과격세일 drastic sale 청자켓 denim jacket 알코올중독 alcohol addiction 유머감각 sense of humor 도미노현상 domino effect 발레공연 ballet performance 문자메시지 text message 해외토픊 newsy topics from abroad 전신마사지 whole body massage

10.1.2 Compound verbs: noun + verb

A popular way to extend a noun’s usage is to combine it with various special verbs to create a compound verb.

(a) Compound action verbs

하다: 한잔하다 have a drink 농구하다 play basketball 밥하다 cook rice 조깅하다 jog 망하다 go to ruin 파산하다 go bankrupt 가다: 이민가다 emigrate 유학가다 go to study abroad 출장가다 go on a business trip 도망가다 run away 피서가다 get away from the summer heat 문병가다 visit someone who is sick

(b) Compound descriptive verbs

하다: 정직하다 be honest 성실하다 be sincere 용감하다 be brave 암전하다 be gentle/decent 알뜰하다 be frugal 부지런하다 be diligent 이다: 망신이다 be a dishonour to 꼴불견이다 be unsightly 실망이다 be disappointing 대환영이다 be very welcome 상극이다 be incompatible with 과학적이다 be scientific 지다: 그늘지다 be shady/gloomy 구석지다 be off to one side 비탈지다 be hilly 야무지다 be firm/hard-headed 전방지다 be conceited/impudent 끈덕지다 be persevering
10.1.3 *Compound verbs: verb + verb*

Pairs of verbs are often linked by means of -어/아, -어다/아다 or -고. There are hundreds of compounds of this type in Korean, but certain verbs occur more often than others in these patterns. These ‘pivot verbs’ are sometimes found in the initial position and sometimes in the second position.

(a) Pivot verb in the initial position:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>갈-</th>
<th>갈아입다</th>
<th>change one’s clothes</th>
<th>갈아타다</th>
<th>transfer (vehicles)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>갈아신다</td>
<td>change one’s shoes</td>
<td>갈아끼다</td>
<td>replace (bulbs, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내-</td>
<td>내쫓다</td>
<td>drive out; expel</td>
<td>내보내다</td>
<td>let out; expel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내뻗다</td>
<td>drive out; force out</td>
<td>내버리다</td>
<td>throw away</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알-</td>
<td>알아보다</td>
<td>recognize; inquire</td>
<td>알아듣다</td>
<td>catch (the meaning)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알아내다</td>
<td>find out</td>
<td>알아맞히다</td>
<td>guess right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Pivot verb in second position:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>가다</th>
<th>대가다</th>
<th>arrive in time for</th>
<th>기어가다</th>
<th>crawl on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>잡아가다</td>
<td>take (a suspect) to the police station</td>
<td>쫓아가다</td>
<td>go after; chase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들다</td>
<td>대들다</td>
<td>defy; talk back</td>
<td>스며들다</td>
<td>penetrate; soak into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끼어들다</td>
<td>intrude into</td>
<td>접어들다</td>
<td>approach; near</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꽃고들다</td>
<td>dig into; delve into</td>
<td>오그라들다</td>
<td>shrink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>지켜보다</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>내려다보다</td>
<td>look down; overlook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떠보다</td>
<td>sound out a person</td>
<td>눈여겨보다</td>
<td>observe carefully</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>훔쳐보다</td>
<td>steal a glance at</td>
<td>흔겨보다</td>
<td>squint at</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some compounds may even consist of three verbs:

| 쳐들여가다 | < hit-enter-go > | invade |
| 끼라비돌아가다 | < dry-twist-fall > | shrivel up |

10.2 *Reduplication*

Reduplication repeats all or part of a word to indicate emphasis, repetition, alternation, variety, or plurality (see ch. 13 for more examples).

- Emphasis:

우리 이 추억 길이길이 간직하자.
*Let’s keep this memory for a long time.*

승현이는 운동, 공부, 노래 다 고루고루 잘 한다.
*Seunghun is equally good at sports, academics, and singing.*
어제 산 장미가 벌써 시들시들하네.
The roses I bought yesterday are already wilted.

- Repetition:
먼접 결과를 기다릴 때 마음이 조마조마했어요.
I felt uneasy (pit-a-pat, pit-a-pat) while waiting for the interview result.

이곳은 너무 시골이라 집들이 띄엄띄엄 있다.
This place is sparsely dotted with houses because it’s a very rural area.

남의 일에 꼬치꼬치 캐묻지 마.
Don’t try to find out every single detail of someone else’s business.

- Alternation or variety:
티격태격 다투지 말고 좀 사이 좋게 지내라.
Don’t bicker, and please get along with each other.

이제 술이 콘드레만드레 취해서 집에 갔어요.
I went home dead drunk yesterday.

내 친구는 남자 친구와의 일을 나한테 미주알고주알 다 얘기한다.
My friend tells me about things between her and her boyfriend to the last detail.

- Plurality:
끼리끼리 모인다더니…
People say birds of a feather flock together (isn’t it so true).

구석구석 깨끗이 치우도록 해라.
Tidy up your room – every nook and cranny.

군데군데 청바지를 찢어서 입는 게 요즘 유행이야.
It’s a trend these days to wear jeans after ripping them here and there.

10.3 Prefixation

Like their English counterparts (un-, re-, and so on), prefix-like elements in Korean occur at the beginning of a word and modify its meaning. The line between ‘prefix + word’ patterns and ‘word + word’ compounds is often hazy because many Korean prefixes evolved from full words and still have word-like meanings. Selected entries are presented throughout this chapter; for more illustrations and basic examples, see the Handbook of Korean Vocabulary by M. Choo & W. O’Grady (University of Hawaii Press, 1996).

가- (거짓 假) ‘temporary; fake’
가건물 temporary building 가계약 provisional contract
가처분 provisional disposition 가입학 provisional admission (to a school)
가분수 improper fraction 가석방 parole
급-(급한 急) ‘sudden; urgent’
급상승 sudden rise  급강하 sudden drop (of temp.)
급성장 fast growth  급회전 sudden turn (of a car)
급경사 steep slope  급선무 urgent priority matter

대-(큰 大) ‘great; big; major’ (opposite of 소 小)
대가족 large family  대문자 capital letter
대도시 big city  대성공 great success
대유형 craze; fad  대기업 conglomerate

대-(대할 對) ‘with respect to; vis-à-vis’
대외 with respect to foreign countries  대일 with respect to Japan
대미외교 policy toward the U.S.  대미무역 trade with the U.S.

동-(한가지 同) ‘same’
동시대 same period/era  동년배 person of same age
동업자 business partner  동질 same quality; homogeneity

되- ‘again; back to source; in reverse’
되묻다 ask again; ask back  되괄다 resell
되겹다 chew over and over again  되새기다 ruminate

맹-(사나울 猛) ‘fierce; violent’
맹활약 being greatly active  맹공격 fierce attack
맹연습 rigorous practice  맹훈련 intense training

무-(없을 無) ‘not exist; have no…’ (opposite of 유 有)
무면허 unlicensed  무기력 lethargy; no energy
무분별 imprudence  무차별 indiscrimination

반-(반대할 反) ‘anti-; counter-’
반사회적 anti-social  반감 antagonism; antipathy
반작용 reaction; counteraction  반비례 inverse proportion

반- (반 半) ‘half; semi-’
반세기 half a century  반자동 semi-automatic
반강제(적) semi-compulsory  반음 a flat or sharp (in music)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>본- (근본 本) ‘main; real; actual’</th>
<th>본회의 main session (of the legislature)</th>
<th>본바탕 essence; intrinsic nature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>본보기 example; model</td>
<td>본마음 one’s real intention</td>
<td>본고장 place of origin; home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본체 main body; true form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>부- (도울 副) ‘vice-; deputy-; subsidiary’</th>
<th>부사장 company vice-president</th>
<th>부총리 deputy prime minister</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>부교수 associate professor</td>
<td>부진공 minor(field of study)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부산물 by-product</td>
<td>부작용 side effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>부- (아닐 不) ‘un-; not’</th>
<th>부자연 unnaturalness</th>
<th>부자유 discomfort</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>부적합 incongruity</td>
<td>부적절 inappropriateness</td>
<td>부조화 disharmony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부도덕 immorality</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>불- (아닐 不) ‘un-; not’</th>
<th>불공정 unfairness; injustice</th>
<th>불안정 instability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>불완전 incomplete(ness)</td>
<td>불규칙 nonrestraint</td>
<td>불균형 imbalance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>불합격 failure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| NOTE: 不 is realized as 부 before ㄷ and ㅈ; it is 불 elsewhere (except 부실). |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>비- (아닐 非) ‘un-; not’</th>
<th>비위생적 unsanitary</th>
<th>비현실적 unrealistic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비공개 undisclosed; closed-door</td>
<td>비양심적 unscrupulous; unconscientious</td>
<td>비폭력 nonviolence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비주류 non-mainstream</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>벗- ‘slanted’</th>
<th>벗금 slanted line</th>
<th>벗장 cross bar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>벗대다</td>
<td>insinuate</td>
<td>벗나가다 go wide of the mark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>순- (순수할 純) ‘pure; net’</th>
<th>순우리말 pure Korean language</th>
<th>순한국식 pure Korean-style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>순이익 net profit</td>
<td>순살코기 lean meat with no fat</td>
<td>순도 (100%) degree of purity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>순백색 sheet white; white as snow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>악- (악할 惡) ‘bad’</th>
<th>악영향 bad influence</th>
<th>악순환 vicious cycle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>악조건 adverse conditions</td>
<td>악취미 distasteful hobby</td>
<td>악평가 unfavorable critique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>악선전 malicious propaganda</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
역- (거스를 逆) ‘reverse; counter’
역이용 reverse use
역방향 opposite direction
역수출 re-exportation
역이용 reverse use
역방향 opposite direction
역수출 re-exportation
역효과 contrary/adverse effect
역선전 counterpropaganda

유- (있을 有) ‘possessing’ (opposite of 无)
유죄 being guilty
유권자 eligible voter
유명세 price of fame
유죄 being guilty
유권자 eligible voter
유명세 price of fame
유자격 being qualified
유지 leading/influential figure
유명무실 name only with no substance

재- (다시 再) ‘re-; again’
재개발 redevelopment
재입국 reentry
재정비 putting in good order again
재개발 redevelopment
재입국 reentry
재정비 putting in good order again

저- (낮을 低) ‘low’ (opposite of 高)
저소득 low income
저거대 low-lying land
저개발 underdevelopment
저소득 low income
저거대 low-lying land
저개발 underdevelopment
저금리 low interest
저자세 low profile; modest attitude
저동아 a feeble-minded child

정- (바를 正) ‘regular; full’
정회원 regular member
정육면체 cube
정회원 regular member
정육면체 cube
정교수 full professor
정비례 direct proportion

짓- ‘randomly; roughly’
짓누르다 squash
짓이기다 mesh
짓누르다 squash
짓이기다 mesh
짓밟다 overrun; trample underfoot
짓궂다 be mischievous

처- ‘recklessly; at random’
처먹다 eat greedily
처바르다 overapply (lotion)
처먹다 eat greedily
처바르다 overapply (lotion)
처넣다 push in; shove in
처박히다 be cooped up inside

총- (모두 總) ‘overall; total’
총복습 overall review
총인원 total number of people
총지출 total expenditure
총복습 overall review
총인원 total number of people
총지출 total expenditure
총선거 general election
총출동 general mobilization
총공격 full-scale attack

최- (가장 最) ‘most; -est’
최강 strongest
최전방 front line (military)
최우선 highest priority
최강 strongest
최전방 front line (military)
최우선 highest priority
최연소 youngest
최첨단 spearhead; vanguard
최고학부 highest institution of learning (university)
10.4 Suffixation

Unlike prefixes, which usually simply add to the meaning of a word, suffixes can modify both a word’s meaning and its category.

10.4.1 Suffixes that create a noun

-개/계
장개 stew 가리개 screen, cover
지개 A-frame carrier 쪽집개 tweezers

-이
길이 length 높이 height
깊이 depth 추위 cold weather
구이 roasted meat, baked fish 시집살이 living with one’s husband’s parents

-기
밝기 brightness 크기 size, magnitude
달리기 running; race 출님기 rope-jumping
내기 betting 슬래잡기 hide-and-seek

-ㅁ/음 (-음 with some verbs that end with ㅂ):
모임 meeting 졸음 drowsiness
느낌 sensation; feeling 외로움 loneliness
슬픔 sorrow; sadness 눦림 teasing; making fun of
10.4.2 Suffixes that create a descriptive verb

-답 ‘be like; be worthy of’
  사람답다 *be humane*  학자답다 *be scholarly*
  신사답다 *be gentleman-like*  어른답다 *be mature like an adult*

-맞 ‘give the impression of’
  익살맞다 *be funny/comical*  공상맞다 *be miserable-looking*
  능글맞다 *be sly/sneaky*  능청맞다 *be sly/deceitful*
  방정맞다 *be rash*  칠칠맞다 *be slovenly/untidy*

-스럽 ‘be suggestive of’
  자연스럽다 *be natural*  만족스럽다 *be satisfying*
  가증스럽다 *be detestable*  통명스럽다 *be blunt/brusque*
  창피스럽다 *be embarrassing*  기추장스럽다 *be burdensome*
  탐스럽다 *be appetizing/tempting*  정성스럽다 *be devoted with one’s full heart*

-적 (-의 的) ‘-ic; -al; -ive’
  공식적 *official*  상업적 *commercial*
  기계적 *mechanical*  심리적 *psychological*
  개인적 *personal*  충동적 *impulsive*
  엽기적 *bizarre; grotesque*  현실적 *realistic; practical*
  직선적 *straightforward*  일방적 *one-sided; unilateral*

NOTE: -적 is generally attached to Sino-Korean words that cannot combine with -하다. It is used in the following three types of pattern:

사람이 너무 충동적이다.  She’s too impulsive.
충동적인 면이 마음에 든다.  I like her impulsive side.
충동적으로 내린 결정이다.  It’s an impulsively made decision.

-롭 ‘be characterized by’
  슬기롭다 *be wise/sensible*  지혜롭다 *be wise/resourceful*
  자유롭다 *be unrestricted/free*  신비롭다 *be mysterious*
  평화롭다 *be peaceful*  향기롭다 *be fragrant*
10.4.3 **Suffixes that create an adverb**

- 췌 ‘to the best of’
  - 능력껏 to the best of one’s ability
  - 요령껏 to the best of one’s judgment
  - 재주껏 to the best of one’s talent
  - 욕심껏 as much as one desires

- 상 (위 上) ‘-wise; from the viewpoint of’
  - 양심상 for the sake of conscience
  - 편의상 for the sake of convenience
  - 예의상 as a matter of courtesy
  - 역사상 in history
  - 자원상 for the sake of convenience
  - 사정상 owing to circumstances
  - 예의상 as a matter of courtesy
  - 교육상 from the perspective of education
  - 이론상 from a theoretical point of view

-(으)로
  - 날로 day by day
  - 겉으로 outwardly
  - 대대로 from generation to generation
  - 참말로 truly; indeed
  - 속으로 inwardly; in one’s heart
  - 강제로 by force

Examples of the adverbial suffixes -리, -이/히, and -게 are presented in sentences because adverb-plus-verb combinations are best treated as ‘chunks.’

-리
  - 친구가 멀리 떠났어요. My friend has gone far away.
  - 달리 방도가 없습니. There isn’t any other way.
  - 전세계에 널리 알려졌다. It resounded through the world.
  - 공부를 게을리 하면 안 되지. You should not neglect your study.
  - 설불리 덤볐다가 큰 코 다친다. If you make a foolhardy attempt, you will have a bitter experience.

-이/히
  - 이리 가까이 와요. Come up close here.
  - 내가 끔찍이 아끼는 후배예요. She’s my junior who I care greatly about.
  - 사람을 살살이 다 뒤져 봤어. I tried to ransack all the drawers.
  - 그 분의 겸손함은 높이 살 만하지. His modesty deserves high praise.
  - 우리 영원히 해어지지 말자. Let’s never break up.
  - 꾸준히 노력하면 성공할 거야. You’ll succeed if you make constant efforts.
  - 닭히 뭐라고 설명하기가 어렵다. It’s hard to pinpoint what it is exactly.
  - 무슨 생각을 그렇게 긁돌히 해? What are you thinking so hard about?
  - 이 정도는 혼자 거뜬히 들 수 있어. I can easily lift this much by myself.
  - 은근히 화가 나는 거 있으. I get mad in spite of myself.
한 달 용돈이 고스란히 하루 기름값으로 다 나갔네.
며칠 앞면서 왜 물어봐?

-게: (See 21.2.7.)

검 족 가볍게 쌓자.
시간 없는데 간단하게 먹자.
차가 접나게 달린다.
정말 고맙게 생각해야.
눈물나게 고맙다.
정말 미안하게 생각해야.
귀엽게 씩 주라.
시간이 길게/지루하게 느껴져요.
길게 쓰지 말고 절막하게 쓰.
얼굴이 까맣게 탔어.
까맣게 잊어버렸어.
깨끗하게 단념해.
불편하다. 이리 넓게 앉아.
어떤 벌이라도 달게 받겠습니다.
사과를 두껍게/얇게 깎는다.
딱 부리치게 얘기해.
배부르게 먹어요.
책이 볼티나게 팔린다.
간만에 박세게 공부 좀 했다.

뼈저리게 느끼고 있습니다.
시험이 너무 쉽게 나온 거 같아.
남 얘기하고 너무 쉽게 하지마.

이 소설은 개인주의를 신랄하게 비판하고 있습니다.
좀 싸게 주세요.
너무 비싸게 산 거 같애.
어렵게 내린 결정이에요.

Oh dear, my monthly allowance got spent entirely on one day’s gas.
Why do you ask when you already know it for sure?

Let’s pack the suitcase lightly.
We don’t have time; let’s have a quick bite.
This car is going so scarily fast.
I’m very grateful.
I’m so thankful that I could cry.
I feel bad (I owe you an apology).
Go easy on me, please.
It feels like eternity. (I am bored.)
Don’t write a long one; write a short one.
My face got tanned very dark.
I had totally forgotten.
Give it up completely.
You must feel uncomfortable. Sit over here using more space.
I’ll gladly accept any punishment.
You’re peeling a lot/little off the apple.
Say it decisively and firmly.
I’ve eaten enough; I’m full.
The books are selling like hot cakes.
I studied awfully hard in a long time.
[spoken/colloquial]
It sinks deep into my mind; I feel it keenly.
The exam seems to be too easy.
Don’t speak lightly just because it’s someone else’s business.
This novel poignantly criticizes individualism.
Please give me a little discount.
I think I paid too much for it.
It was a difficult decision that I made.
Almost any descriptive verb (adjective) can be turned into an adverb by attaching -게. Some of the -리 and -이/히 adverbs above have -게 counterparts, but in many cases they are not interchangeable. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>멀리 떠났다.</td>
<td>He has gone far away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멀게 느껴진다.</td>
<td>I feel distant (from him).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>널리 알려졌다.</td>
<td>It became known widely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넓게 앉으세요.</td>
<td>Please sit using more space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길이 보존하자.</td>
<td>Let’s preserve it for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>너무 길게 이야기하지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don’t talk too long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>군게 약속했어요.</td>
<td>I made a solemn promise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분명히 여기 있었어.</td>
<td>I made my point clearly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이나가 크게 써 주세요.</td>
<td>I will treat you to a great meal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무릎에 파랗게 멍이 들었다.</td>
<td>My knee got bruised black and blue.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.4.4 Suffixes relating to address terms

A variety of suffixes that are attached to terms of address carry implications about the speaker’s relationship to the other person. As noted in chapter 3, the way in which you address others is an extremely sensitive matter in Korean. Considerable caution is therefore called for in the use of these suffixes.

-님: honorific suffix which is attached to proper names or certain titles (하느님 ‘God,’ 부처님 ‘Buddha,’ 부모님 ‘parents’).

-씨 (성 氏): has multiple uses, which range from impersonal to romantic. When used improperly, it can offend people.
• Full name plus 씨 (진용주씨) is appropriate for impersonal use (for instance, in the bank when addressing customers), although it can be replaced by the more respectful -님 (진용주님).

• Either full name or first name plus 씨 is commonly used among young colleagues of similar age. It can also be used by an older person to address a younger person, but not vice versa.

• First name plus 씨 (which is less formal than full name plus 씨) is common among adults who are fairly close and who are about the same age but whose friendship began after college. It is also frequently employed by romantic partners, especially at the beginning of their relationship.

• Family name plus 씨 (김씨) is used for those who hold a menial job (김씨 아저씨). It is also neutrally used to refer to someone’s family name (한국인 중에는 김씨가 제일 많다 ‘The Kims are the majority among Koreans’).

군, -양 (임금 궁, 계집애): used by a senior person to a much younger male/female (김군, 최양, 연지양).

-아/야: affectionately used for children or between very close friends of similar age or younger (희진아, 효리야, 자기야).

-(이)여: used in poems, religious prayers, advertisements, etc.

젊은이여 대망을 품으라. Young people, be ambitious.
남성 gönderil! Males!
하늘에시여! Father in heaven!

10.4.5 Suffixes relating to people

-가 (전문가 家) ‘professional person’

예술가 artist
성악가 vocalist
작곡가 musical composer

사업가 entrepreneur
역사가 historian
건축가 architect

-객 (손님 客) ‘guest; person’

방문객 visitor
여행객 tourist

피서객 summer tourist
입장객 visitor (to a public place)

-관 (버슬아치 官) ‘government official’

경찰관 police officer
시험관 examiner
통역관 interpreter
검열관 censor
-네기 ‘person characterized by/seen as’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>novice; greenie</td>
<td>시골네기 country bumpkin</td>
<td>novice; greenie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newcomer, novice</td>
<td>보통네기 ordinary person</td>
<td>newcomer, novice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: 보통네기 (= 여간네기) is used in negated sentences only: 보통네기가 아니다. He is no ordinary person.

-돌이 ‘males characterized by/seen as’ [spoken/colloquial]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rice-cake loving boy</td>
<td>떡돌이 rice-cake loving boy</td>
<td>teddy bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factory boy</td>
<td>공돌이 factory boy</td>
<td>stingy boy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-범 (범인 犯) ‘criminal’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>murderer</td>
<td>살인범 murderer</td>
<td>second-time offender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kidnapper</td>
<td>유괴범 kidnapper</td>
<td>political offender</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-사 (스승 師) ‘professional; master’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barber</td>
<td>이발사 barber</td>
<td>pharmacist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magician</td>
<td>마술사 magician</td>
<td>missionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook; chef</td>
<td>요리사 cook; chef</td>
<td>nurse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-사 (선비 士) ‘scholar; one who is officially qualified as’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aviator</td>
<td>비행사 aviator</td>
<td>nutritionist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account; CPA</td>
<td>회계사 account; CPA</td>
<td>bullfighter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-생 (날 生) ‘student; birth’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beginner; newbie</td>
<td>초년생 beginner; newbie</td>
<td>90 년생 person born in 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student studying abroad</td>
<td>유학생 student studying abroad</td>
<td>정강생 auditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student who is back in school (after military service)</td>
<td>학교생 student who is back in school (after military service)</td>
<td>삼수생 student preparing for college entrance exam for the third time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-수 (손 手) ‘person with a skill or role’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>driver</td>
<td>운전수 driver</td>
<td>fire fighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the first baseman</td>
<td>일루수 the first baseman</td>
<td>shortstop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-순이 ‘females characterized by/seen as’ [spoken/colloquial]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smart girl</td>
<td>똑순이 smart girl</td>
<td>kitchen maid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stingy girl</td>
<td>식순이 stingy girl</td>
<td>female eating-machine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-아 (아이 兒) ‘child; person’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lucky person</td>
<td>행운아 lucky person</td>
<td>child of mixed blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illegitimate child</td>
<td>사생아 illegitimate child</td>
<td>mentally retarded child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-원 (관원 員) ‘member; employee’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사무원 office worker</td>
<td>판매원 salesperson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경비원 guard</td>
<td>경호원 bodyguard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구조원 rescuer</td>
<td>교환원 telephone operator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-이 ‘person’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>맛이 the eldest child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>명청이 air head; dunce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>못난이 fool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-인 ( 사람 人) ‘person’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이방인 foreigner; stranger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>원시인 primitive person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지식인 an intellectual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대변인 spokesperson</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-자 ( 사람 者) ‘person; fellow’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지휘자 (orchestra) director</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소비자 consumer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>탑승자 passenger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>암살자 assassin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중독자 addict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영주권자 permanent resident</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-족 ( 무리 族) ‘tribe; group’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>올빼미족 night people; owls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꽃뱀족 gold-digger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>캉거루족 grown-up children still living with their parents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-주 (주인 主) ‘master; boss’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>기업주 boss of the enterprise; CEO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사업주 business proprietor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-치 (여리석을 痡) ‘imbecile’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>백치 moron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>음치 person who is tone-deaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-파 (派)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>인상파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보수파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낭만파</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분파</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.4.6 Suffixes relating to place or institution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-가 (街)</td>
<td>‘street’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주택가</td>
<td>residential street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>상점가</td>
<td>shopping street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>홍동가</td>
<td>red-light district</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식당가</td>
<td>restaurant row</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-방 (房)</td>
<td>‘shop; store’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨래방</td>
<td>laundromat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점질방</td>
<td>sauna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만화방</td>
<td>cartoon reading room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피씨방</td>
<td>internet cafe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비디오방</td>
<td>video room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노래방</td>
<td>singing room; karaoke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-부 (部)</td>
<td>‘section; department’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중심부</td>
<td>center; central area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교육부</td>
<td>Ministry of Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국방부</td>
<td>Department of Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문화관광부</td>
<td>Ministry of Culture and Tourism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-사 (社)</td>
<td>‘company; corporation’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>출판사</td>
<td>publishing company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방송사</td>
<td>broadcasting company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신문사</td>
<td>newspaper company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제작사</td>
<td>manufacturer; producer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-상 (商)</td>
<td>‘business; trade’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡화상</td>
<td>general store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보석상</td>
<td>jewelry store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고물상</td>
<td>junk store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>포목상</td>
<td>linen store</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-석 (席)</td>
<td>‘seat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>운전석</td>
<td>driver’s seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일반석</td>
<td>general admission seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>특석</td>
<td>reserved/special seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방청석</td>
<td>seats for the public (at court, concert, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관중석</td>
<td>seats for the audience (at ballpark, concert, etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-소 (所)</td>
<td>‘place; institute; facility’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>환전소</td>
<td>foreign exchange counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이발소</td>
<td>barber shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보건소</td>
<td>public health center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>휴게소</td>
<td>rest stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>탕아소</td>
<td>nursery; day care center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>상담소</td>
<td>office for consultation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-실 (방 室) ‘room; office’
실험실 laboratory
관리실 management office
냉장실 cold-storage room

-원 (원 廳) ‘institution’
고아원 orphanage
양로원 nursing home
요양원 rehabilitation center

-장 (場 場) ‘place (for an event)’
해수욕장 swimming beach
경기장 stadium; athletic field
선착장 harbor; port

-지 (地 地) ‘place; land’
중심지 center; central place
유적지 historic site
매립지 land fill

-처 (處 處) ‘place; bureau’
구입처 place for purchase
접수처 place for (school/job) application; information office

10.4.7 Suffixes relating to classification

-감 ‘material for; a suitable person’
신랑감 prospective bridegroom
경고감 behavior that calls for warning
사형감 criminal deserving capital punishment

-기 (기 계 機) ‘type of machine’
계산기 calculator
인쇄기 printing machine

-기 (기 료 器) ‘type of device; instrument’
분무기 sprayer; vaporizer
계량기 gauge; meter; scale
보행기 baby walker
언어와 문법

-체 (경계 界) ‘world; circle’
  가요계 pop music world
  정계 political world
  영화계 film world
  종교계 religious world

-과 (과목 科, 매길 課) ‘department; section’
  철학과 Philosophy Department
  수학과 Mathematics Department
  비뇨기과 Urology Department
  인사과 personnel division/office
  경리과 accounting section
  총무과 general affairs section

-력 (힘 力) ‘power; type of ability’
  경제력 economic power
  경쟁력 competitive power
  추진력 driving force; positive drive
  영향력 influential power
  어휘력 one’s capacity for vocabulary
  가창력 singing ability

-류 (무리 類) ‘kind; sort’
  생선류 class of fish
  식품류 groceries
  화장품류 cosmetics
  보석류 jewelry
  면류 noodles
  식기류 tableware
  가구류 furniture
  잡화류 miscellaneous goods

-면 (낯 面) ‘aspect; newspaper section’
  기술면 technological aspect
  사회면 page for local news
  일면 front page of the newspaper
  경제면 page for business news

-물 (물건 物) ‘type of stuff; thing’
  해산물 seafood
  인쇄물 printed matter
  우편물 mail; postal material
  건어물 dried seafood
  배설물 excrement
  유인물 handout; leaflet

-별 (다를 別) ‘division; classification’
  연도별 division by year
  지역별 division by region
  작업별 breakdown by occupation
  국가별 division by country
  연령별 division by age
  색깔별 division by color

-성 (성품 性) ‘nature; quality’
  정통성 orthodoxy
  신빙성 credibility
  게릴라성 guerrilla style
  처녀성 virginity
  일관성 consistency; coherence
  abnormality; sexual perversion
### Word Formation

**식 (법 式) ‘style; type; ceremony’**
- 회전식 **revolving type (door)**  
- 주관식 **essay-type (question)**  
- 약혼식 **engagement ceremony**

**판 (책 版) ‘edition’**
- 문고판 **pocketbook edition**  
- 해적판 **pirated edition**

**품 (물건 品) ‘type of goods’**
- 국산품 **domestic products**  
- 불량품 **defective goods**  
- 중고품 **second-hand goods**  
- 식료품 **groceries**

**풍 (모습 風) ‘style; manners’**
- 현대풍 **modern style**  
- 시골풍 **country manners**

**학 (배울 學) ‘field of study’**
- 언어학 **linguistics**  
- 통계학 **statistics**  
- 천문학 **astronomy**  
- 의상학 **study of clothing**

**형 (틀 型) ‘type; model’**
- 표준형 **standard type**  
- 혈액형 **blood type**  
- 마마보이형 **mama-boy style**

**형 (형상 形) ‘shape; form’**
- 사각형 **quadrangle**  
- 타원형 **oval-shaped**

10.4.8 **Suffixes relating to monetary transactions**

**값 ‘price’**
- 땅값 **land price**  
- 점심값 **lunch money**  
- 몸값 **ransom**

**-값 ‘price’**
- 기름값 **gas price**  
- 자리값 **price for a spot (at the beach, etc.)**  
- 나이값(을 하다) **(act) one’s age**
### Vocabulary

#### -권 (권서 券)
- **권** (문서 券) ‘ticket; coupon’
  - 상품권 gift certificate
  - 탑승권 boarding pass
  - 항공권 airline ticket
  - 할인권 discount coupon

#### -금 (돈 金)
- **권** (문서 券) ‘money’
  - 기부금 contribution; donation
  - 축의금 congratulatory money
  - 비자금 secret fund
  - 계약금 initial deposit; down payment
  - 보조금 subsidy
  - 사례금 honorarium; reward money
  - 부조금 congratulatory/condolence money
  - 보증금 security deposit
  - 중도금 second deposit; partial payment
  - 비상금 emergency money

#### -료 (값 料)
- **권** (문서 券) ‘charge; fee’
  - 통화료 call charge
  - 수업료 school fees; tuition
  - 연체료 late fee
  - 임대료 lease rent
  - 전기료 electricity charge
  - 구독료 subscription charge
  - 과태료 monetary penalty
  - 수수료 service charge; commission

#### -비 (비용 費)
- **권** (문서 券) ‘expenditures; cost’
  - 생활비 cost of living
  - 치료비 medical fee; doctor’s bill
  - 유지비 maintenance costs
  - 숙박비 lodging expenses
  - 냉(난)방비 cooling (& heating) costs
  - 교통비 transportation costs
  - 구의비 private tutoring expenses
  - 수리비 repair costs
  - 인건비 labor costs
  - 양육비 child-raising expenses

#### -세 (세금 税)
- **권** (문서 券) ‘tax’
  - 자동차세 auto tax
  - 재산세 property tax
  - 인세 royalties (on a book)
  - 통행세 transit tax; toll
  - 양도소득세 capital gains tax
  - 부가세 additional tax; surtax

#### -세 (세물 貰)
- **권** (문서 券) ‘rent’
  - 임대세 monthly rental
  - 방세 room rent
  - 집세 house rent
  - 자리세 rent for a spot (in resort areas)

#### 10.4.9 Suffixes relating to language and writing

- **어** (말씀 語)
  - 모국어 native language
  - 외국어 foreign language
  - 유행어 trendy phrase
  - 수식어 modifier (in grammar)
  - 동의어 synonym
  - 반의어 antonym
-장 (문서 狀) ‘document; letter’
  청첩장 (장) wedding invitation card
  고소장 written accusation
  독촉장 (payment) demand note

-담 (말씀 談) ‘talk(s); tale’
  성공담 success story
  경험담 personal episodes

-서 (글 書) ‘writing; document’
  이력서 résumé
  계약서 contract
  보증서 letter of guarantee; warranty

10.4.10 Suffixes relating to the speaker’s perception and emotion

The following suffixes are used to express the speaker’s ‘negative’ perception of things. They add an unpleasant negative connotation to the noun to which they are attached.

-두성이 ‘covered or smeared with’
  오자두성이 full of typos
  약점두성이 full of weaknesses

-딱지
  코딱지 snot; nose dirt
  심술딱지 nasty temper

NOTE: 소갈딱지 (= 소갈머리) is always followed by either 없다 with the meaning ‘be stupid and thoughtless’ or 좁다 with the meaning ‘be terribly narrow-minded.’

-머리
  그 성질머리야 여전하다.
  버르장머리 한 번 고약하네.
  인정머리하곤…
  주변머리라고는 하나도 없다니까.
  이제 술이라면 난덜머리가 난다.

(난덜머리 = 진결머리)
-대가리 (대가리 is a familiar/casual version of 머리 ‘head’)

-맛대가리 charm; taste
-겁대가리 fear; cowardice
-재미대가리 fun; amusement

NOTE: -대가리 is always followed by 없다 (맛대가리 하나도 없다 ‘be damn tasteless,’ 재미대가리 없다 ‘be bloody boring,’ etc.)

10.4.11 Suffixes relating to quantity/approximation

-량 (해아릴 뜻) ‘amount’

강수량 amount of rainfall
적설량 amount of snowfall
권장량 recommended dose
치사량 fatal dose

-쯤 ‘approximate size, amount, length of time, ability, etc.’

키가 180 씩 되고 몸무게가 70 킬로쯤 된다.
아홉시간쯤 잤어.
몇시쯤 됐어?
어디쯤 왔을까?
이쯤에서 끝내는데 어별까?
20 대 초반/중반/후반쯤 돼 보인다.
이 정도 추위쯤이야.
의사 démarch가지고 이런 것도 몰라?

-경 (잠깐 뜻) ‘around, about (refers only to a time)’

심사일경 around the 14th
화요일경 around Tuesday

-께 ‘around, about (a certain time); near (a place)’ [spoken/colloquial]

10 시께 around 10 o’clock
공원 정문께 near the main gate of the park

-분 (나눌 뜻) ‘portion; amount’

이달분 this month’s amount
갈비 임인분 one helping of galbi

-치 ‘a fixed quantity’

사흘치 three-day supply
일년치 one-year supply
10 Word formation

-어치 ‘worth’

값어치 value; worth
(곱)만원어치 $10,000 worth of
(귤)만원어치 $10,000 worth of (oranges)

 얼마나치 how many dollars’ worth?
반푼어치 the least amount

NOTE: 반푼어치 is found only with one frequently used expression, 어림없다 ‘be impossible; no way.’ By saying 어림 면도, the meaning of impossibility is strongly emphasized – ‘It’s utterly impossible. It’s nonsense.’

-짜리

만원짜리 지폐 $10,000 bill
구백불짜리 가방 $900 bag
방 두개짜리 아파트 two-bedroom apt.

NOTE: 1[한] 평 = 35.57 sq. ft.

-제 ‘in entirety; as it is’

통제 in its entirety; without cutting
그릇제 all, including the container

병제 (drinking) out of a bottle
접질제 without peeling off the skin

-꼴 ‘at the rate of; per unit’ (can be replaced by -정도)

2000 원에 세 개니까 한 개에 약 700 원꼴이네요.

Given that these are three for $2,000, each costs about $700.

일주일에 삼십 불이니까 하루 평균 약 4 불꼴이에요.

Given that the weekly rate is $30, the average daily rate is approximately $4.

10.5 Abbreviations

Finding quick ways to say things is popular in Korean just as it is in English, and is often responsible for the creation of new expressions. One common strategy involves dropping the last part of the word/phrase.

왕싸가지 rude person
인테리 intellectual
슈퍼 supermarket
다이아 diamond
추리닝 training/sports clothes
매스컴 mass communication

받맛 disgusting person/behavior
인플레 inflation
프로 program; professional; percentage
런닝 running shirt; undershirt
후라시 flashlight
알바 part time job (‘arbeit’ in German)
(알바 < 아르바이트)
Another strategy eliminates the first part of the original word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>벤츠</td>
<td>&lt; 머세디즈 벤츠 &gt;</td>
<td>Mercedes-Benz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>범생</td>
<td>&lt; 모범생 &gt;</td>
<td>exemplary student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>업자</td>
<td>&lt; 실업자 &gt;</td>
<td>unemployed person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>존심</td>
<td>&lt; 자존심 &gt;</td>
<td>self-respect; pride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간만에</td>
<td>&lt; 오래간만에 &gt;</td>
<td>after a long time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, some compounds or phrases are shortened by retaining only a part (usually the first) of each component.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아침과점심</td>
<td>&lt; 아침 점심 &gt;</td>
<td>brunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물냉면</td>
<td>&lt; 물냉면 &gt;</td>
<td>naengmyŏn noodles in cold soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비빔냉면</td>
<td>&lt; 비빔냉면 &gt;</td>
<td>naengmyŏn noodles mixed with spicy sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입시</td>
<td>&lt; 입학시험 &gt;</td>
<td>entrance exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열공</td>
<td>&lt; 열심히 공부하다 &gt;</td>
<td>studying hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한영</td>
<td>&lt; 한국어와 영어 &gt;</td>
<td>Korean and English (dictionary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의대</td>
<td>&lt; 의과 대학교 &gt;</td>
<td>medical school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>급질</td>
<td>&lt; 급한 질문 &gt;</td>
<td>urgent question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남친/여친</td>
<td>&lt; 남자친구/여자친구 &gt;</td>
<td>boyfriend/girlfriend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>선관위</td>
<td>&lt; 선거관리위원회 &gt;</td>
<td>election management committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공채</td>
<td>&lt; 공개채용 &gt;</td>
<td>public hiring/employment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조폭</td>
<td>&lt; 조직 폭력배 &gt;</td>
<td>organized gangsters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전교조</td>
<td>&lt; 전국 교원 노동조합 &gt;</td>
<td>teachers’ union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자판기</td>
<td>&lt; 자동 판매기 &gt;</td>
<td>vending machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>택배</td>
<td>&lt; 주택배달 &gt;</td>
<td>door-to-door delivery service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>민증</td>
<td>&lt; 주민등록증 &gt;</td>
<td>identification card</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A somewhat similar process is also found with compounds formed with the help of loan words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>리모컨</td>
<td>&lt; 리모트 컨트롤 &gt;</td>
<td>remote control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에어컨</td>
<td>&lt; 에어 컨디셔너 &gt;</td>
<td>air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오므라이스</td>
<td>&lt; 오므렛 라イス &gt;</td>
<td>omelet rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>디카</td>
<td>&lt; 디지털 카메라 &gt;</td>
<td>digital camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몰카</td>
<td>&lt; 몰래 카메라 &gt;</td>
<td>hidden camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>컴퓨터병</td>
<td>&lt; 컴퓨터 문병 &gt;</td>
<td>computer illiterate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야경</td>
<td>&lt; 야간 조경 &gt;</td>
<td>night-time jogging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The word formation processes discussed earlier in this chapter frequently create innovations in Korean vocabulary. In addition, the innovative and non-standard use of language that is popular among younger people often assigns new meanings to old words and expressions. Here is a sampling of contemporary expressions that are widely used in colloquial speech, especially among young people.

**Her princess syndrome is really severe. He deserves to be ostracized being like that. She needs to date someone like her who has a serious prince syndrome to get a taste of her own medicine.**

**Today’s stand-out actors consist of mostly middle and high schoolers. There are even elementary schoolers. Even college students are a bit on the old side.**

**This website is frequented by business people.**

**He’s the rising star these days. His face, body, and character are all top-notch.**

**NOTE:** 맘짱 is a shortened form of 마음짱. The suffix -짱 is quite productively used if someone is a great cook, (s)he is a 요리짱; if someone is excellent in school, (s)he is a 공부짱; and so on.

**I’m feeling awesome today, so I’ll treat you to a great meal.**

**There was a big sale in the department store so we bought a ton of stuff.**

**I’ll text you in the evening.**

**A: After dinner, do you wanna hit a movie?**

**B: Of course.**

**Stop fidgeting like that and try to do something to show her that you’re interested in her.**
어휴 열 받아. 두/lic  열린다 정말. [familiar/casual]

Oh, how infuriating. I’m about to blow my top.

그 교수한테 추천서 좀 써달라고 이메일 보냈는데 싫혔어. [familiar/casual]

I sent an e-mail to that professor asking for a letter of recommendation, but it got completely ignored [chewed up].

A: 뭐? 그 교수가 수업시간에 너한테 쪽 쳐다구? [familiar/casual]
B: 그래 그 노땅한테 쪽 먹었어. 완전 쪽 팔렸어. [familiar/casual]

A: What? The professor embarrassed you in class?
B: Yes, I got embarrassed by the old geezer. I was completely humiliated.

It would take another book to list the internet expressions that have developed over the last decade and continue to be created on a daily basis. Speed is vital in internet communication, and it is therefore not surprising that many innovations are the product of abbreviation and clipping. For example, 안습이다 is the clipped version of 안구에 습기가 차다 ‘the pupil gets moist,’ which is used to sarcastically mean ‘how sad,’ and 갑툭튀 is the shortened form of 갑자기 터어나온…, meaning ‘popped out of the blue.’
11 Some vocabulary contrasts

No two languages present the world in exactly the same way, and it is common for one language to make distinctions that another ignores. This chapter focuses on some areas in which Korean makes contrasts in its vocabulary that have no direct counterpart in English.

11.1 Verbs of wearing

Unlike English, Korean uses different verbs for different types of ‘wearing’ – depending on the body part that is covered and also depending on how you put the article of clothing on. (Typical articles and accessories for each verb of wearing are provided below.)

11.1.1 Depending on the body part that is covered

- Things that are put on the torso as clothes: 입다
  - 옷 clothes
  - 코트 coat
  - 스웨터 sweater
  - 팬티 panties/boxers
  - 수영복 swim suit

  바지 pants
  조끼 vest
  치마 skirt
  팬티 스타킹 panty hose
  교복 school uniform
  뒷집 winter underwear

  네복 apron
  비옷 rain coat

  밖에 추우니까 든든히 입어라. 바지 입고 조끼도 입고 코트도 입어.
  It’s cold outside, so bundle up. Put on the pants, the vest, and also the coat.

- Things that are put on the feet: 신다
  - 신발 shoes
  - 부츠 boots
  - 실내화 indoor shoes
  - 판타롱/밴드 스타킹 knee-length/thigh-length stockings

  양말 socks
  운동화 sneakers
  팬티 스타킹 panty hose

  구두 dress shoes
  장화 rubber boots

  구두 신지 말고 운동화 신어. 그런데 바지를 입은 거니 신은 거니?
  Wear sneakers, not dress shoes. By the way, are you wearing your pants as clothes or as shoes? (Your pants are too long!)

  NOTE: Both 입다 and 신다 can be used for 팬티 스타킹.
• Things that end up on or over the head: 쓰다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glasses</th>
<th>Hat</th>
<th>Wig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안경 glasses</td>
<td>모자 hat</td>
<td>가발 wig</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

복면강도가 미리에 스타킹을 뒤집어 쓰고 들어 왔어요.
The masked robber came in with a stocking over his head.

• Things that are put around the wrist, ankle, or waist: 차다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Watch</th>
<th>Bracelet</th>
<th>Anklet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>시계 watch</td>
<td>팔찌 bracelet</td>
<td>발찌 anklet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>手表</td>
<td>手镯</td>
<td>脚链</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

보통 왼손에 시계를 차고 오른손에 팔찌를 차지요.
People usually wear a watch on the left wrist and a bracelet on the right one.

• Things that are put around the shoulders: 걸치다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shawl</th>
<th>Cardigan</th>
<th>Coat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>순 shawl</td>
<td>카디건 cardigan</td>
<td>코트 coat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

추울텐데 이 카디건 걸칠래?
It must be cold; do you want to put this cardigan around your shoulders?

11.1.2 Depending on the manner of putting something on

• Things that are put on by `tying’ or ‘buckling’: 매다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Necktie</th>
<th>Belt</th>
<th>Scarf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>넥타이 necktie</td>
<td>벨트 belt</td>
<td>스카프 scarf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

오늘 금요일이니까 캐주얼하게 넥타이는 매지 말아야겠다.
I think I better not wear a tie today because it’s Friday and I want to be casual.

• Things that are put on by `slipping on’ or ‘squeezing into’: 끼다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ring</th>
<th>Gloves</th>
<th>Glasses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>반지 ring</td>
<td>장갑 gloves</td>
<td>안경 glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>钻戒</td>
<td>手套</td>
<td>眼镜</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

손가락마다 반지를 졌어. 심지어는 엄지 손가락에까지.
She has rings on each and every finger, including even her thumbs.

• Things that are put on by ‘hanging’: 걸다

그 목걸이 거니가 우아해 보여요.
You look elegant with the necklace on.

• Things that are put on by ‘attaching’: 달다 (or 부착하다 [written/formal])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name Tag</th>
<th>Badge</th>
<th>Ribbon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이름표/명찰 name tag</td>
<td>배지 badge</td>
<td>리본 ribbon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

세미나에 참석하시는 동안 모두 이름표를 부착해 주시기 바랍니다.
We’d like all of you to wear name tags during the seminar.

이름표를 다니가 사람들 이름 의우기에 편하네요. (다니키 < 달으니가)
It’s easy to memorize people’s names because they have name tags on.
• Things that are put on by ‘spraying’: 뿌리다

향수는 너무 많이 뿌리지 않고 적당히 뿌리는 것이 극히 중요하다.

*It’s extremely important not to overdo one’s perfume but to wear just the right amount.*

• Things that are put on by ‘wrapping around’: 두르다

앞치마 apron   수건 towel   두건 bandana

(실크) 스판(sc)at (silk) scarf   (털) 목도리 (wool) scarf   솔 shawl

머리에는 두건을 두르고 목에는 수건을 둔더라구요.

*I saw him with a bandana around his head and a towel around his neck.*

• Things that are put on by ‘inserting’: 꽂다

머리에 핀을 꽂고 양쪽 귀 뒤에 꽂을 꽂았어요.

*She wore a pin in her hair and flowers behind both her ears.*

• Things (accessories) that are put on in various manners: 하다

넥타이 necktie   벨트 belt   스카프/목도리 scarf

괄찌/발찌 bracelet/anklet   귀걸이 ear ring   목걸이 necklace

리본 ribbon   머리핀 hairpin   가발 wig

가면 mask   앞치마 apron   브래지어 bra

 큰 목도리를 하니까 귀걸이가 안 보인다.

*Because you wore a big scarf, I cannot see your ear rings.*

• Any of the articles from above and other things that can be put on as part of formal attire, out of regulation, and so on: 착용하다 [written/formal]

유니폼 uniform   군복 military uniform   교복 school uniform

배지 badge   예복 ceremonial clothes   정장 formal suit

수영모 bathing cap   구명조끼 life vest   이름표/명찰 name tag

수영장에서는 반드시 수영모(자)를 착용해 주시기 바랍니다.

*Please be sure to wear bathing caps in the pool.*

NOTE: 입다, 쓰다, 달다, etc. are used in non-formal situations: 수영모자 안 쓰고 수영하다 걸렸어 ‘I got caught while swimming without a bathing cap.’

As we have seen, more than one verb can be used with a particular item. This can come about due to differences in the formality of the situation (as in the case of 달다 vs. 부착하다 and 입다/쓰다/달다 vs. 착용하다). In addition, the choice of verb can vary depending on whether the speaker focuses on the body part that is covered or the manner of putting something on. So we can say 안경을 쓴다 because glasses are put on the head, but we can also say 안경을 끼다 because they are slipped on.
Finally, when there is more than one manner of wearing a certain item (usually accessories), 하다 may be used instead of a more specialized verb. Thus, we can say 넥타이를 매다 or 하다, 벨트를 매다 or 하다, 팔찌를 찬다 or 하다, and so on.

11.2 Verbs of taking off

Verbs of taking off are not as diverse as verbs of wearing. There are just a few such verbs, and the choice among them is based on how something is taken off, as the examples below illustrate. (Perfume cannot be taken off and an umbrella is either folded, for which the verb 접다 is used, or shut down, for which 꺼다 is used.)

- Things that are taken off by ‘peeling’ or ‘lifting off’: 벗다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>옷 (any type of garment)</th>
<th>신발 (any type of shoes)</th>
<th>양말 socks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>스타킹 stockings</td>
<td>브래지어 bra</td>
<td>안경 glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모자 hat</td>
<td>가발 wig</td>
<td>가면 mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장갑 gloves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

옷도 안 벗고 신발도 안 벗은 채 그냥 잠이 들었어요.

He fell asleep without taking off his clothes or even his shoes.

- Things that are taken off by ‘taking out’: 빼다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>반지 ring</th>
<th>귀걸이 ear ring</th>
<th>목걸이 necklace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>팔찌 bracelet</td>
<td>장갑 gloves</td>
<td>시계 watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안경 glasses</td>
<td>콘택트 렌즈 contact lens</td>
<td>벨트 belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>핀 pin</td>
<td>리본 ribbon</td>
<td>기저귀 diaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배지 badge</td>
<td>이름표 name tag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

찜질방에 갈 때는 반지하고, 목걸이, 귀걸이 전부 빼 놓고 가도록 해.

Make sure to take the ring, necklace, and ear rings all off when you go to the sauna.

- Things that are taken off by ‘untying’: 풀다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>넥타이 necktie</th>
<th>시계 watch</th>
<th>목도리 scarf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>벨트 belt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

답답할텐데 넥타이 풀세요.

You must be feeling stuffy; why don’t you take your necktie off?

- Things that are taken off by ‘detaching’: 떼다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>밖에 나갈 때는 배지하고 이름표를 떼자.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Let’s take off the badge and the name tag when we go out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that more than one verb can be used with certain items: 안경을 벗다 or 빼다, 장갑을 벗다 or 빼다, 시계를 풀다 or 빼다, and so on.
11.3 Verbs of playing

Unlike in English where the verb ‘play’ is used for all sorts of sports, games, and music, several different verbs are used in Korean. It is very important to note that 놀다 is an intransitive verb that means only ‘play around without doing any type of purposeful activity’ – the opposite of work. So, it cannot be used to describe participation in sports or games (with the exception of 윷놀다 ‘play yut sticks’ – a traditional Korean game). Instead, as the next examples show, you must choose from a variety of other verbs based on the type of activity that is involved.

- Activities that involve hitting – keyboards, a ball, cards, etc.: 치다
  
  드럼 drum  
  기타 guitar  
  테니스 tennis  
  농구 bowling  

  피아노는 좀 치는데 기타는 못 칩니다.
  
  I can play the piano a little bit, but I can’t play the guitar.

- Activities that involve plucking strings: 켜다
  
  바이올린 violin  
  첼로 cello  
  가야금 Kayagŭm  

  바이올린 켜는 소리가 정말 아름답다.
  
  The violin sound is really beautiful.

- Activities that involve blowing: 불다
  
  플룻 flute  
  색소폰 saxophone  
  피리 pipe  
  나팔 bugle  
  호루라기 whistle  

  밤에 피리 부는 소리가 처량하게 들린다.
  
  The sound of playing a pipe at night is sad.

- Playing musical instruments formally or professionally: 연주하다
  
  다음 달에 국립극장에서 첼로를 연주할 예정입니다.
  
  I will be performing cello at the National Theater next month.

- Activities that involve placing a piece in a board game: 두다
  
  바둑은 좀 두는데 장기는 못 둡니다.
  
  I can play paduk, but I don’t know how to play chess.
11.4 Verbs of cleaning

Students in first-year Korean language classes often incorrectly say 얼굴을 청소했습니다 to mean ‘I cleaned my face’! As we will see, verbs of cleaning are somewhat more specialized in Korean than in English.

- **Surface washing or cleaning with water:** 씻다 or 닦다
  - 과일 fruit
  - 채소 vegetables
  - 쌀 rice
  - 손 hands
  - 얼굴 face
  - 몸 body
  - 과일은 깨끗이 씻어서 먹어야 돼요.
    - You should thoroughly wash fruit before eating it.

- **Surface cleaning by wiping, brushing, scraping:** 닦다
  - 거울 mirror
  - 차 car
  - 유리창 window glass
  - 식탁 dining table
  - 접시 plates
  - 책상 desk
  - 과일 fruit
  - 손 hands
  - 얼굴 face
  - 몸 body
  - 이 teeth
  - 요즘 알바로 식당에서 접시 닦고 있습니다.
    - These days, I wash dishes in a restaurant as my part-time job.

- **Cleaning of horizontal surfaces by wiping or mopping with a cloth:** 훔치다
  - 방 room
  - 마루 (wooden) floors
  - 책상 desk
  - 식탁 dining table
  - 마루 걸레로 여기 마루 좀 훔쳐라.
    - Wipe this floor with a dry cleaning cloth.
Some vocabulary contrasts

- Gentle washing with hair soaked in water: 감다
  샤워하면서 머리를 안 감는 사람도 있어요?
  *Are there people who don’t wash their hair while taking a shower?*

- Washing face and hands: 세수하다
  A: 세수 좀 해라. 얼굴이 그게 됐니?
  B: 어, 얼굴 닦았는데…
  *A: Wash your face, please. Look at yourself.*
  *B: That’s strange, I washed it…*

- Washing automobiles: 세차하다
  A: 세차 좀 해라. 차가 그게 됐니?
  B: 네, 그렇지 않아도 지금 차 닦을려 가는 길이에요.
  *A: Why don’t you wash your car? It’s really bad.*
  *B: Yes, I’m actually on my way to get the car washed.*

- Sweeping, vacuuming, mopping, etc.: 청소하다 or 치우다
  집 house 방 room 복도 hallway
  마당 yard 화장실 bathroom 옥실 bathing room
  교실 classroom 계단 stairs
  방 청소는 내가 할테니까 너는 화장실 좀 깨끗하게 치워라.
  *I’ll clean the room, so you make the bathroom sparkly clean.*

- Extracting smeared-in dirt, usually from a fabric, by squeezing or suctioning with the help of water (by hand or by machine): 빼다 or 세탁하다
  옷 clothes 이불 comforter 담요 blanket
  수건 towel 모자 hat/cap 운동화 sneakers
  걸레 cleaning cloth 행주 dish cloth
  운동화를 어떻게 세탁기에 넣고 빼니? 손으로 빼야아지.
  *How can you wash the sneakers in the washer? You should wash them by hand.*
  NOTE: 세탁하다 is usually used for professional (dry) cleaning while 빼하다 is used for ‘do laundry.’

- Doing the dishes (by hand): 설거지하다
  설거지하기 너무 싫은데 우리 식기 세척기 하나 살까요?
  *We hate doing dishes; shall we buy a dish washer?*

- Cleansing by means of detergents or medicine: 세척하다
  건강을 위해 위와 장을 세척하기도 한다.
  *People sometimes have their stomach and intestines cleansed for their health.*
12 Proverbs and idioms

Languages are made more lively and interesting by proverbs and idioms. Learning to use these sorts of items is especially important in Korean because they are very popular and very frequently employed.

12.1 Proverbs

Proverbs offer nuggets of advice that reflect a culture’s practices and wisdom – whether it’s ‘The grass is always greener on the other side of the fence,’ or the Korean equivalent ‘남의 멍이 커 보인다’ ‘The other person’s rice cake looks bigger.’

The following expressions are among the most commonly used. They are presented in Korean alphabetical order (가나다라순), followed by their English equivalent and, when appropriate, by their literal meaning in brackets. Helpful tips on how to use the proverbs can be found in 12.1.4.

12.1.1 Proverbs with identical English equivalents

구르는 돌에는 이끼가 가지 않는다. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
눈에는 눈 이에는 이. An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth.
늦었더라도 생각할 때가 가장 빠르다. It’s never too late to mend one’s ways.
뜻이 있는 곳에 길이 있다. Where there’s a will, there’s a way.
로마는 하루 아침에 이루어지지 않았다. Rome was not built in a day.
모르는 계 약이다. Ignorance is bliss.
무소식이 최소식이다. No news is good news.
빙산의 일각 the tip of the iceberg
뿌린 대로 거둔다. You reap what you sow.
지장이 반이다. Beginning is half done.
시장이 반찬이다. Hunger is the best sauce.
아는 게 험이다. Knowledge is power.
오늘 할 일을 내일로 미루지 말라. Don’t put off until tomorrow things that should be done today.
### 12.1.2 Proverbs with approximate English equivalents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Proverb</th>
<th>English Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>천리길도 한걸음부터.</td>
<td>A long journey starts with a single step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하늘은 스스로 돕는 자를 돕는다.</td>
<td>God helps those who help themselves.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Proverb</th>
<th>English Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>갈수록 태산이다.</td>
<td>After a mountain is another mountain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고생 끝에 나이 온다. (= 고진감래)</td>
<td>Hard work pays off; No pain, no gain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구관이 명관이다.</td>
<td>The devil you know is better than the devil you don’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 아버지에 그 아들. (= 부전자전)</td>
<td>Like father, like son.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮말은 새가 듣고 밤말은 쥐가 듣는다.</td>
<td>Walls have ears. [Birds hear your day-talk; mice hear your night-talk.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈 감으면 코 베어먹을 세상 되로 주고 말로 받는다.</td>
<td>a dog-eat-dog world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 손이 마주치야 소리가 난다.</td>
<td>Sow the wind and reap the whirlwind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많이 써가 된다.</td>
<td>It takes two to tango. [It takes two hands to clap.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바늘 도둑이 소 도둑된다.</td>
<td>Self-fulfilling prophesy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밥 없는 말이 천리 간다.</td>
<td>He that will steal an egg will steal an ox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>불난 집이 부채질.</td>
<td>Rumors spread like wildfire. [Words without feet travel a thousand miles.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빈수레가 요란하다.</td>
<td>Fanning the flames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사공이 많으면 벡가 산으로 간다.</td>
<td>An empty barrel makes a lot of noise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세갈 버릇 여든지까지 간다.</td>
<td>Too many cooks spoil the broth. [Too many boatmen take the boat to a mountain.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소 없고 외양간 고친다.</td>
<td>Old habits die hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쇠 귀에 경 읽기</td>
<td>It’s too late to shut the barn door after the horse is gone. [One repairs the barn after the cow is gone.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쇠뿔도 단검에 빼야 한다.</td>
<td>Preaching to the deaf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니 멤 굴뚝에 연기날까.</td>
<td>Strike while the iron is hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열번 적어 안 넘어 가는 나무 없다.</td>
<td>There’s no smoke without fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>우는 아이 젖 준다.</td>
<td>If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again. [Chop ten times, any tree will fall.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The squeaky wheel gets the grease. [A crying baby gets milk.]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Once bitten, twice shy. [A heart that was once scared of a mud-turtle will get scared of a kettle lid.]

Every dog has his day. [Sunlight may enter even a rat hole.]

Keeping up with the Joneses.

Many a mickle makes a muckle.

Go for wool and come home shorn. [One goes to remove a lump and comes back with another one.]

Don’t start something unless you are going to finish it.

12.1.3 Proverbs that are more or less unique to Korean

If one keeps silent, one will at least be not wrong.

An upstart forgets his origins.

A pauper becomes a king (beating the odds).

Stay on the sideline and just watch the game.

Don’t be complacent with what you are; there’s always someone better. [For every crawling/running guy, there’s a flying guy.]

What it is depends on how it is interpreted.

(S)he’s calling the shots for someone else’s business. [(S)he’s selecting fruit for someone else’s party.]

(S)he is completely illiterate. [Looking at a scythe, one doesn’t even know the letter (which looks like the scythe).]

You can pay back a huge debt with a single word.
모로 가도 서울만 가면 된다. 
It doesn’t matter how you do things as long as you achieve the intended goal. [All you need is to get to Seoul even if you detour.]

믿는 도끼에 발등 찍힌다. 
One gets stabbed in the back by someone who one trusts.

범세가 황새를 따라가면 다타가 쫓겨진다. 
People ruin themselves by trying to imitate their betters. [Small birds break their legs trying to follow big birds.]

병 주고 약 준다. 
You’re toying with me. [You gave me the disease and now the cure.]

사촌이 땅을 사면 배 아프다. 
One is jealous of one’s cousin’s success.

설마가 사람 잡는다. 
It is dangerous to assume that something won’t happen or didn’t happen. (Anything is possible.)

암전한 강아지가 부뚜막에 먼저 물러간다. 
Quiet people are wilder. [Well-behaved puppies go up on the kitchen countertop first.]

올라가지 못할 나무는 처다보지도 말라. 
Have a realistic goal. [Don’t even look at a tree you cannot climb.]

원수는 외나무 다리에서 만난다. 
Enemies are meant to run across a single lane bridge (a cruel coincidence).

윗물이 맘아야 아랫물이 마다. 
Be exemplary to your juniors. [The downstream is clean only if the upstream is.]

작은 고추가 맵다. 
Small people are tough and smart. [Small peppers are hot.]

젊어 고생은 사서도 한다. 
Pain while young is even desirable.

지렁이도 밝으면 꿈틀한다. 
Even the meekest will lose his temper eventually. [Even worms wiggle if stepped on.]

찬물도 위아래가 있다. 
Seniority rules even in drinking cold water.

첫술에 배 뷔릅까? 
Success doesn’t come overnight. [Will hunger be satiated with the first spoonful?]

평게없는 무덤 없다. 
There is an excuse for everything. [There is no grave without an excuse.]

12.1.4 How to use proverbs

In some cases, all that is needed is just a portion of the proverb, such as the boldfaced parts in the following examples; the rest is understood without being said.

닭 잡아 먹고 오리발 내밀다. 
One is denying something. [After eating chicken, one shows the duck feet.]
You are counting your chickens (before they are hatched). [No one is even thinking about giving you the rice cake, but you are drinking Kimchi soup first.]

More often, proverbs are used in the following patterns, with necessary modifications to the original ending and sometimes with some added or substituted words.

- 다는 거/말, -(이)라는 거/말

부모님이 반대하신다고 언제까지 그 사람 몰래 만날 거야? 꼬리가 길면 잡힌다는 거 모르니?

How long are you going to see him secretly just because your parents don’t approve of him? Don’t you know that ‘prolonged wrongdoing gets caught eventually?’

열 길 물 속은 야아도 한 길 사람 속은 모른다는 말 이제 알 것 같아요. 단짝으로 지내던 친구가 저를 배신할 줄 어떻게 알았겠어요?

I think I now understand the saying, ‘You know a 60-foot deep well but never know a 6-foot tall person.’ How would I have known that my best friend would betray me?

구슬이 서발이라도 페어야 보배라는 말이 있지요. 연구를 많이 하면 뭐 합니까? 저널에 출판을 해야지요.

There is a saying, ‘Three packs of pearls are nothing unless you string them together and turn them into treasure.’ What’s the point of doing a lot of research? You should publish it in a journal.

- 다는데, -(이)라는데

원숭이도 나무에서 떨어질 때가 있다는데, 조심하세요.

They say that ‘even a monkey can fall from a tree.’ So, be careful.

아 다르고 어 다르다는 데 똑같은 말이라도 그렇게 기본 나쁘게 하니?

They say that even the same word can sound different depending on how one says it, but you are saying things in such an unpleasant way.

서당개 삼년이면 풍월을 읽는다면 너는 요리사 남편을 두었으면서 어때 그렇게 요리를 못 하니?

They say that ‘dogs at school can recite poems after three years,’ so why is your cooking so bad when your husband is a chef?

같은 값이면 다홍치마라면 기왕이면 모양이 예쁘걸로 사지요.

They say that ‘if the price is the same, pick a prettier/better-quality one,’ so why don’t we buy the one with the prettier design?
-다다니. -(이)라다다니

등잔 밑이 어둡다다니, 코 앞에 두고 여태 찾았네요.

Don’t they say that ‘right under the lamp is the darkest’? I’ve been looking for it all this time when it was right under my nose.

뭐 (동) 묻은 개가 겨 묻은 개를 나무란다다니, 자기가 왜박혔으면서 나한테 늘게 들어 왔다고 야단이야.

Didn’t I hear that ‘The pot calls the kettle black. [A something-(shit)-covered dog scolds a husk-covered dog]’? You slept out, but are blaming me for having come home late.

호랑이도 제 말하면 온다다니, 우리 지금 너 얘기하고 있었는데.

‘Speaking of the devil,’ we were talking about you just now.

혹 때리 갔다 혹 붙여 온다다니 문제를 해결하러 갔다가 오히려 더 큰 문제를 만들어 왔네.

Just like the saying, ‘You go for wool and come home shorn,’ you went out to solve a problem but came back with a bigger one.

싼게 비지벽이라다니, 지난 달에 오천원 주고 산 우산이 벌써 고장났어.

Just like I heard, ‘If you buy cheaply, you pay dearly. [Cheap things are junk rice cake.],’ the umbrella I bought for W5,000 last month is already broken.

-다잡아. -(이)랴잡아

가재는 게 편이고 초록은 동색이라잡아요. 다 꼭리끼리 모이게 마련이에요.

Don’t they say, ‘Crawfish side with crabs’ and ‘The grass and the green are of the same color’? Birds of a feather always tend to stick together.

A: 이 길은 비가 와도 문제 없어요. 10 년째 이 길로 다녔거든요.

B: 둘다리도 두들겨 보고 건너라잡아요. 그래도 조심하셔요.

A: This road will be safe even when it rains. This is my tenth year traveling this road.

B: Don’t they say, ‘Look before you leap. [Tap even the stone bridge before crossing]’? Be careful nonetheless.

A: 길이 별로 안 무거워요. 혼자 나를 수 있어요.

B: 백지장도 맞들면 납다잡아요. 이리 주세요.

A: My luggage is not that heavy. I can move it by myself.

B: You know, ‘Two is better than one even to lift a sheet of paper.’ Give it to me.
• -다고, -(이)라고

배보다 배꼽이 크다고 저녁값은 만원인데 커피값이 이만원이에요.

'The bellybutton is larger than the belly. 'The dinner cost ₩10,000, but the coffee cost ₩20,000.

하나를 보면 열을 안다고 이런 작은 일도 저렇게 성실히 하나 다른 일은 더 잘 할 거예요.

'You can tell ten things by looking at one exemplary case.' Looking at her treating this small matter so responsibly, I’m sure she will do other things even better.

길고 짧은 건 대 빠야 안다고 실제 경기가 끝날 때까지는 어느 팀이 이길지 아무도 모른다니꺼요.

They say ‘It isn’t over till it’s over.’ No one knows which team will win until the game is over, you know.

가련 나이 장날이라고 모처럼 인사드리러 갔더니 안 계시더란.

‘What a coincidence to pick this day.’ I went to say hello to her after a long time but she wasn’t home.

원두 커피를 좀 끓여야/내려야 되는데 종이 필터가 없네. 짜 대신 닭이라고, 이 치킨타월이라고 쓰아껴썼다.

I have to brew some coffee but don’t have a paper filter. Well, just like the saying, ‘Chicken, if you don’t have pheasant,’ I think I’ll just use a paper towel.

• …는 격이다 ‘It’s as if…’

A: 스팸메일이 너무 많아 와서 이메일을 사용하지 말까 생각중이에요.

B: 구더기 무서워서 장 못 담그는 격이네요.

A: I am thinking about stopping using e-mail because of too much spam mail.

B: That’s like ‘Fearing maggots (something minor), one gives up on making soy sauce (something important).’

A: 그 남자랑 잘 돼 가니?

B: 말도 마. 결혼 약속한 사람이 있었대. 완전 닭 죽던 개 지붕 쳐다 보는 격이 됐다.

A: How is it going with that guy?

B: Tell me about it. I didn’t know he had a fiancée. I’m ‘like a dog just looking up at the chicken on the roof after trying to chase it.’

A: 여보, 당신이 진공 청소기 쓰더니 또 고장났구나.

B: 그릴리가 있는데. 내가 고장낸 거 아냐. 까마귀 날자 배 떨어지는 격이네. (=오비이까이네.)

A: Darling, you just used the vacuum cleaner and it looks like you broke it again.

B: No way. It wasn’t me. It’s as if ‘the pear falls just as the crow flies out of the tree.’

(Innocent behavior causes suspicion just due to its timing.)
-는 법이다

A: 이번 돈같이 산 가방인데 친구 게 더 좋아 보이네.
B: 남의 빛이 원래 커 보이는 법이에요.
   A: These are identical bags we bought together yesterday, but hers looks nicer.
   B: It’s always like that: ‘The other person’s rice cake looks bigger.’

A: 베탕치기로 시험 준비를 했더니 역시 결과가 안 좋아.
B: 그러면 내가 미리미리 준비하겠잖아. 콩 심은 테 콩나고 팥 심은 데 팥 나는 법이지.
   A: I crammed for the exam and sure enough, the result is no good.
   B: So, didn’t I tell you to prepare in advance? You are supposed to ‘reap what you sow (you cannot expect red beans where plain beans are sown).’

berry을수록 고개를 숙이는 법이다. 이번에 승진했다고 너무 자만하지 말고 더 열심히 일하도록 해.

‘Truly great people are to be modest. [The rice stalk droops as it ripens.]’ Just because you got promoted this time, do not become over confident but work harder.

-게/기 마련이다

깊신도 제 챙이 있겠네 마련이니까 나도 좋은 사람 만날 수 있겠지?
‘Even straw shoes come in twos,’ so I guess I’ll be able to find my other half, right?

A: 똑같은 부하 직원이라도 같은 고향 출신을 더 챙기게 되네요.
B: 원래 팔이 안으로 굽게 마련이죠.
   A: They are all my staff, but I tend to favor those who are from my home town.
   B: I guess it’s natural that ‘one’s arm bends inward.’

A: 왜 그렇게 쌍증을 내며 말을 하니?
B: 가는 말이 고와야 오는 말도 끝기 마련이야. 내가 먼저 쌍증내며 말했잖아.
   A: Why are you speaking to me so irritably?
   B: ‘You should speak kindly in order to be spoken to kindly.’ You spoke to me that way first.

A: 직장 동료하고 오해가 있어서 사이가 안 좋았었는데 오해를 풀고 나니가 더 가까워졌어요.
B: 잘 됐네요. 비운 뒤에 빛이 굳기 마련이지요.
   A: My relationship with a colleague soured because of a misunderstanding but we got even closer after the misunderstanding was cleared up.
   B: That’s good. ‘A relationship always solidifies after overcoming trouble.
      [The earth hardens after rain.]’
A: 남자친구 부모님이 갈비랑 잡채랑 음식을 잔뜩 해 오셨어요. 저녁에 오셔서 좀 드실래요?
B: 원님 덕에 나팔 불게 생겼네요. 네, 이따 갈게요.

A: My boyfriend’s parents came with plenty of kalbi and chapch’ae. Do you want to come over for dinner and have some?
B: Looks like ‘I can have a feast thanks to someone else. [I can blow a horn thanks to the governor.].’ Yes, I’ll come later.

두가지 일을 다 잘하고 싶었는데, 둘 다 제대로 못하고 있어. 두 마리 토끼 잡으려다 다 농치게 생겼어.

I wanted to do both things well, but I’m failing with both of them. ‘I was trying to catch two rabbits, but it looks like I’m losing both of them.’

엄마 아빠가 크게 다투셔서 당분간 집에서 밥 먹기 힘들 거 같애. 고래 싸움에 새우똥 터지게 생겼어.

Mom and Dad had a big fight, so I think it’ll be difficult to eat at home for the time being. Looks like ‘The shrimp’s back will get torn by the whales’ fight.’

A: 호두 파이를 만들었는데 한번 드셔 보라고 가져 왔어요.
B: 고마워요. 잔간만요. 어제 사과 두 상자를 샀는데, 한 상자 가져 가세요.
A: 어, 괜찮은데요….참, 되로 주고 말로 받게 생겼네.

A: I made walnut pie, so I brought some for you to try.
B: Thank you. Wait. I bought two boxes of apples yesterday; please take one.
A: Oh, it’s okay. Well, it looks like I’m going to ‘reap a lot more than I sowed.’

A: You can’t help but laugh if someone looks better dressed like that? The clothes really make a difference. [Clothes are wings.]’

아무리 급해도 우리 밥 먼저 먹고 하자. 금강산도 식후경이야.

Let’s eat first no matter how rushed we are. ‘Even the beautiful Kŭmgang Mt. is best appreciated after a meal. (Nothing can be done properly when one is hungry.)’

A: 아니, 수진이같이 암전한 애가 어떻게 저런 날라리하고 사질 수 있지?
B: да 제 눈에 안경이지요.

A: My, how can someone so decent like Sujin go out with such a superficial and loose person?
B: Well, everybody has his/her own taste (beauty is in the eye of the beholder).’
• Others

**Who doesn’t have skeletons in his closet?** [There’s no one without dust if you shake their clothes.] *It’s natural that everyone has shortcomings.*

네는 종로에서 빨 맛고 한강에 와서 화풀이하니? 왜 회사에서 화난 걸 갖고 집에 와서 그래?

**Are you taking your anger out on the wrong person?** [You got slapped on the face on Chong-no St. and are taking your anger out miles away at the Han River.] *Why are you bringing your work problems home?*

엽불에는 마음이 없고 쟁밥에만 마음이 있나봐요. 학회에 와서 관광하러 다닐 궁리만 하고 있으니 말이에요.

*It seems like they ‘have no interest in the prayer but only in the food offering.’ They came to a conference, but are thinking only about sightseeing.*

그 자다가 봉창치는 소리 좀 작작 해라. 말도 안 되는 소리 좀 이제 그만 하라구.

*Please stop the ‘out-of-the-blue and irrelevant remarks.’ I mean, you should now stop talking nonsense.*

차라리 벼룩의 갑을 내어 벼룩 동생이 무슨 돈이 있다고 돈을 꺼 달래나?

*How can you try to borrow money from your poor younger brother? It would be better to ‘skin a flea for its hide [eat the liver of a flea].’*

A: 여자친구한테 늦었다고 한마디 했다가 한 시간동안 설교를 들었어.

B: 하하, 되로 주고 말로 받았구나!

* A: I said a word to my girlfriend because she was late and I had to put up with one hour of her lecturing me.

B: Haha, ‘you sowed the wind and reaped the whirlwind.’

부부싸움은 칼로 물벼기라도 먼저 자주 싸우는 거 아니니?

*They say that ‘fights between a husband and a wife are like cutting water with a knife (don’t have lasting results),’ but still aren’t you fighting too often?*

도난사고를 이미 당했는데 소 리 않고 외양간 고쳐야 무슨 소용 있겠어요?

미리 미리 도난경보장치를 달았어야지요.

*We’ve already been robbed; what’s the point of repairing the barn after losing the cow? We should have set the burglar alarm far in advance.*

A: 한국어가 안 늘어서 걱정이에요.

B: 시작한지 두 달밖에 안 됐잖아요. 첫술에 배부르겠어요?

* A: I’m worried that my Korean is not improving.

B: It’s been only two months since you started. You cannot expect to become full after just one bite.
12.2 Idioms

Idiomatic expressions – phrases and pieces of sentences such as ‘head over heels’ and ‘pie in the sky’ – add color and spice to language. Idioms of this sort are numerous in Korean and are a very important part of every-day speech.

12.2.1 Four-syllable Sino-Korean idioms

A particularly popular type of Korean idiom consists of four Sino-Korean roots. Following, in boldface, are some of the more commonly used expressions of this type.

거두절미하고 요점만 얘기하세요.
‘Leave out the beginning and the end,’ and just give me the important points.

견물생심이라고 이렇게 예쁜 신발을 보니 너무 사고 싶다.
‘Seeing is wanting,’ so now that I saw these beautiful shoes I want to buy them.

비행기 사고에서 구사일생으로 살아났어요.
I had a ‘narrow escape from death’ in an airplane crash.

그 예쁜 양말에 에교까지 많다면 금상첨화일텐데.
It’d be an ‘added bonus [a flower on top of gold]’ if she had an affectionate manner to go with her pretty face.

그 친구가 결혼을 한다고요? 저는 공시초문인데요.
He’s getting married? I’m ‘hearing that for the first time.’

무슨 사고라도 당한 것은 아닐까 밤새 노심초사했어.
Fearing she was in an accident, I was ‘worried to death’ all night.

여러 분야를 골고루 잘하는 다재다능한 사람입니다.
He is a ‘renaissance man’ who can do many things equally well.

입사 초에는 두각을 나타내지 못했지만 입사 3 년째부터 서서히
그 실력을 나타낸 대기만성형이죠.
She was not outstanding when she first entered the company, but she is a ‘late-bloomer type’ whose talents started shining gradually from the third year.

동료들하고 잘 어울리지도 않고 항상 독불장군이야.
Rarely associating with his co-workers, he’s always a ‘loner who wants everything his way.’

왜 자꾸 맘소리야? 동문서답하지 말고 내 질문에 제대로 대답해.
Why do you keep talking about something else? Stop ‘giving an outrageously irrelevant answer [talking about west when I ask about east],’ and answer my question properly.
It is a ‘very close (neck and neck)’ game. It’s hard to tell which team will win.

I heard that the five-day work week policy was ‘unanimously’ approved.

I don’t want to be the ‘ungrateful’ daughter who does not appreciate what her parents have done for her.

Accidents that are caused by teenagers’ reckless driving seem to be ‘quite common.’

I can’t even talk freely because there are spies all around me. I am surrounded ‘by foes on all sides.’

I feel bad because his business collapsed and ‘to make things worse’ he even got sick.

There is no other way. We ‘can’t do anything about it.’

If we keep playing like this, then ‘10 to 1’ we will fail the test.

Everybody is interpreting the content of the new policies in their own favor.

He’s ‘acting totally recklessly, showing no respect for anyone,’ even for those who are older or superior.

We ‘don’t ever rest’; we’re open 365 days a year.

We are still ‘befuddled’ about the cause of the fire.

I hope this policy does not ‘fade away [like a dragon head becoming a snake tail].’

Since they say there are ‘no worries after preparation,’ we should also start preparing for the later years.

We noticed ‘everybody was in agreement’ in praising his dependability.
Even if we don’t say everything, we know what the other person wants ‘through telepathy.’

Koreans have a custom of ‘like cures like [governing heat with heat]’ and of eating hot-temperature food such as yukkyejang and samgyet’ang in summer.

You don’t have the body of a ‘teenager [16-year-old]’ anymore, so drink sparingly.

If we commit a crime, we are to be punished one day or another. Isn’t that ‘retribution’?

They say that ‘life is but an empty dream’; it’s so true that ‘life is futile.’

Wanting to become more beautiful or not wanting to age are ‘natural desires of human beings.’

Making money and studying is ‘killing two birds with one stone.’

There are pros and cons to packaged vacations and self-planned vacations.

My ‘heart is focused only on’ my husband.

He went to college with a GED and ‘succeeded without help from others.’

From the start it was your fault, so this result is totally expected. ‘You reap what you sow.’

Tell me ‘all the details of what happened.’

Now that I have no hope and am completely exhausted, I’m ‘in a state of utter despair.’

I made up my mind to exercise but again my ‘resolution was good for only three days.’
12.2.2 Idioms based on body parts

Oops. I was so startled that my liver almost fell out (my heart leaped into my throat).
You should have made some sound coming in. I got so scared that 'my liver shrank to the size of a bean.'
A: You bought this expensive bag for your girlfriend? You’re crazy.
   [Your liver must be puffed up.]
B: My girlfriend has super taste. I ‘want with all my heart’ to buy her
   a more expensive one, but I can’t afford it.

불고기 일부분이 요거밖에 안 돼요? 간에 기별도 안 가겠다.

One serving of kalbi is only this much? My stomach [liver] won’t even feel anything.

눈 앞의 이익을 위해서 간에 불었다 쓸개에 불었다 할 사람이야.

He is a conniving person who will do anything to make a profit […who will
   stick to the liver and then to the gall].

偎 저런 애가 다 있어. 정말 골 메리네. 완전히 내 배 채소야. [familiar/casual]

How can there be such a person? He’s ridiculous. He just doesn’t give a damn,
   with this ‘so-shoot-me’ attitude.

 사람이 정말 훌륭해요. 고개가 절로 숙여지는 그런 사람이에요.
   She’s really great. People cannot help bowing to her.

누가 내 얘기하나 보다, 귀가 가려운 결 보니. [귀가 가렵다]

Someone must be talking about me. My ears are burning [itchy].

오늘 나 귀 빼친 날인데 미역국도 못 먹어.

Today is my birthday [the day when my ears came out], but I didn’t even get
   to eat my seaweed soup.

외국어를 배우는 목적은 귀에 못이 박히도록 자주 들었다.

I have heard about the purpose of learning a foreign language so many times
   that my ear drums are calloused.

이번 한번은 눈 감아 줄테니가 다음부터는 조심하도록 해.

I will look the other way this time, but be careful next time.

사원들이 모두 사장님 눈에 들려고 난리인데 나는 벌써 눈 밖에 냈어.

Every employee tries to find favor in the boss’s eyes, but I’ve already fallen out.

집에 두고 온 아기가 눈에 박힌다.

I can’t stop thinking about the baby I left at home.

내 눈에 뭐가 씨웠지. 그런 사람을 뭐가 좋다고.

I must have had wool over my eyes. What was there to like about him?

너무 잡이 와서 잡간 눈을 좀 붉어야겠어요.

I’m so sleepy that I better get some shut-eye.
I hear that their eyes met while taking a class together and that the two are dating now.

I'm busy as hell these days [without time to open my eyes or nose].

This is someone who is marrying my friend, so don't set your eyes on her.

My friend's parents are not satisfied with him, but the two cannot live without each other.

I've been on this road before, so it looks familiar.

Dad is so angry he's fuming from the ears. Until he enters his grave, he will never allow a foreigner as a son-in-law, he says.

How dare you talk down to an elder when you're still wet behind the ears [...] when the blood on your head hasn't yet dried?"

Until your hair turns all grey [until your black hair turns into green onion roots], live happily in love with each other.

Stop trying to come up with clever ideas to win favor from her; just tell her you like her.

I had no idea that a friend I firmly trusted would stab me in the back [...] would hit the back of my head.

Don't you have any guts? Don't you have any self-esteem?

I didn't get along very well with that friend, so it's been a while since I cut off contact with her.

The final notice said to finish by next month. A fire has been lit under me.

My children caused me so much worry and heartache that my hair is all grey now.
The young kid has sticky fingers.

You prepared so much food. You have very generous hands.

I swear it’s true. If not, I’ll be a monkey’s uncle [I’ll boil stew in my hands].

If you don’t take action right away, the patient’s life will be in danger.

The project requires a lot of hands. Nevertheless, we work well together, so we’re enjoying it.

The Internet connection is unstable. I must take a look at the computer.

I hear he’s dabbling in the stock market.

My parents threw in the towel when trying to deal with my stubbornness.

A: I can’t beg my friends for help anymore because it’s too embarrassing.
B: Try to have a thick skin [thick face] and ask just one more time.

A: This movie is really cheesy, let’s just go.
B: How can we just leave in the middle – isn’t it embarrassing (to lose face)?

I don’t want to ask my parents for help now that I’m older.

These days it’s hard to put food on the table. If this continues, you may find spider webs in the corners of my mouth (I may go hungry).

My husband can never eat the same thing twice, so I have to cook a new side dish every day.
I bought my wife a gift for the first time in a while and she’s so happy that she can’t stop smiling.

A: 너는 일이 그렇게 가볍니? 그 새를 못 참고 남한테 얘기할 했어?
B: 사돈 남말하고 있는데, 너는 뭐 일이 무거운지 아니? [입이 무겁다]

A: Why is your tongue so loose? You couldn’t keep quiet for that long?
B: Look who’s talking. You can’t even keep your mouth shut.

It’s difficult for me to say this, but I heard that you failed on the promotion exam.

I wanted to buy a pair of pants, but there’s nothing that suits my taste.

A: 너는 어떻게 얻어보니, 코 땅을 곳에 살면서 코뼈기도 안 비치나?
B: 야, 요즘 내 코가 석사라서 그래. 좀 외 주라.

A: You live a stone’s throw away, so why don’t you even show your face?
B: Yo, it’s because I’m completely tied up with my own problems. Cut me some slack.

During this game, I’ll smash the other team’s faces. I’m going to break their stuck up noses for sure.

Yeah, it feels great. It serves her right. People like her with such a big head should have some bitter experiences.

He hates me so much for no reason as if there’s some ugly hair stuck on me.

12.2.3 Idioms based on food, taste, eating, and cooking

If you play that prank on my brother again, you will hear from me. And you can be sure that you’ll be dead meat.

Things are going well with your boyfriend, right? When are we going to attend your wedding?
Why are you so forgetful? [Did you eat crow meat?] Did you forget again what I told you last time?

Having married, they seem to be having lots of fun together. We rarely see them at school.

Why don’t you do it quickly; why are you wasting time like this?

I am studying hard so I won’t bomb on the test this time.

I hate people with no manners.

Their family is so messed up. It’s really full of troubles.

This is a piece of cake. It’s a cake walk.

Finishing well is always important. Make sure you don’t ruin the finished product [by spraying ashes (or dropping snots) in the finished gruel].

A: After staying up two nights in a row, you’ve gotten completely wiped out [you’ve turned into green onion gimchi]. So, did you do well on the test?

B: I crammed in a very superficial way [like licking a watermelon skin (instead of eating the inside)], so I bombed on the test [I cooked gruel], of course.

Whatever the outcome may be [whether it becomes gruel or rice], I’ll try my best.
12.2.4 Idioms based on animals and insects

With no order, this place looks like a damn mess.

With no order, this place looks like a damn mess.

Your penmanship looks like someone wrote with their feet.

I hear that Professor Kim is living as a wild goose dad, with his wife and kids sent away to Australia (for the kids’ schooling).

That’s not an auspicious dream, just a meaningless one.

How can you be such a terrible singer? Your voice sounds like a dying pig.
You’re now a rat in a cage (completely trapped). Don’t even think about escaping.

She doesn’t have any money [not even the rat’s horn], but pretends to.

The few [rat-tail size] dollars I call a salary make it impossible to feed 5 people.

Stop living like a frog in a well and broaden your views.

My brother went out to get the results from his employment exam but is taking forever to return. (He must be running a marathon.) [He must have eaten barbecued pheasant.]

Such a big public display of affection in plain daylight. It gives me goosebumps [chicken skin].

Her waist is so small [like an ant’s waist], but her legs are like tree trunks.

After a bad curled-up sleep [a shrimp’s sleep]. I barely washed my face in the morning [like a cat] and came out.

It’s been a while since I’ve been living like a parasite at my friend’s place because I don’t have money to pay the rent.

Nobody else can overcome my father’s stubbornness. He’s stubborn as a mule.

Their damage is like a scratch [blood on a bird’s feet] compared to ours.

Who would ask a country bumpkin like me to marry them?

Do you know that female gigolos are called ‘flower-snakes (gold diggers)’?

I’m sure I placed my passport here, but where did it go? God, this is impossible. [It’s something that ghosts will cry over.]
Your wife is so good at guessing. How does she read your mind so well? 
She’s really a demon.

She has no manners. She only pretends to know me when she wants something; otherwise we’re strangers to her. In one word, she’s a bitch.

It seems like this winter’s South East Asia trip is going to fall through. My work is too backed up.

If you let me borrow your car, you’ll save your parking fee and I’ll save my car rental fee. Isn’t that ultimately good for both of us [...] good for the sister and also good for the brother-in-law?}

The product will be a mega hit this time for sure.

He was fired recently, so his financial situation is really bad.

Stop beating around the bush and come to the point.

If you take your diet too far [through fire and water], then you’ll get sick.

That actress was once in high demand, but now she’s all washed up.

My plan for the Europe trip this time totally fell through.

If you spend everything you earn, when are you going to save? It’s like trying to fill a bottomless barrel with water.

That guy, let me tell you. I’ve gotten totally sick of him. Even the sound of his name makes me sick to my stomach [gives me acid].
A: Why is she so down?
B: I heard that she got stood up by her boyfriend.

I think the wife is nagging the husband a lot, maybe because he’s having an affair.

You need to be aware of inflated prices at tourist attractions. If you aren’t careful, you can easily get ripped off.

Don’t inflate my ego too much. You’ll find out that there are many things I can’t do.

I should have thought it over more thoroughly and decided, but I was thoughtless.

How can you two guys get along so well?

If you cram like that, you’ll quickly forget everything. Aren’t you trying to memorize everything at the last second?!

I cut it off completely with my girlfriend, who I’ve been dating for 2 years.

Because I was feeling so angry, I had a big fight with my brother.

He’s so terribly slow in catching on [like a fluorescent light]. He’s always the only one who doesn’t understand things and talks nonsense.

12.2.6 Figurative uses of verbs

It’ll be bad if I get caught by my dad. I better butter my sister up not to tell.

Dad seems to have conked out; he must be tired.

Why do you jump to a conclusion without knowing the situation well?
Isn’t he a little retarded? He’s seriously lacking something upstairs.

He was the one who was wrong, so why is he shifting the blame to me?

How can she be so shameless not to even show it on her face? She’s so thick-skinned.

I think I’ll drop my studies and whatever, and just get a job.

Feel him out to see if he’s interested in having a blind date to meet his future spouse.

She tried the entrance exam for a second year but failed again this time, I heard.

Why are you so uncooperative these days? What’s your problem?

His mistake is clear, but everybody is shielding and protecting him.

I asked him if he said it, but he completely denied it. He just wouldn’t admit it.

Aren’t you going too fast? You’re going to get a ticket speeding like this.

That actress’ figure is amazing. She’s really curvaceous. She has an hour-glass figure.

Be respectful to the department head. Once you fall out his graces, you will never be the same in his eyes.

How come you’re so special that you need to play hard to get, refusing to date the guy?

I feel refreshed now that I unloaded my anger on my sister.

Do you get some kind of satisfaction from talking [chewing] behind someone’s back like that?

I haven’t seen you for a while, but you are looking better than ever. Did something good happen?
Korean is noted for its rich and vivid sound symbolism— the use of speech sounds to mimic the sounds of nature and to capture subtle impressions about appearance, texture, and other sensory experiences.

It may not be enough to say 가슴이 내려앉아 ‘My heart sank,’ when 가슴이 “칠링” 했어 is so much more descriptive thanks to the way 칠링 dramatically portrays a sinking feeling. Why say 하루종일 웃는 얼굴이야, when 하루종일 성글방글이야 better describes a face that is ‘all smiles’? And of course nothing captures the image of a child’s angelic smile better than 방글방글. The vivid and graphic image of these expressions can only be imagined and visualized; it is often difficult to adequately translate them into English.

13.1 How sound symbolism works

Sound-symbolic expressions typically function either as adverbs or as verbal nouns (in combination with a noun suffix -이 or with special verbs such as -이다, -하다, -데다, and -거리다).

- 씹개가 보글보글 끓는다.  
  *The stew is bubbling.*
- 감박이  
  *Car signal light*
- 신호등이 감박한다.  
  *The traffic light is blinking.*
- 길이 미끌미끌하다.  
  *The road is slippery.*
- 광하는 소리가 난어요.  
  *There was a thud.*
- 문이 자꾸 멜 dealloc/ Pulling away.*

When one hears a sound-symbolic adverb, one can predict what type of verb is to follow. If you hear 벌백, for instance, you know it’s the image of someone swiftly getting up or standing up, so it can only be followed by a verb such as 일어나다. 닦 describes how utterly empty something is, so the verb that follows must be 비다. 쌓ющихся is the sound/image created by something growing by leaps and bounds, so it is followed by verbs such as 자라다, 크다, or 올라가다.

It is therefore often unnecessary to end the sentence with a verb. When you hear 뽀!, you know it’s the sound of something suddenly stopping or dropping. If a mom tells a crying baby 뽀!, the omitted verb is 그쳐 ‘stop.’ And if the news headline says 전국 기온 뽀 ‘the nation’s temperature ttuk,’ the missing verb can
only be ‘dropped.’ (Verbs are often omitted in headlines as well as in written advertisements, where brevity is vital.)

Many impressionistic adverbs and nouns appear in two or more related shapes. Those containing the ‘dark’ vowels 어, 애, 여, 우, 위, 유, 웨, 오, 이, and 의 tend to connote something bigger, heavier, slower, and deeper, which can sometimes be seen as negative. In contrast, those that contain the ‘bright’ vowels 아, 았, 오, 의, 요, 와, and 웨 indicate something small, light, swift, and gentle, which is often seen to be positive. Here are some cases that illustrate the contrast between these two types of vowels.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{With bright vowels:} & \quad \text{With dark vowels:} \\
\text{ 김치가 새콤한 게 맛있다.} & \quad \text{ 김치가 시큼한 게 맛없다.} \\
\text{(The kimchi is soury and delicious.)} & \quad \text{(The kimchi is soury and tasteless.)} \\
\text{ 눈이 반짝반짝 빛난다.} & \quad \text{ 번개가 번쩍번쩍 친다.} \\
\text{(Her eyes are twinkling.)} & \quad \text{(The lightning is flashing.)} \\
\text{ 피부가 촉촉하다.} & \quad \text{ 달(yy)은 촉촉하다.} \\
\text{(Her skin is moist.)} & \quad \text{(The blanket is damp.)} \\
\text{ 아이들이 종알نزل다.} & \quad \text{ 어른들이 종알نزل다.} \\
\text{(The kids are chattering.)} & \quad \text{(The adults are mumbling.)} \\
\text{ 독박독박 시계소리} & \quad \text{ 독박독박 망치소리} \\
\text{ (tick tock, the sound of a clock)} & \quad \text{ (tuk tuck, the sound of a hammer)}
\end{align*}
\]

Initial consonants too can form the basis for sound-symbolic contrasts. Plain consonants (ㅂ, ㄷ, ㄱ, ㅈ, ㅅ) can be replaced by their tense or aspirated counterparts to express emphasis or a strong feeling. The tense consonants (ㅂㅂ, ㄷㄷ, ㄱㄱ, ㅈㅈ, ㅅㅅ) sound tight, crisp, and intense, while the aspirated consonants (ㅂㅂ, ㄷㄷ, ㄱㄱ, ㅈㅈ) call to mind something harsh.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ 박박 문질러, 더 박박, 좀 더 세계 곰팡 좀 문질러 봐.} \\
\text{(Scrub it, scrub it more, try to scrub it harder.)} \\
\text{ 수박을 작은/조그만 걸로 하나 사, 더 작은/조그만 거 없어?} \\
\text{(Buy a small watermelon. Do you have a tinier one?)} \\
\text{ 전기가 나가서 방이 잠잠해요. 온 동네가 불빛 하나 없이 깜깜해요.} \\
\text{(The electricity went out, so the room is dark. The whole neighborhood is pitch dark without a single light.)}
\end{align*}
\]
There are three major types of sound-symbolic expressions: those that describe sounds (의성어), those that describe outer appearance (의태어), and those that describe feeling and touch (의정어). A few expressions fall on the border line, making it difficult to see which category they belong to. The following division is based on our best judgments for presentational purposes.

13.2 Onomatopoeia (의성어)

Onomatopoeia, the use of speech to mimic the sounds of nature, is far more widespread in Korean than in English. Some of the more frequently used onomatopoeic expressions follow. (Remember that sounds are often perceived differently across cultures – Koreans hear 멧멍 while Americans hear bow-wow.)

13.2.1 Animal sounds

- 개/강아지 dog/puppy: 멧멍 bow-wow
- 고양이 cat: 야옹야옹 meow meow
- 돼지 pig: 꿀꿀꿀꿀 oink oink
- 사자/호랑이 lion/tiger: 울르렁 growl, snarl
- 새 birds: 찍찍 tweet, chirp
- 생쥐 mouse: 찍찍 squeak squeak
- 소 cow: 음메 moo
- 수탉 rooster: 꼬꼬댁 꼬꼬꼬꼬... 꼬끼오 cock-a-doodle-doo

Metaphorical uses:

무서워서 짖소리/씩소리도 못 했어.
*I was so scared that I couldn’t say a word.*

아옹다옹 하지 말고 친하게 지내도록 해.
*Stop fighting like cats and try to get along with each other.*

사이좋게 지내지 못하고 왜 그렇게 서로 울르렁대니?
*Why are you wrangling with each other, and not able to get along?*

13.2.2 Human sounds

- Laughing

두근 웃겨서 카르르 카르르 배꼽을 잡았어.
*It was so funny that I laughed very hard until my stomach hurt.*

지 뒤에서 공부 안 하고 웃고거리리는 학생 누구야?
*Who is that student in the back giggling and not studying?*
That cartoon must be funny. He keeps chuckling while reading it.

What makes you so silly to keep you smiling like that?

NOTE: For online chatting, ᄄ onOptionsItemSelected indicates a loud laugh and ᄆOptionsItemSelected a suppressed laugh.

• Sleeping

My dad was snoring so loudly I couldn’t get any sleep.

The baby is sleeping well, making gentle breathing sounds.

He must have been tired because he’s sound asleep.

How can you not study and just sleep like that all the time?

• Eating/Drinking

The smell of bread baking made my mouth water, but I suppressed it.

I swallowed the rice cake in one gulp.

My throat was dry so I chugged cold water.

The baby has teeth, so he crunches the candy.

Stop making that smacking noise with your mouth and eat quietly.

Stop sipping and drink it down like a man.

I finished the ramen in one big slurp.

• Speaking/Shouting

Why are you screaming like crazy? I’m not deaf.

Can’t you talk more nicely instead of speaking so harshly?
What did you do that gives you the right to have a loud mouth? Shut up.

They whisper amongst themselves, but whenever I appear they close their mouths.

You guys stop mumbling unintelligibly like that and have one person speak out.

There must be something going on outside. People are chattering.

There seem to be so many things that he’s dissatisfied about; he grumbles all the time.

I bawled so hard my throat hurt.

Did you catch a cold? Or are you crying? Why are you sniffling?

I was sick with the flu all week, moaning and groaning.

I must be catching a cold. I’ve been coughing since the morning.
13.2.3 Sounds involving inanimate objects and forces

Did you hear the rattling noise in the kitchen?

Did you hear the rattling noise in the kitchen?

Ring-ring, the phone’s been ringing off the hook all day long.

A buzz means you’re wrong and the chime means you can advance.

Why don’t you knock instead of banging on the door? You’ll break the door down.

Stop shuffling around and sit still.

If you use a lot of oil and deep-fry it, then it’ll be crispy and tasty.

Stop ripping it and cut it neatly with scissors.

The cars are honking their horns more than necessary.

The door keeps squeaking.

He seems to be hushing it up in case other people find out.

The hair that I put so much effort into growing was snipped off strand by strand.

The weather must be getting cold. The wind is blowing hard.

The apple doesn’t taste good because it’s soggy, not crunchy.

The cacophonous noise of people suddenly died down.

The unruly kids are boisterously thumping around every day.

It’s raining cats and dogs, so how can I go out without an umbrella?
The criminal was shedding big tear drops as he lamented his past mistakes.

Stop going around dragging your slippers like that.

After starving to death the whole day, I can eat just about anything.

There was a sound as if someone got slapped in the face.

It sounded like it took the picture, but it didn’t.

There were too many people in the pool, so I just splashed around in the water.

Water is dripping out, not pouring out.

Don’t hit it too hard; try to softly tap it.

He sat down on the ground with a plop.

In the following examples, the sounds are less directly associated with the action or state described by the sentence but still evoke some aspect of meaning for Koreans.

There will be a time when we can live grandly.

She can’t crack down and be firm; she’s too indecisive.

I’m boiling with anger because of him.

It’s too tight; there’s not enough time.

If it’s the computer, I’m fairly familiar with it.

I feel happy and satisfied about the results from the recent project.

She was boisterous when she was little, but now she is glum and introverted.

The problem with you is your hot temper.
There is definitely an ulterior motive.  
You played hookie again, didn’t you?!

My company co-worker embezzled the club membership fees.

13.3  Mimetic expressions (의태어)

Mimetic expressions attempt to convey the speaker’s impression of appearances and behaviors through the choice of particular speech sounds. Some expressions of this type may have both onomatopoeic and mimetic effects.

13.3.1  Impressions of appearance

The dog shredded the newspaper into pieces, you know.  
Freckles appeared on my face, creating dark spots here and there.

It’s grotty, how can I sleep in this messy place?

I can’t control the tears building up in my eyes.

Her skin is nice and dark, so she looks healthy.

The document got wrinkled all over.

The ice is frozen all the way through.

I didn’t even get to wash my face, so it looks grimy.

The sneakers are worn out and tattered. I’ll have to buy new ones.

The houses are clustered together in the small town.

I gained weight all over during the vacation.
세수 좀 해라. 눈에 눈썹이 덤지덕지 떨어져.
Wash your face. You still have crud stuck all over in your eyes.

얼굴이 동글동글해서 아주 어려 보여요.
His face is nice and round, so he looks very young.

책상 위가 덱지락락 정신이 하나도 없다.
The desk is so cluttered I can’t find anything.

치아가 약간 들쑤 리스트하시네요. 교정을 받아 보실 생각 없으세요?
Your teeth are slightly crooked. What do you think about getting braces?

먹고 잡만 자니가 뒤 thác뉘룩 살아 져다.
I do nothing but eat and sleep, and I’m getting fatter and fatter.

미끈하게 잘 빼쳤다.
He has a nice body.

백화점에 사람이 바글바글하더라.
The mall was bustling with people.

지게 뒤가 날씬한거니, 바싹 마른 거지.
That’s not slender, but skinny to the bone.

임산부처럼 배가 불룩 뒤어나왔어.
My stomach is bulging as if I’m pregnant.

파마가 너무 짝짝짝 글하게 나왔다.
The perm came out too curly.

 너무 더워서 입이 빨빨 난다.
It’s so hot I’m sweating bullets.

줄이 짝짝짝 글하게 그려졌네.
The line came out squiggly.

집이 정말 으리으리하더라.
The house is so luxurious, I noticed.

생글생글 웃는 모습이 귀여워요.
Her pleasantly smiling face is cute.

그 남자배우는 썩 웃을 때가 제일 멋있어요.
That actor is most handsome when he flashes a big smile.

나는 얼룩덜룩한 무늬 보다는 단색이 좋더라구요.
I prefer a single color to a multi-colored design.

새로 산 화장품이 피부에 안 맞나 봐. 얼굴에 오돌돌 뜯어 난다.
I think my skin is allergic to the new make-up. My face is breaking out in a rash.

아이가 얕 봄이 오동통해서 아주 귀여워요.
The kid’s cheeks are so chubby, it’s cute.
He's good looking with a high nose.

The guy looks rough, so he appears a bit scary.

The leaves changing color in the fall are worth seeing.

The road is bumpy, so you might fall if you're not careful.

The blossoming persimmon clusters on the tree look delicious and tempting.

The roads in Hawaii are winding, not straight.

When the clothes are dry, neatly fold them.

If you have too much jewelry hanging from you, won't you look cheap and superficial?

My once tight and toned skin is turning wrinkly.

It's snowing hard; it's exciting.

What do you mean 'fat'? His chubbiness is just cute.

I lost weight, so my blue jeans that used to be tight became big and baggy.

She's tall and slender, and has a fairly beautiful face.

Were you sick? Your face got smaller (from your losing weight).

His few grey hairs show that he must be at least in his mid 40s.
13.3.2 Impressions of behavior/motion/manner

마지막으로 감정을 표현하는 표현

지적년도 담임으로서 놀라운 업무를 수행하였다.

My teacher was a remarkable person.

그는 항상 그저 마다면의 일에만 몰두하다.

He always devoted himself to his job.

가장 잘 알려진 인물로 요인을 찾는 데 성공하였다.

He successfully established the role of a key person.

어려움을 겪는 사람들을 위로하는 사람이다.

He is a kind person who comforted people in trouble.

고마운 자료를 제공해주셔서 감사드립니다.

Thank you for providing the valuable data.

سوديدة Èœ°ì–±ììŒ í••ì”œì••

Make sure you obediently listen to your superiors.

That person brown-noses a lot. Whenever the director is around, he sucks up to him (bowing constantly).

수상하게 왜 남의 집을 기웃거리지?

I wonder why he is suspiciously snooping around other people’s houses?

아차, 감히했다.

Oops, I totally forgot [I blinked].

우리 아빠는 내 동생이라면 완전 감히 죽으셔.

My dad would give his life when it comes to my brother.

성격이 너무 꾸장꾸장해서 피곤해.

His personality is so straight and strong that it is tiring.

이렇게 끊지락거리다가도 또 늦겠겠다.

We’ll be late again if we act this slow and clumsy.

너무 빠르서 강의시간 내내 꾸벅꾸벅 졌어.

I was so drowsy that I was nodding off through the entire lecture.

지렁이가 꿀들꿀틀하는 게 너무 짜그럼다.

It’s so disgusting the way worms wiggle.

알았다는 듯이 고개를 끌덕끌덕한다.

He’s nodding his head as if in agreement.

참착하지 못하고 왜 이렇게 멀렁대니?

Why can’t you be calm; why do you act so carelessly?

굳다고 그렇게 덥석 받는 게 어디 있어?

How can you snatch it so quickly just because someone offered it?

계단에서 넘어져 갖고 데굴데굴 굴려 떨어졌어.

He fell and rolled down the stairs.

급해서 발을 동동 구른다.

He is in such a hurry he can’t stop moving around.

누구를 찾는지 계속 두리번거리네요.

He keeps looking around as if he’s looking for somebody.

나는 좋한 사람보다는 나党总 안한 사람이 좋다.

I prefer a soft and gentle person over a glum and untalkative one.

알지도 못하는 사람하고 면승면승 앉아서 무슨 얘기할 해요?

What can I talk about, sitting awkwardly with someone I don’t even know?
The steam is rising from the baked sweet potato.

The apple tree is growing rapidly.

I don’t want to be a flash-in-the-pan type of singer.

I heard that there’s a surprise one-day sale at the department store today.

I slipped and fell flat on my back on the snowy road.

What’s so scary that you’re trembling like that?

I am so angry that my hands are shaking.

It’s been drizzling since morning.

Why do you mope around with no energy?

Seeing you staggering and wobbling, there’s no way you can drive.

That person does nothing energetically and is terribly slow with everything.

Stop sitting around puffing on your cigarette and go look for a job.

Don’t say a word about this, okay?

She doesn’t even talk, sulking and pouting all day.

I tip-toed in, so my parents wouldn’t wake up.

How can you scold him so harshly when you should be comforting the crying kid?

The gentle breeze is very refreshing.

My eye lids are slowly drooping because I’m sleepy.
Now that the weather is getting cooler, shall we slowly start exercising?

You don’t have to give me all the trivial details because I generally know what it’s about.

Let’s not leave any food and eat everything on the plate.

Go and desperately try to beg for forgiveness.

All the waiters/waitresses are so pleasant and kind.

The baby’s toddling around is very cute.

He’s restlessly getting up and down.

If you don’t make yourself clear and dawdle, you will lose that man to some other girl.

Idling away my time while getting along with academically non-serious friends, I failed to go to college.

Don’t behave so evasively and take a definitive position.

My back hurts so much that I have to crawl around.

Stop stammering around and give her a clear-cut explanation.

I noticed that the students were having a rough time because the test was so hard.

Why are you so sensitive about such a trifling matter?

Stop rushing and try to explain it to me slowly and carefully.
You must be drunk because I see you acting silly.

I was in such a rush leaving home this morning that I couldn’t even have breakfast.

Wake up early and don’t get yourself all flustered by rushing because you woke up late.

I saved the drowning person who was splashing around.

I saw him running along panting and puffing as if something had happened.

The fire is burning well.

I saw him rushing out hurriedly, maybe because he has something urgent.

My whole body is shivering; I must be having flu symptoms.

Shed your worries completely and why don’t you take a trip?

My legs are unsteady after not having eaten all day long.

The wobbly tooth looks like it’s about to come out.

If we mindlessly splurge money like this, we will soon end up as bums.

That person has been glancing at us from the corner of his eye.

13.4 Expressions denoting feeling and touch (의정어)

13.4.1 Impressions of feeling

My memory is hazy. (I can’t remember it clearly.)

My ears are tingling [tickling], so someone must be talking about me.
I’m itching to go traveling.

I feel nauseous everytime after I eat raw fish.

I don’t think I can eat the rice because it’s too dry and hard.

My heart starts beating fast everytime I see him.

Please make the soup piping hot for me.

I was feeling guilty [I had a stinging feeling] because he sounded like he was talking about me.

I think I’m having motion-sickness from the car ride; I’m feeling nauseous.

I’m so thirsty that my throat is burning.

I must be catching the flu. I keep feeling cold.
My head is pounding.

That’s the type of film that moves and electrifies you.

My face suddenly started burning, you know, because I was feeling embarrassed.

13.4.2 Impressions of touch

I wonder whether it’s because it’s winter. My face became very dry.

The nice and soft bread became rock hard overnight.

He always keeps his car super shiny.

I have oily skin, so my face is always greasy.

Your skin is really silky smooth.

The only thing going for her is her sleek-looking face; she’s a really superficial playgirl.

The leather is very stiff, not soft.

This sweet-rice cake is good because it’s chewy.
14 Numbers

Like English, Korean makes use of two types of numbers – cardinal numbers, which are used for simple counting (e.g., one book, two books, etc.), and ordinal numbers, which are used to indicate order or position in a series (e.g., first place, second place, and so on).

Unlike English, Korean makes use of two sets of numbers, one native Korean in origin and the other Sino-Korean. Native numbers stop at 99, but Sino-Korean numbers can be as long as 16 digits.

14.1 Native Korean numbers

14.1.1 Native Korean cardinal numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 하나</td>
<td>하나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 둘</td>
<td>둘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 셋</td>
<td>셋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 넷</td>
<td>넷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 다섯</td>
<td>다섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 여섯</td>
<td>여섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 일곱</td>
<td>일곱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 여덟</td>
<td>여덟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 아홉</td>
<td>아홉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 열</td>
<td>열</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 스물</td>
<td>스물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 스물 하나</td>
<td>스물 하나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 서른</td>
<td>서른</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 마흔</td>
<td>마흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50쉰</td>
<td>씨넨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 여순</td>
<td>여순</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 일흔</td>
<td>일흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 여든</td>
<td>여든</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 아흔</td>
<td>아흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99 아흔아홉</td>
<td>아흔아홉</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: When followed by a counter, 하나, 둘, 셋, 넷, and 스물 change their form to 한 (개), 두 (개), 세 (개), 네 (개), and 스무 (개), respectively. For some counters such as 강, 잔, 달, 단, and 대 (see 14.3.1), 세/네 alternates with 석/늑, mostly in the speech of senior adults.

14.1.2 Native Korean ordinal numbers

Native Korean ordinal numbers are formed by adding -째 to the cardinal number – except for 첫째 ‘first.’

첫째, 둘째/두째, 셋째/세째, …열한째, 열두째, …스무째, 스물한째,…

When the number occurs with a counter/classifier (see 14.3.1), -째 is attached after the counter.

오늘 사과 세 개째 먹는다. | This is the third apple that I’m eating today.
다섯 달째 소식이 없어요. | There’s no news for the fifth month in a row.
별찌 여덟 병째야. | It’s the eighth bottle already.
별찌 몇 번째 애기를 했는지 몰라. | I already told him for the umpteen time.
14.2 Sino-Korean numbers

14.2.1 Sino-Korean cardinal numbers

1 일 (一)  2 이 (二)  3 삼 (三)  4 사 (四)  5 오 (五)
6 월 (六)  7 칠 (七)  8 팔 (八)  9 구 (九)  10 십 (十)
20 이십  21 이십일  30 삽십  40 사십  50 오십
60 월십  70 칠십  80 팔십  90 구십  99 구십구

NOTE: Chinese characters are provided in parentheses.

Unlike English, which breaks down long numbers into three-numeral units,
Korean organizes long numbers into four-numeral chunks. (Nonetheless, when
writing large Arabic numbers, Korean uses commas to group numerals into sets
of three, just as English does.)

English:

9, 6 0 1, | 2 3 4, | 5 0 0, | 7 8 9
trillion  billion  million  thousand

9 trillion, 601 billion, 234 million, 500 thousand, 789

Korean:

9, | 6 0 1, 2 | 3 4, 5 0 | 0, 7 8 9
조  억   만

9 조  6,012 억  3,450 만 0,789
[구조 육천십이억 삽천사백오십만 칠백팔십구]

To keep the groupings clear, it is useful to remember particular reference points
such as ‘thousand’ 천 and 만 ‘ten thousand,’ and so on.

일  one
십  ten
백  hundred
천 thousand

(일)만  ten thousand
십만  hundred thousand
백만  million
천만  ten million

(일)억  one hundred million
십억  billion (UK 1,000 million)
백억  ten billion (UK 10,000 million)
천억  one hundred billion (UK 100,000 million)

(일)조 trillion (UK one billion)
14.2.2  Sino-Korean ordinal numbers

Sino-Korean ordinal numbers are formed with the help of the prefix 제- as in 제 12 부 ‘the twelfth episode.’ However, except in formal writing, 제- is usually omitted and the bare Sino-Korean number is used in combination with various counters to indicate order.

1 페이지/쪽  page 1
2 과  lesson 2
3 편  volume 3
5 번  number 5

(시험, 경기) 1 등  top score (in an exam, game)
일급 (호텔)  first class (hotel)
(장기, 바둑) 2 급  second rank (in chess, paduk)
(보물) 1 호  (treasure) #1
(태권도) 5 단  fifth rank (in T’ae kwôn do)
(창립) 25 주년  twenty-fifth anniversary (of the foundation)
10 대 (대통령)  10th (president)
(야구, 드라마) 9 회  9th inning (in baseball), 9th episode (in a drama)
(입학시험, 파티) 2 차  the second round (entrance exam, partying)
(아파트) 15 층  15th floor (of an apt.)
(고등학교) 2 학년  second grade (in high school)
(음반) 4 집  Vol. #4 (music CD)
(한국인) 2 세  second generation (Korean)
14.3 Native versus Sino-Korean numbers

In most cases, there is a strict division of labor in the use of native Korean numbers and Sino-Korean numbers. For example, native Korean numbers are used for counting (small numbers) and for o’clock (세시 ‘3 o’clock’), while Sino-Korean numbers are employed for minutes, dates, months, years, money, and so forth (16 젖지 ‘8 ½ by 11 size paper,’ 24 금 ‘24 K gold,’ and so on).

In some cases, both types of numbers can occur with the same counter, creating sharp contrasts in meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native number (quantity)</th>
<th>Sino-Korean number (order)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한 페이지/쪽</td>
<td>일 페이지/쪽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two lessons</td>
<td>lesson 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three volumes</td>
<td>volume 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five times</td>
<td>number 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Very rarely, either number can be used for the same concept, but this is correlated with a contrast in speech style.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Native number (colloquial)</th>
<th>Sino-Korean number (written/formal)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>사진 두 장</td>
<td>사진 2 매</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 살</td>
<td>20 세</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아들 하나 딸 셋</td>
<td>1 남 3 녀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세째 아들</td>
<td>3 남</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯 식구</td>
<td>5 인가족</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rest of this section focuses on how the functions of the two sets of numbers are divided up.

14.3.1 Counting

Native numerals are used for counting smaller units. For larger quantities, Sino-Korean numerals are used, often in combination with native numbers. There is a tendency for Sino-Korean numbers to be used for multiples of 10, starting from 20, even when there is a native Korean counterpart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>one sheet of paper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>종이 한 장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>열 장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>스무 장 or 이십 장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>스물 한 장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>백 스물 다섯 장 or 백 이십 오 장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,502</td>
<td>천 오백 두 장 or 천 오백 이 장</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Counters (or Classifiers)

Numbers usually occur with counters such as 정 for thin/flat objects like sheets of paper, 명 for people, 마리 for animals, and so on, all of which indicate the type of element being counted. (When counting large numbers, things/persons are usually counted by twos, as in 들 넷 여섯 여덟 열 열넷 열여섯 열여덟 스물… (using only even numbers). The following counters are frequently used.

### Counters for inanimate things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Counter</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>감/보류 (a pack/carton of cigarettes)</td>
<td>담배 한 감/보류</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개 (3-D objects in general, ‘default classifier’ when nothing else fits)</td>
<td>빵 한 개</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>권 (bound material)</td>
<td>잡지 한 권</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그루 (tree)</td>
<td>소나무 한 그루</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대 (machines and large appliances)</td>
<td>차/세탁기 두 대</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대, 개비 (tiny slender objects)</td>
<td>담배 한 개</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매 (sheets of paper)</td>
<td>[formal/written]: 이력서 한 매</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벌 (clothes, silverware)</td>
<td>정장 한 벌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부 (periodicals such as magazines, multi-page documents)</td>
<td>월간지 한 부</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>송이/다발 (stem/bouquet)</td>
<td>장미 두 송이/다발</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자루 (long slender objects)</td>
<td>연필 한 자루</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장 (thin, flat objects)</td>
<td>도화지 열 장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점 (pieces of art)</td>
<td>그림 한 점</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>채 (buildings)</td>
<td>집 한 채</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>척 (ships)</td>
<td>배 한 척</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첩 (pack of herbal remedy)</td>
<td>한약 스무 첩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>컬래 (pair of shoes, socks, gloves)</td>
<td>운동화 한 컬래</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>통 (letters in an envelope)</td>
<td>편지 세 통</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: Unlike most other counters, 배 can be used with Sino-Korean numbers – 사전 2 배, 이력서 1 배.
### Counters for food

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그릇, 공기</td>
<td>(a bowl of rice, etc.): two bowls of soup, bowl of rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단</td>
<td>(a bunch of vegetables): three bunches of green onion, two bunches of spinach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대</td>
<td>(a rib bone): one beef (pork, chicken) rib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모</td>
<td>(tofu, jelly): one cake of tofu/acorn jelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모금</td>
<td>(a sip, a puff): two puffs on a cigarette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분</td>
<td>(one serving): three servings of pulgogi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>송이</td>
<td>(bunch): five bunches of grapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손갈, 젓갈</td>
<td>(a bite): one spoonful of rice, one chopstick-ful of noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알</td>
<td>(small round-shaped things): five eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잔</td>
<td>(liquids in a glass/cup): one drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>컵</td>
<td>(liquids, etc. in a cup/glass): one cup of rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>접시</td>
<td>(main dish): three dishes of gourmet food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>족</td>
<td>(small slice): three slices of garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>통</td>
<td>(round-shaped fruit, etc.): three watermelons, one bulb of garlic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>포기</td>
<td>(a head of cabbage): one head of cabbage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Sino-Korean numbers are used for counting servings (물고기 3 인분).

### Counters for animate things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>명</td>
<td>(people): three students, two strangers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>본</td>
<td>(honorific form of 명): three guests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쌍</td>
<td>(a couple, a pair): one romantic/married couple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마리</td>
<td>(animals, fish, birds): several live fish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**birds**
### Counters for miscellaneous things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Counters for miscellaneous things</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>간 (agenda items, assembly bills): 객도 사건 다섯 건 5 robbery incidents, 의안 열 건 10 assembly bills</td>
<td>간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곡 (pieces of music): 노래 일곱 곡 7 songs</td>
<td>곡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대 (injections, beatings): 주사/매 한 대 one injection/beating</td>
<td>대</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>통 (phone calls, rolls of film): 전화 네 통 4 phone calls, 필름 여덟 통 8 rolls of film</td>
<td>통</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>행 (movies, musicals, poems): 영화 네 행 4 movies, 시 두 행 two poems</td>
<td>행</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지 (sorts): 고기 반찬 세 가지 3 kinds of meat dishes, 나물 아홉 가지 9 kinds of cooked vegetable dishes</td>
<td>가지</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Four types of counting expressions

When a numeral such as 두 combines with a noun such as 사과 in counting, four different patterns are possible.

- **사과 두 개** is the most common pattern. Particles like -이/가 and -을/를 can be attached to either or both elements.
  
  식탁 위에 사과(가) 두 개(가) 있어요.  
  There are two apples on the dining table.

- **사과 둘** is not uncommon, but is usually restricted to small numbers and to countable nouns (one to five, with one being the most common and natural). Particles can be attached to either or both elements.
  
  비빔밥 하나 주세요.  
  Please give me one bibimbap.

  딸을 끼고 아들 하나를 냈다.  
  She had one son after four daughters.

  학생 둘이 졸업하고 세 줄이 새로 들어 왔다.  
  Two students graduated and three new ones arrived.

- **두 사과** is uncommon and restricted in many ways. The number must be smaller than ten and the noun usually must be followed by 다 ‘all.’
Acceptable | Unacceptable/strange-sounding
--- | ---
두 차로 갑시다. (Let’s go in two cars.) | 두 차를 샀다. (I bought two cars.)
세 닭이 다 병이 났다. (All three chickens got sick.) | 세 닭을 키운다. (I am raising three chickens.)
두 강아기가 다 예쁘다. (The two puppies are both cute.) | 두 강아지가 뛰어왔다. (Two puppies came running.)
네 커피가 다 코나예요. (All four coffees are Kona.) | 네 커피를 샀다. (I bought four coffees.)

Exceptionally, the following cases are natural even with bigger numbers.

열아들 안 부럽다. (I don’t envy those with many sons. (I am satisfied with my daughter.)

열다섯 집이/학교가/나라가 모였다. (Fifteen families/schools/countries got together.)

- 두 개의 사과 is used mostly in formal speech or writing.
  한 잔의 차 | one cup of tea
  열 권의 책 | ten books
  5 개 국가의 수상 | prime ministers of 5 countries

### 14.3.2 Units of measurement

Sino-Korean numbers are used for the metric system as well as for some American units of measurement. Native numbers are employed only for a few traditional Korean units of measurement. (All Arabic numerals are to be read as Sino-Korean numbers, unless otherwise specified.)

Temperature (기온/온도)

섭씨 Centigrade (vs. 화씨 Fahrenheit)
- 섭씨 0 도는 화씨 32 도이다. 0 degrees Centigrade is 32 degrees Fahrenheit.
- 최저 기온 (영상) 2 도 low temperature, two degrees (above zero)
- 현재 기온 15 도 current temperature, 15 degrees
- 체감 온도는 영하 5 도이다. Perceived temperature with windchill is 5 below zero.
Length/distance (길이/거리)

Metric units: kilo(미터), 미터, 센터(미터), 밀리(미터)
   165 센터 키의 남자  a man of 165 cm in height
   500 미터 달리기 500 m race
   제한속도 100 (킬로) speed limit 100 km
   강수량 400 밀리 precipitation, 400 mm
   비가 100 밀리미터 이상 내렸습니다. It rained more than 100 mm.
   1 킬로는 0.6 마일이다. 1 km = 0.6 mile

American unit: 인치 (used for waist, chest, & hip sizes)
   허리 29 (인치) 29-inch waist, 가슴둘레/엉덩이둘레 35 (인치) 35-inch chest/hip

Modern Korean units:
   For female clothes : 44 (XS), 55 (S), 66 (M), 77 (L)
   For mostly male clothes: 90 (XS), 95 (S), 100 (M), 105 (L)

Traditional units:
   자 (약 30.3 cm): 옷감 일곱 자 200 cm wide cloth,
   여섯 자짜리 장롱 180 cm wide dresser
   빗 ‘hand’s width’: 길이가 두 빗 정도 된다. The length is about two hands’ width.
   치 (only for idioms): 한 치의 양보도 없다. There’s not an inch of concession.

NOTE: The sizes for female clothing (44, 55, etc.) are read as [사사], [오오], etc., but the ones for male clothing (90, 95, etc.) are usually read as [구십], [구십오], etc.

Area (면적)

Metric units: m² (평방미터 or 제곱미터)

Traditional units: 평 is commonly used. (1[한]평 = 35.57 sq. ft.)
   30[삼십/서른]평짜리 아파트  a 1,000 sq. ft. apt
   대지 200 평 7,100 sq. ft. of land
   건평 72[칠십이/일흔두]평 2,500 sq. ft. interior

Volume (체적/부피)

Metric units: 리터, 밀리리터, 씽씽 (cc)
   우유 1 리터는 100 씽씽다. One liter of milk is 100 cc.
   500 씽씽짜리 오렌지 주스 a 500 cc (carton of) orange juice

Traditional units (not commonly used): 말 (= 4 gallons), 되
   (竜) 한 말 = 열 되
Weight (중량/무게)

Metric units: 킬로(그램), 그램

1 킬로그램은 약 2 파운드정도 된다. 1kg = about 2 lbs.
몸무게가 5 킬로나 들었다. I gained 5 kg!

Traditional unit: 근 (= 600 grams), 관 (= 3.75 kg)
소고기 한 근 600 grams of beef, 돼지고기 반 근 300 grams of pork
고추 한 관 3.75 kg of red pepper 마늘 두 관 7.5 kgs of garlic

As of July 2007, a new and revised measurement system has been implemented, prohibiting the use of traditional units such as 평, 근, 관, 돈, as well as some American units such as 인치.

Prohibited units              Mandated metric alternatives
(아파트) 1 평                      3.3 m² (apartment)
(소고기) 한 근                      600 g (beef)
(감자) 한 관                        3.75 kg (potato)
(금) 한 돈                          3.76 g (gold)
1 인치                             2.54 cm

For example:
20 평짜리 아파트                     66 제곱미터짜리 아파트  710 sq. ft. apt.
20 인치짜리 티비                     50.8 센티짜리 티비  20 inch TV
두 돈짜리 금반지                       7.84 그램짜리 금반지  7.84 gram gold ring

14.3.3 Time, date, and age

Both native and Sino-Korean numerals can be used for time, dates, and ages. A particularly notorious case involves telling time, which requires a native number for o’clock but a Sino-Korean number for minutes. Rather than trying to memorize the rule, it makes sense to simply remember an example – 7 시 20 분 [일곱 시 이십 분]. The following table summarizes the use of Sino-Korean and native Korean numbers with respect to their various functions. (All Arabic numerals are to be read as Sino-Korean numbers, unless otherwise specified.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time/date/age</th>
<th>Numerals</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hours</td>
<td>Native:</td>
<td>한 시간, 여덟 시간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE: Sino-Korean numerals are used for 24 시간,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>48 시간, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O’clock</td>
<td>Native:</td>
<td>오후 첫 시 1:00 PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>오전 열한 시 11:00 AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minutes/Seconds</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>34 분 52 초</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Century</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>2006 년 the year 2006 or 2006 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>21 세기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Month</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>6 월 June 11 월 November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Native:</td>
<td>여섯 달 6 months 염한 달 11 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>6 일 6th day or 6 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Native:</td>
<td>31 일 31st day or 31 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>하루 1 day 이틀 2 days 사흘 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>사흘 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>나흘 4 days 낭채 5 days 엇새 6 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>엇새 6 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>여레 7 days 여드레 8 days 아흐레 9 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>열흘 10 days 보름 15 days or 15th day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE: 엇새, 이레, 여드레, and 아흐레 are used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mostly by senior adults.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Week</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>4 주(일)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(X) night (X) days</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>7 밤 8 일 하와이 여행 7 night-8 day trip to Hawaii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(X) years old</td>
<td>Native:</td>
<td>서른 살 30 years old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>51 years old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20 세 미만 관람불가 No admission under 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>60 세 환갑 sixtieth birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>70 세 고회 seventieth birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Born in (X) year</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>1990 년생 [천구백구십년생]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90 년생 [구십년생 or 구공년생]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(연생생 children born within a year of each other)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stages of life</td>
<td>Sino:</td>
<td>10 대 [십대/일궁] teenage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(every 10 years)</td>
<td></td>
<td>20 대 [십십대/이공] twenties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE1**: Two different calendars are used – 양력 (solar calendar) for most dates and 음력 (lunar calendar) for certain special days such as 추석 and 구정 (Chinese New Year’s Day).

**NOTE2**: The day you are born, you are one year old in terms of Korean age. To indicate American age, which is used for all legal purposes, 만- is used (만 20 세/살). An American age of 20 corresponds to a Korean age of either 21 or 22.
### 14.3.4 Arithmetic and fractions

Sino-Korean numbers are used for arithmetical calculation, fractions (분수), decimals (소수), and multiplication tables (구구단). But native numbers are used for numerical comparison in general.

- **Arithmetical calculation: Sino-Korean numbers**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equation</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$2 + 2 = 4$</td>
<td>$4 - 2 = 2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2 \times 2 = 4$</td>
<td>$4 ÷ 2 = 2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  **NOTE:** Informal calculation of small quantities can be done with native numbers: 
  다섯에서 셋을 빼면 둘이다. *If you subtract 3 from 5, it is 2.*

- **Fractions (분수) and decimals (소수): Sino-Korean numbers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fraction</th>
<th>Equivalent in Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\frac{1}{2}$</td>
<td>2 분의 1 (or 2 분지 1 [uncommon/old-fashioned])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$2 \frac{1}{4}$</td>
<td>2 와 4 분의 일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$1 \frac{1}{2}$</td>
<td>1 과 2 분의 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.314</td>
<td>영점 삼십일사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>이점 영</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Multiplication tables (구구단)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Multiplication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>구일은 구</td>
<td>$9 \times 1 = 9$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구삼(은) 이십칠</td>
<td>$9 \times 3 = 27$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구이(는) 십팔</td>
<td>$9 \times 2 = 18$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구구(는) 괄십일</td>
<td>$9 \times 9 = 81$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Numerical comparison: Native numbers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparison</th>
<th>Equivalent in English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>두 배</td>
<td><em>two times as much</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 배 반</td>
<td><em>two and a half times as much</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열배</td>
<td><em>ten times as much</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  **NOTE:** Fractional or larger numbers used for comparison (especially multiples of 10, starting from 20) are Sino-Korean: 4.2 배, 삼십배, 백배, etc.

### 14.3.5 Money and currency

Sino-Korean numerals are used.

- 연봉이 오만 봐이다. *The annual salary is $50,000.*
- 월급은 사백만 원 정도 된다. *The monthly salary is about W4,000,000.*
- 십만 원짜리 수표 두 장 *two cashier’s checks of W100,000 each*
- 6 병 25 전 (= 옥 달러 이십오센트) $6.25

  **NOTE:** The traditional monetary unit 쪽 is found in idioms like 한 쪽도 없다
  ‘I am penniless.’
14.3.6 **Numbers relating to transportation**

Sino-Korean numerals are used.

- 지하철 6호선  
  *Subway line 6*
- 지하철 1구간 
  *Subway route 1*
- 26번 버스  
  *Number 26 bus*
- 28-1 [이십팔 다시 일] 번 버스  
- 288 [이백팔십팔 번 or 이팔팔] 버스

14.4 **Expressions of quantity**

14.4.1 **Approximate quantities**

- 감자가 서너 개 있을 거예요.  
  *I’m pretty sure that we have 3–4 potatoes.*
- 강의실에 남자 너댓 명이 있었어요.  
  *There were 4–5 men in the lecture room.*
- 공사가 이삼일이면 끝날 겁나.  
  *The construction will end in 2–3 days.*
- 대략 서른 살 정도 됐을 거예요.  
  *He is probably about 30 years old.*
- 약 5킬로 정도 될 겪나.  
  *It will probably be about 5 km.*
- 차로 한 십분쯤 걸릴 거예요.  
  *It will take about 10 minutes by car.*
- 근 보름동안 물만 마셨어.  
  *I had nothing but water for about 15 days.*
- 십사일경 만나자.  
  *Let’s meet around the 14th.*
- 몇 시쯤 만날까? 
  *About what time shall we meet?*
- 비가 50밀리가량 오겠습니다. 
  *The precipitation will be about 50 mm.*
- 못 들어도 몇백불은 들 겁니다. 
  *It will probably cost several hundred dollars at least.*
- 기온은 10도 안팎으로 
  *It will be chilly with the temperature hovering around 10.*
- 쌀쌀하게됐습니다.  
  *sweltering heat of over 40 degrees (C)*
- 40도를 웃도는 폭염  
  *temperatures between 20 and 23*
- 20도에서 23도 사이 
  *The population is about 45 to 50 million.*
- 인구는 4천 5백만 내지 5천만 
- 정도 된다.  

14.4.2 **Non-numerical expressions of quantity**

- **One and only (with the prefix 단- 單)**

  - 단독주택  
    *single-family home*
  - 단층집  
    *single-story house*
  - 단칸방  
    *small single room*
• Several; many (with the prefix 수- 數)
  수천 번  several thousand times
  수십 개  several dozen (apples)
  수개월  many months
  수년간  for many years

• Many; all sorts of
  몇 남성들의 시선을 한 몸에 받았다.
    She monopolized attention from all sorts of men.

• Most
  대부분의 사람들이 다 선호하는 스타일이다.
    It’s a style that most people like.

• Some
  일부 사원들의 반발이 심하다.
    Some of the company employees are strongly opposed.

• Half; quarter
  수입이 (절)반으로 줄더니 이제 반의 반도 안 되겠다.
    My income was reduced to half and now is probably less than a quarter.

• Majority of
  과반수/다다수의 찬성이 필요하다.
    We need the majority’s approval.

• Minority of
  찬성하는 사람은 극소수에 불과합니다.
    Those who agree are no more than a tiny minority.

  소수민족 minority race

• Just
  갖고 싶은 것 막 3 가지만 골라 봐.
    Pick just three things that you want to have.

  여동생이 이제 까스물이예요.
    My younger sister has just turned twenty.

• More than; not more than; less than
  50 킬로 미만/이하의 사람들은 현혈을 할 수 없습니다.
    Those weighing less than/not more than 50 kg cannot donate their blood.

  한 달 수입이 오천불 이상 됩니다.
    The monthly income is over $5,000.

  학생이 열 명이 넘는다/안 된다.
    There are more/fewer than ten students.
14.4.3 Markers of plurality

- Reduplicated words
  김과장님 생일 파티에 누구 누구 갔습니까?
  Who all went to the birthday party for section chief Mr. Kim?

친구 집들이에 뭐뭐 사갔어요?
What kind of things did you buy and take to your friend’s house-warming?

하와이에 가면 어디 어디를 꼭 빴어 되는 지 알려 주세요.
Please let me know what places we should see when we visit Hawaii.

한국가는 비행기가 언제 언제 뭐니까?
On which days are there planes going to Korea?

- 들

친구들하고 언제 놀러들 와라. 다들 잘 있지?
Come over with your friends sometime. Are they all doing well?

- [formal/written]

이 음식점은 고등어 조림, 야구찜 등 생선요리를 잘 합니다.
This restaurant is good for fish like broiled mackerel, steamed angler (fish), etc.
Grammar
15 Verb types

Verbs make up the single most important class of words in Korean, and are the elements through which many of the language’s most important semantic contrasts are expressed.

15.1 Action verbs versus descriptive verbs

The category of verb in Korean is more comprehensive than in English, encompassing both words that denote actions (action verbs) and words that denote states (descriptive verbs). The latter may be called ‘adjectives,’ but they must be distinguished from English adjectives since they can carry tense marking.

15.1.1 How to distinguish between the two types of verbs

- Action verbs form their present tense in the -다 style, as -ㄴ/-는다.
  - 병헌이가 낮잠을 잔다. Byoung-hun is taking a nap.
  - 성아가 김밥을 먹는다. Sung-ah is eating a seaweed roll.
  - 영화가 재미있다. The movie is fun.
  - 거리가 한산하다. The street is quiet and empty.
  - 하늘이 맑다. The sky is clear.

- Action verbs and compound verbs ending in 있다/없다 have the present tense adnominal form -는.
  - 낮잠을 자는 병헌이 Byoung-hun, who is taking a nap
  - 김밥을 먹는 성아 Sung-ah, who is eating a seaweed roll
  - 재미있는 영화 fun movie

- In contrast, descriptive verbs form their present tense without a suffix, as -다.
  - 한산한 거리 quiet and empty street
  - 맑은 하늘 clear sky

A small number of words can function as either action verbs or descriptive verbs.

- 키가 크다. He’s tall.
- 키가 아직도 크다. He’s still growing.
- 시간이 늦다. It’s late.
  - (학교에) 늦는다. You’re getting late (for school).
15.1.2 How to convert descriptive verbs into action verbs

• By adding -어 지다

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptive verb</th>
<th>Action verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>짧다; 길다</td>
<td>짧아지다; 길어지다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좁다; 넓다</td>
<td>좁아지다; 넓어지다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깊다</td>
<td>깊어지다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예쁘다</td>
<td>예뻐지다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

요새 여성들의 치마가 점점 짧아진다.
These days, women’s skirts are getting shorter and shorter.

날씨도 따뜻해지고 낮도 많이 길어졌어요.
The weather has gotten warmer and the day time has gotten a lot longer.

피부가 하얗더니 햇빛에 점점 까매진다.
Her white skin is gradually darkening under the sun.

원래도 예뻤지만 더 예뻐졌네요.
You were pretty before, but have gotten even prettier.

• By adding -어 하다 to certain verbs denoting psychological states

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptive verb</th>
<th>Action verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>좋다; 싫다</td>
<td>좋아하다; 싫어하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>반갑다; 귀찮다</td>
<td>반가워하다; 귀찮아하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피곤하다</td>
<td>피곤해하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-고 싶다</td>
<td>-고 싫어하다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whereas a descriptive verb talks about an inner feeling, the corresponding action verb evokes an external manifestation of the feeling – perhaps a smile in the case of 반가워하다 ‘be glad’ or a frown in the case of 귀찮아하다 ‘feel bothered.’

In talking about psychological states, either a descriptive verb or an action verb is possible when the subject is the speaker.

정말 부럽다. 내가 얼마나 부러워하는지 아니?
I am so envious. Do you know just how much I envy you?

However, things work differently for other types of subjects. You can ask another person about his/her inner feelings using a descriptive verb, as in 많이 섭섭했죠? ‘You were very much disappointed, right?’ However, the action verb is required for commands, as in 너무 섭섭해하지 마세요. ‘Don’t be too disappointed.’ Moreover, only the action verb is possible with a third person subject.
할머니가 많이 반가워하시지?
Grandma was so glad to see you, wasn’t she?
언니가 동유럽으로 배낭여행을 가고 싶어요.
My sister wants to go backpacking in eastern Europe.

The difference between X가 좋아요 and X를 좋아해요

X가 좋아요 is ambiguous between ‘X is good’ and ‘I like X.’ So 고기가 좋아요 can mean either ‘the meat is good in quality’ or ‘I like meat.’ In contrast, X를 좋아해요 can only mean ‘I like X.’

Moreover, there is a difference between two expressions even when they both mean ‘I like X’: X가 좋아요 can be based on temporary feelings, but X를 좋아해요 always makes a general statement about liking. Therefore, 날씨가 좋아요 is an acceptable way to say ‘I like the weather,’ as one looks out at the sky, but 날씨를 좋아해요 is not. (비오는 날씨를 좋아해요 ‘I like rainy weather’ is fine because it is based on general experience, not on a one-time feeling.) Upon walking into a store and finding a nice bag, one can say 이 가방이 좋아요 ‘I like this bag’ or 이런 가방을 좋아해요 ‘I like this type of bag,’ but not 이 가방을 좋아해요.

15.2 Intransitive verbs versus transitive verbs

Intransitive verbs denote actions and states that have a single principal participant – the subject.

개가 사납게 짖는다. The dog is barking fiercely.
아기가 정말 귀여워요. The baby is so cute.

Transitive verbs denote actions or states involving two principal participants – the subject and the direct object. (The subject is not overtly expressed in the second sentence.)

친구가 책을 잃어버렸다. My friend lost the book.
매일 아침 우유를 마십니다. I drink milk every morning.
15.2.1 A difference between English and Korean

Many verbs in English can be either intransitive or transitive (e.g., ‘The door opened/He opened the door’), but only very few can be used in both ways in Korean.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Intransitive use</th>
<th>Transitive use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>움직이다 move</td>
<td>몸이 안 움직인다. My body won’t move.</td>
<td>몸을 못 움직이겠어. I can’t move my body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멈추다 stop</td>
<td>차가 감자가 멈쳤다. The car stopped suddenly.</td>
<td>차를 감자가 멈췄다. He stopped the car suddenly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table contains verbs that can be both intransitive and transitive in English, but require two distinct forms in Korean. The suffixes (-이, -히, etc.) that are responsible for the intransitive–transitive alternation in these examples are discussed in more detail below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Verbs</th>
<th>Intransitive</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decrease</td>
<td>줄다 (X) decreases</td>
<td>줄이다 decrease (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increase</td>
<td>늘다 (X) increases</td>
<td>늘리다 increase (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach</td>
<td>붙다 (X) sticks</td>
<td>붙이다 attach (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil</td>
<td>끓다 (X) boils</td>
<td>끓이다 boil (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melt</td>
<td>녹다 (X) melts</td>
<td>녹이다 melt (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>얼다 (X) freezes</td>
<td>얼리다 freeze (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>타다 (X) burns</td>
<td>태우다 burn (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>채다 (X) wakes up</td>
<td>채우다 wake (X) up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>열리다 (X) opens</td>
<td>열다 open (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>단히다 (X) closes</td>
<td>단다 close (X)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intransitive

바지가 좀 줄었다. The pants got a little shorter.
라면이 아직 다 안 끓었어. The ramen hasn’t boiled all the way yet.
고기가 좀 탔네요. The meat burned a little.
차문이 열렸어요. The car door is open.

Transitive

(바지를) 아직 더 줄여야겠다. I need to shorten the pants more.
(라면을) 좀 더 끓이자. Let’s boil the ramen a little more.
(고기를) 일부러 태운 거예요? Did you burn the meat on purpose?
(차문을) 누가 열었지요? Who opened the car door?
15.2.2  Noun–verb compounds

A similar contrast is found with certain noun–verb compounds, where 되다 or 나타 is used for the intransitive version and 하다 or 내다 for the transitive version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Intransitive</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>시작 beginning</td>
<td>준비 preparation</td>
<td>되다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예약 reservation</td>
<td>녹음 recording</td>
<td>나타</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 heat; anger</td>
<td>끝 end</td>
<td>힘 energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>겁 timidity</td>
<td>소문 rumor</td>
<td>고장 break-down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신경질 irritability</td>
<td>기운 energy</td>
<td>사고 accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간 time</td>
<td>짜증 irritated feeling</td>
<td>나타</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Intransitive</th>
<th>Transitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>생각 thought</td>
<td>기억 memory</td>
<td>나타</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: These patterns can be used with or without a particle on the noun – either 겁나다/겁내다 or 겁이 나타/겁을 나타. See 15.3.3 for more discussion of 되다 versus 하다.

**Intransitive**

| 예약됐습니까? | 언제 예약을 하셨는데요? |
| 예약이 안 됐어요. | 녹음을 다시 해 보세요. |
| Our conversation is not finished yet. | Our conversation is not finished yet. |
| 컴퓨터가 고장났어요. | 컴퓨터를 또 고장내요. |
| The phone number came to my mind. | Do you remember the phone number? |
| 요새 시간이 안 나요. | 시간을 좀 내 보세요. |

**Transitive**

| 언제 예약을 하셨는데요? | 예약됐습니까? |
| 녹음을 다시 해 보세요. | 예약이 안 됐어요. |
| Our conversation is not finished yet. | Our conversation is not finished yet. |
| 컴퓨터를 또 고장내요. | 컴퓨터가 고장났어요. |
| Do you remember the phone number? | The phone number came to my mind. |
| 시간을 좀 내 보세요. | 요새 시간이 안 나요. |
15.3 Special sub-types of intransitive verbs

Several sub-types of intransitive verbs are identified based on the presence of particular suffixes and/or special verbs.

15.3.1 Intransitive verbs with the suffix -이/히/기/리

A limited set of transitive verbs form their intransitive counterparts with the help of the suffixes -이, -히, -기, or -리. A few examples are presented in the table below, followed by examples of their various uses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transitive verbs</th>
<th>Intransitive verbs with -이/히/기/리</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>덮다 cover (X)</td>
<td>덮이다 (X) be covered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>섞다 mix (X)</td>
<td>섞이다 (X) be mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바꾸다 switch (X)</td>
<td>바뀌다 (X) be switched (뀌 &lt; 꾸)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠그다 lock (X)</td>
<td>잠기다 (X) be locked (기 &lt; 꾸)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꽂다 insert (X)</td>
<td>꽂히다 (X) be inserted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뽑다 pick (X)</td>
<td>뽑히다 (X) be picked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찍다 photograph (X)</td>
<td>찍히다 (X) be photographed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>묻다 bury (X)</td>
<td>묻히다 (X) be buried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끊다 cut (X) off</td>
<td>끊기다 (X) be cut off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떳다 pluck (X)</td>
<td>떳기다 (X) be plucked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안다 hug/caress (X)</td>
<td>안기다 (X) be hugged/caressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들다 hear (X)</td>
<td>들리다 (X) be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쥐르다 poke/stab (X)</td>
<td>쥐리다 (X) be poked/stabbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끌다 pull (X)</td>
<td>끌리다 (X) be pulled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Uses of intransitive verbs with -이/히/기/리*

- **Passive**
  Passives turn a transitive sentence around and present it from the perspective of the one who is affected by the action rather than the one who performs it.

청소년들이 이 책을 많이 읽습니다. (transitive)
Many teenagers read this book.

이 책이 청소년들에게 많이 읽힙니다. (passive)
This book is read by many teenagers.

고양이가 쥐를 잡았다. (transitive)
The cat caught the mouse.

쥐가 고양이한테 잡혔다. (passive)
The mouse was caught by the cat.
The ‘by’ in ‘by many teenagers’ and similar phrases is usually expressed by -에게/한테 (with an animate noun) and -에 (with an inanimate noun). However, it is expressed by -에 의해(서) in order to avoid ambiguity in cases where -에게/한테 can be interpreted as ‘to someone’ instead of ‘by someone’ – as in 누군가에게 팔렸다 ‘sold to someone’ versus 누군가에 의해 팔렸다 ‘sold by someone.’

The passive form can also be used to express adversity, indicating that someone is negatively affected by an action. Unlike typical passive sentences, these patterns may include -을/를 marked nouns.

소매치기한테 지갑을 털러요.
I got robbed of my wallet by a pickpocket.

우리 대표선수가 상대편에게 약점을 잡혔다.
Our key player had his weakness discovered by the opposing team.

• **Potential/uncontrollable**

Verbs marked by -이/히/기/리 can also be used to indicate that something happens out of one’s control. When used in this way, the verb is usually in the present tense.

글씨가 너무 작아서 잘 안 보여요.
I can’t see the writing because it’s too small.

눈치가 보인다.
I feel uneasy (about what he’s thinking).

이제 마음이 놓인다.
I feel relieved now.

여기는 고키가 잘 안 잡힌다.
I can’t really catch fish here.

일이 손에 안 잡힌다.
I can’t seem to be able to work.

밥이 먹혀요.
I can’t seem to be able to eat.

졸려서 눈이 자꾸 감긴다.
I’m so sleepy that my eyes keep falling shut.

나는 잘 웃는 사람한테 끌려.
I get attracted to those who laugh a lot.

문이 안 열린다.
The door won’t open. (I can’t open it.)

너무 멀린다.
I’m so nervous. (I can’t help it.)

애기가 곤이 안 들려요.
The story doesn’t sound right to me.
(I can’t believe it.)

The transitive counterparts of these verbs (without -이/히/기/리) indicate that the action is under one’s control. Notice the following contrasts.

아무리 감을 잡으려고 해도 도대체 감이 안 잡혀요.
No matter how hard I try to figure it out, I can’t possibly do that.
신경 안 쓰려고 해도 자꾸 신경이 쓰이네요.
I try not to be concerned, but it keeps bothering me.

밥을 좀 먹어야 되는데 밥이 통 안 먹혀요.
I must eat some food, but I just can’t seem to be able to.

• Idiosyncratic uses
The following patterns have no transitive counterparts and are best treated as fixed expressions. Some have passive-like meanings and others express uncontrollable situations or feelings.

스트레스가 쌓인다.
Stress keeps building up.

난처한 입장에 놓였다.
I’ve been put in a difficult position.

시간에 엎메이지 말고 천천히 해.
Don’t be pressured by the clock, and take your time.

기억 막힌다.
I’m at a loss for words. (It’s ridiculous.)

교통이 막힌다.
The traffic is jammed.

그런 방법은 이제 먹히지가 않아.
Such a method doesn’t work any more.

친구집에 앉혀있다고 천천히 해.
I’m living at my friend’s house as a parasite.

향상 시간에 쫓기게 돼.
I find myself always crunched for time.

차가 밀린다.
The traffic is backed up.

일이 많이 밀렸어요.
I’m behind in my work.

추위가 풀렸다.
The cold weather turned warm.

졸업생들이 잘 풀린다.
The graduates are finding good jobs.

감기가 잔뜩 걸렸어요.
I have a full-blown cold.

그 일이 자꾸 마음에 걸린다.
That kind of behavior is against the law.

그런 행동은 법에 걸린다.
Success depends on one’s efforts.

성공은 노력여하에 달렸다.
It’s embarrassing. [familiar/casual]

쪽 팔린다.
His face became exposed to the public through TV.

TV를 통해 얼굴이 많이 팔렸다.

15.3.2 Intransitive verbs with 지다
지다, which is linked to the main verb by -어/야, can be used with a limited number of verbs. (지다 can also be used to turn a descriptive verb into an action verb; see 15.1.2.)
Transitive verbs | Intransitive verbs with 지다
---|---
pour (X) | 쏟아지다 (X) be poured
tear (X) | 썰어지다 (X) be torn
establish (X) | 세워지다 (X) be established
break (X) | 부서지다 (X) be broken
convey (X) | 전하다 (X) be conveyed
turn (X) off | 꼁다 (X) be turned off

NOTE: A small number of intransitive verbs can be formed by either a suffix or 지다: 쩔기다 or 쩔어지다 for 쩔다 ‘tear’ and 믿기다 or 믿어지다 for 믿다 ‘believe.’

**Uses of intransitive verbs with 지다**

- **Passive**

  파도가 모래성을 허물었다. (transitive)

  *The wave destroyed the sand castle.*

  모래성이 파도에 허물어졌다. (passive)

  *The sand castle was destroyed by the wave.*

  검찰이 사건의 진상을 밝혔다. (transitive)

  *The prosecutor revealed the true picture of the case.*

  사건의 진상이 검찰에 의해 밝혀졌다. (passive)

  *The true picture of the case was revealed by the prosecutor.*

  NOTE: With the 지다 and 되다 passives, the formal-sounding X에 의해 is used instead of X에게/한테 to express ‘by someone.’

- **Potential/uncontrollable**

  지다 can indicate that something happens in a way that is out of one’s control. When used in this way, the verb is usually in the present tense.

  접시가 잘 깨진다. The dish breaks easily.

  통조림이 안 따진다. This can won’t open. (I can’t open it.)

  계획이 틀려졌어요. The plan fell through.

  이 옷은 잘 안 빗어져요. This dress doesn’t wash well.

  믿기지 않는다. 정말 안 믿어져. It’s unbelievable. I can’t believe it.

  머리가 점점 빗겨져요. My hairline is gradually receding.

  요즘은 책이 통 안 읽어진다. I can’t seem to be able to read these days.

  칼이 안 들어서 고기가 안 썰어져. The meat won’t cut well because the knife is dull.

  이 칫솔은 이가 잘 빗어져/닦여. This tooth brush brushes well.

  안 기다리려해도 자꾸 기다려진다. I can’t help but wait (for him) even if I try not to.
아침에 절로 눈이 떠진다.  

My eyes pop open automatically in the morning.

The transitive counterparts of these verbs (without 지다) indicate that the action is under one’s control. Notice the following contrasts between a transitive verb and its intransitive counterpart with 지다.

아무리 눈을 떠려고 해도 눈이 안 떠져요.  

No matter how hard I try to wake up, my eyes won’t open.

전화를 내가 끊은 게 아니라 전화가 그냥 끊어졌어요.  

I didn’t hang up the phone, but it just got cut off.

과일 통조림을 좀 따야 되는데 이게 안 따지네요.  

I have to open this canned fruit, but it won’t open.

• Idiosyncratic uses

The following patterns have no transitive counterparts and are best treated as fixed expressions. Some of these denote uncontrollable actions and states.

전철이 끊어졌다/끊겼다.  
The subway has shut down (for the day).

발량 떠갔다.  
She’s wild and brash.

잠이 쏟아진다.  
I’m having a huge wave of drowsiness.

입이 안 떨어져요.  
I can’t seem to be able to open my mouth (to say anything).

차마 발이 안 떨어져.  
I can’t seem to be able to move my feet (to leave).

15.3.3 Intransitive verbs with 되다

Some Sino-Korean nouns that combine with 하다 to form a transitive verb can occur with 되다 to create an intransitive verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transitive with 하다</th>
<th>Intransitive with 되다</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>해결하다 solve (X)</td>
<td>해결되다 (X) be solved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사용하다 use (X)</td>
<td>사용되다 (X) be used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜곡하다 distort (X)</td>
<td>왜곡되다 (X) be distorted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기대하다 expect (X)</td>
<td>기대되다 (X) be expected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Uses of intransitive verbs with 되다

• Passive

대화 중에 누군가가 그 사람의 이름을 거론했다.  
Someone mentioned his name during the conversation.

대화 중에 누군가에 의해 그 사람의 이름이 거론되었다.  
His name was mentioned by someone during the conversation.
Verb Types

A kidnapper abducted the child.

The child was abducted by a kidnapper.

- Potential/uncontrollable

I'm getting nervous.
I keep getting worried.
I can't possibly understand.
I'm looking forward to this trip to Korea.
I have to study, but I can't seem to be able to.
No matter how hard I try to forgive him, I just can't.

15.3.4 Other special intransitive verbs

Some nouns combine with 당하다 ‘suffer/undergo’ or 받다 ‘receive’ to create compound intransitive verbs with a passive-like meaning.

- With 당하다

강간당하다 be raped
사기당하다 be swindled
배반당하다 be betrayed
ger절당하다 be rejected
무시당하다 be ignored
go소당하다 be sued
실연당하다 be lovelorn
왕따당하다 be alienated

- With 받다

사랑받다 be loved
청찬받다 be praised
 존경받다 be respected
처벌받다 be punished
별시받다 be despised
비난받다 be criticized
간섭받다 be interfered with
상처받다 be hurt/broken-hearted

In addition, two special verbs – 속다 and 맞다 – are worth noting since they have a passive meaning in the absence of any suffix or auxiliary.

Jiyoung got deceived by the swindler.
The younger brother got hit by the older brother.
15.4 Special sub-types of transitive verbs

Like intransitives, transitive verbs can be organized into several subclasses based on the presence of particular suffixes and/or special verbs.

15.4.1 Transitive verbs with the suffix -이/-히/-기/-리/-우/-구/-추

A limited number of native Korean transitive verbs are formed from intransitives with the help of the suffixes -이, -히, -기, -리, -우, -구, or -추. So, whereas 울다 means ‘cry,’ 울리다 is a transitive verb with the meaning ‘make someone cry.’ In other cases, there is also a significant shift in meaning: 서다 means ‘stand’ or ‘stop,’ but its transitive counterpart 세우다 means ‘establish’ or ‘pull over.’ Additional examples are presented in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intransitive verbs (with subject only)</th>
<th>Transitive verbs with -이/-히/-기/-리/-우/-구/-추 (with subject &amp; direct object)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>붙다 (X) sticks</td>
<td>붙이다 attach (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속다 (X) be deceived</td>
<td>속이다 deceive (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식다 (X) cools off</td>
<td>식히다 cool (X) off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넓다 (X) be wide</td>
<td>넓히다 widen (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>굶다 (X) starves</td>
<td>굶기다 starve (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>웃다 (X) laughs</td>
<td>웃기다 make (X) laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>날다 (X) flies</td>
<td>날리다 make (X) fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오르다 (X) rises</td>
<td>올리다 raise (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>차다 (X) be filled</td>
<td>채우다 fill (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깨다 (X) wakes up</td>
<td>깨우다 wake (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돋다 (X) sprouts/comes out</td>
<td>돋구다 stimulate/whet (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦다 (X) be late</td>
<td>늦추다 delay (X); loosen (X)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맞다 (X) fits</td>
<td>맞추다 make (X) fit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When the verb is transitive to begin with, the suffix -이/히/기/리/우/구/추 adds another element to its meaning – typically an indirect object. So, instead of someone doing something on his own, (s)he directly or indirectly causes someone else to do it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transitive verbs (with subject &amp; direct object)</th>
<th>Transitive verbs with -이/히/기/리/우/구/추 (with subject, direct object, &amp; one other)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 먹다  
*eat (X)* | 먹이다  
*feed (X) to (Y)* |
| 보다  
*see (X)* | 보이다  
*show (X) to (Y)* |
| 입다  
*wear (X: clothes)* | 입히다  
*dress (Y) in (X)* |
| 읽다  
*read (X)* | 읽히다  
*make (Y) read (X)* |
| 신다  
*wear (X: shoes)* | 신기다  
*put (X) on (Y)* |
| 감다  
*wash (hair)* | 감기다  
*wash (Y’s) (hair)* |
| 알다  
*know (X)* | 알리다  
*inform (Y) of (X)* |
| 쓰다  
*wear (X: hats)* | 써우다  
*put (X) on (Y’s head)* |

*Uses of transitive verbs with -이/히/기/리/우/구/추*

**Causative**

The following examples are divided into two groups: one with the sense of causing **SOMEONE** to do something (as is the case for all the verbs in the second table above and some in the first table) and the other with the sense of causing **SOMETHING** to happen. The ‘causative’ meaning is clear in the first type, but is less evident in the second type, which often is hardly distinguishable from simple transitives.

**Causing someone to do something:**

승진하려고 웃사람들한테 돈을 먹였어요.
*I heard that he bribed his superiors to get promoted.*

형제간에 싸움을 붙였어요.
*They made the two brothers get into a fight.*

아이를 의자에 앉히세요.
*Have the child sit in a chair.*

교수가 학생들에게 책을 많이 읽혔다.
*The professor makes students read a lot.*

아기 신발 좀 신겨 줘라.
*Help the baby put the shoes on.*

아빠가 나한테 그 일을 맡기셨다.
*Father put me in charge of the matter.*

누가 내 동생을 울렸지?
*Who made my younger sister cry?*

아기를 너무 많이 재우지 마세요.
*Don’t let the baby sleep too much.*
Causing something to happen:

요새 요가에 재미를 붙였어요. I’ve taken an interest in yoga these days.
전통문화에 관심을 기울이고 있다. I am focusing my interest on traditional culture.
저민생선에 밀가루를 묻혀 놓아. Have the sliced fish floured.
너무 뜨거워서 좀 식혀야겠어요. It’s too hot, so I better cool it off a bit.
남기지 말고 다 먹자. Let’s eat it all and not leave anything.
얼음 좀 얼려야겠어요. I think I should make some ice.
값 좀 그만 좀 올리지. Why do you get so angry over other people’s business?
남기지 말고 다 먹자. Let’s eat it all and not leave anything.
시계 좀 맞춰 놓자. Let’s set the watch.
날짜를 좀 늦출까요? Shall we delay the date a little?

All of the above patterns have counterparts without the suffix -이/히/기/리/우/구/추. This leads to contrasts such as the following.

아기가 너무 많이 자네요. 그만 재우세요.
The baby is sleeping too much. Stop letting him sleep.
형제간에 싸움이 붙어어요. 누가 싸움을 붙인 거예요?
The two brothers got into a fight. Who made them get into a fight?
요즘 나는 요가에 재미가 붙어어요. 너도 한 번 재미를 붙여 봐.
I got interested in yoga these days. Why don’t you try to take an interest in it too?
시계가 안 맞는다. 좀 맞춰 놓자.
The watch is not correct. Let’s set it.
우리만 알고 있지 말고 다른 사람들한테도 알리자.
Let’s inform other people too, instead of keeping the information to ourselves.
커피가 한 방울도 안 남았네요. 좀 남기지.
Not a drop of coffee is left. I wish you had left a little for me.
친구 마음을 아무리 돌리려고 해도 마음이 돌아오지 않네요.
I try very hard to change my friend’s mind, but her mind won’t change.
얼굴에 뭐가 묻었네요. 뭐 묻힌 거예요?
You have something on your face. What do you have your face covered with?
• Idiosyncratic use
The following patterns (all noun–verb combinations) don’t have non-causative counterparts and are best treated as fixed expressions.

치사하게 남의 약점을 들먹이냐?  How shameful of you to bring up my weaknesses.
네가 얼마나 강한지 본때를 보여 줘.  Teach them a lesson to show how strong you are.
시계를 전당포에 잡혔어.  I pawned my watch at the pawn shop.
그 사람은 돈을 너무 밟혀요.  He’s obsessed with money.
오늘 손님이 없어서 파리 날린다.  There are no customers, so no business today [letting just the flies fly].
투수로 이름을 날렸다.  He won his fame as a pitcher.
졸업 후에 전공을 살리고 싶어요.  I want to put my college major to use after graduation.
너 남자친구하고 입맞추는 거 됐어.  I saw you kissing your boyfriend.
알리바이를 위해 서로 입을 맞췄다.  We all told the same story as our alibi.

15.4.2 Transitive verbs with -게 하다
The meaning expressed by -게 하다 is always causative – making or letting someone do something. (When it comes to making someone do something, the verb 하다 can be replaced by 만Scaler.) This pattern is fully productive – it can be used with any verb.

선생님이 그 학생을 집에 일찍 가게 하셨다.  The teacher had the student go home early.
너무 오래 기다리게 하지 말고 빨리 오세요.  Come quickly and don’t make us wait too long.
방을 너무 춥게 해서 감기가 들었어.  She made the room too cold, so I caught a cold.
뜻하지 않은 비행기 연착이 우리로 하여금 시간을 낭비하게 만들었다.  The unexpected delay of the airplane made us waste our time.

When both the -이/의/기/리/우/구/추 form and the -게 하다 form are permitted, the former tends to express more direct causation than the latter (e.g., 먹이다 ‘feed’ vs. 먹게 하다 ‘make/let someone eat”).
In addition, the -이/의/기/리 forms often have simple transitive or idiomatized uses and cannot alternate with the -게 하다 forms, which have only a causative use.

맛이 죽인다.  It has a killer taste.
종을 울렸다.  They rang the bell.
198

GRAMMAR

얼굴을 붉혔다.  She blushed/reddened.
과거를 숨겼다.  He hid the past.
죽어가는 물고기를 살렸다.  I saved the dying fish.
사투리 쓴다고 놀려요.  They make fun of my regional accent.

15.4.3 Transitive verbs with 시키다

In the case of a small set of nouns, the verb 시키다 can replace 하다 to express a causative meaning.

피곤하니까 나한테 말 시키지 마.  아무말도 하고 싶지 않아.
I’m tired, so don’t make me talk. I don’t want to say anything.

음식을 직접 하지 않고 항상 시켜 먹는다.
She doesn’t cook food, but has it delivered all the time.

다른 사람들 조심시키기 전에 너부터 조심해.
You be careful first before making other people be careful.

본인부터 소개하고 여자친구도 소개시켜 주세요.
Introduce yourself first and have your girlfriend introduce herself to us as well.

우리는 치열하게 서로 경쟁했다. 선생님이 우리를 경쟁시켰다.
We competed fiercely. Our teacher made us compete.

NOTE: Other nouns that can be used in these patterns include 공부 ‘study,’ 구경 ‘sightseeing,’ 긴장 ‘nervousness,’ 노래 ‘singing,’ 승진 ‘promotion,’ 연습 ‘practice,’ 일 ‘work,’ 해산 ‘dispersal/dispersing,’ and 확신 ‘confirmation.’

15.4.4 Transitive verbs with -뜨리다

The auxiliary verb -뜨리다 is used to form the transitive counterpart of a small set of intransitive verbs that contain -이다.

과자가 다 부서졌다. 더 부서뜨리지 마.
The biscuit got all crumbled. Don’t crumble it up more.

뭐 빠진 거 없니? 하나도 빠뜨리지 말고 챙겨.
Is there anything missing? Don’t miss anything; pack everything.

컵이 싱크에서 떨어졌어요. 누가 컵을 떨어뜨렸어요.
The cup dropped from the table. Someone dropped it.

벌써 소문이 퍼졌어요. 누가 소문을 퍼뜨렸지?
The rumor spread already. I wonder who spread the rumor.

접시가 그냥 깨졌어. 내가 깨(뜨리)지 않았어.
The plate just broke. I didn’t break it.

NOTE: Both 깨다 and 깨뜨리다 are transitive with the meaning ‘break.’
The -뜨리다 in this case simply has an intensifying effect.
16 Tense and Aspect

Tense situates a state or event in time (past, present, or future), while aspect expresses the way it is viewed (ongoing, repeated, completed, and so on). Verbal forms are often given names—such as ‘past tense’ or ‘future tense.’ However, these names are somewhat misleading, since most forms have several functions beyond the one from which their name is derived. (The same is true in English, where the so-called ‘present tense’ can be used to express the future, as in She arrives tomorrow at 3:00, for example.) As you proceed, it is important to bear in mind the distinction between the name typically used to identify a verb’s form and the various uses to which that form is put.

16.1 Tense and aspect on sentence-final verbs

16.1.1 The basic form

The most basic verb form is used primarily to express present-time states and actions. Except for action verbs in the 한다 style, for which -ㄴ/는 is inserted (e.g., 본다, 듣는다), it involves no special marking.

- With descriptive verbs, the basic form denotes a present state.
  내 동생은 키가 작다. My younger brother/sister is short.
  머리가 너무 짧아요. My hair is too short.

- With action verbs, the basic form is used not only to express present-time actions but also, depending on the context and/or the meaning of the verb, habitual actions, past actions that continue to the present, future actions, and processes in progress, as the following examples illustrate.
  지금 밥 먹는다. I’m eating right now.
  매일 아침 해변을 달린다. I run along the beach every morning.
  두 달째 여기 살아요. I’ve been living here for two months now.
  다음 주에 출장간다. I’m going on a business trip next week.
  국수가 불어요. The noodles are getting soggy.
16.1.2 -어 있다 (or -아 있다)

Used to express a continuing present state that results from a completed action, this form is found with only a small number of intransitive action verbs that imply definite end points. (있어 is replaced by 계시다 for an honorific subject.)

- My body is at school, but my mind is somewhere else.
- Being outside the country, I’m not familiar with the domestic situation.
- My legs are hurting after standing up for a long time.
- I thought/knew someone was here because the door was open.
- I thought you fell asleep, but you’re still awake?
- She’s being ridiculous.

16.1.3 -고 있다

This form, which can combine with any action verb, mainly indicates an action in progress. (있어 is replaced by 계시다 for an honorific subject.) It expresses:

- With most action verbs: ongoing or habitual action
  - It’s been raining for a week.
  - I’m painting.
  - She’s been eating bread for breakfast.
- It can be replaced by 앉아 있다 and 자빠졌다, literally ‘be sitting down’ and ‘be lying down,’ to indicate the speaker’s dissatisfaction toward the person’s action.
- He’s doing nothing but watching TV all day.
- She’s being ridiculous.

- With verbs of wearing or contact: either ongoing action or present state resulting from a completed action
  - He’s putting on (or wearing) a red tie.
  - She’s putting on (or wearing) white shoes.
이름표를 달고 있습니다.  He’s putting on (or wearing) a name tag.
이 가방 좀 잠깐 들고 있을래?  Would you hold this bag for a minute?
To unambiguously express an ongoing action, -고 있는 중이다 can be used:

- With verbs of cognition: present state resulting from a completed activity  

 잘못을 깨닫고 있다.  She realizes her faults.
원가 오해하고 있는 것 같아요.  He seems to misunderstand something.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-어 있다 (continuing state) vs. -고 있다 (continuing action)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>학교에 왔다.  He’s at school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교에 오고 있다.  He’s on his way to school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>할아버지가 아직 살아 계시다.  Grandfather is still alive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>할아버지가 한국에 살고 계시다.  Grandfather is living in Korea.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.1.4 -었 (or 았/ㅆ)  
Frequently called the ‘past tense,’ this form denotes a past state for descriptive verbs.

- Past state  
나도 왕년엔 뚱뚱이었다.  I too was cool-looking in the old days.
날씨가 아주 포근했어요.  The weather was quite nice and warm.

- With 멀다: past or non-past states  
고등학교 때 집이 아주 멀었어요.  My house was very far from my highschool.
도착하려면 아직 멀었어요?  Are we far from being there?
저녁 아직 멀었어요?  Is dinner far off?
내 요리실력은 너한테 아직 멀었다.  My cooking is far inferior to yours.

For action verbs, -었 is used not only for past actions, but also for completed actions or processes that result in a present state. The individual verb’s meaning can help determine which interpretation is appropriate. Hence 결혼했다 can mean ‘got married,’ focusing on the past event, or ‘is married,’ focusing on the present state resulting from the past event. But 공을 찔다 ‘kicked the ball’ can only denote a past action and 잘 생겼다 ‘is handsome’ can only denote the present state. (생기다 is an action verb, meaning ‘get formed/ created.’)
Here is a summary of the meanings that -았/었 can be used to express when it appears with an action verb.

- Past action (including actions that are just completed or continuing to the present)
  - 친구가 직장을 옮겼다. (My friend changed companies.)
  - 지금 막 도착했습니다. (I’ve just arrived.)
  - 여기서 지금껏 살았다. (I’ve lived here up till now.)

- Completed action/process followed by a continuing ‘present’ state: Each sentence has both meanings but typically, the present state meaning is prominent.
  - 잠이 완전히 켜어. (I got totally awakened.)
  - 약국이 문을 닫았어요. (The pharmacy closed.)
  - 오늘 줄무늬 셔츠 입었니? (Did you put a striped shirt on today? Are you wearing a striped shirt today?)
I got it.
I understand.

You became deaf?
Are you deaf?

She became blind!
She’s blind!

Present state only

The child resembles his mother.
He’s really good/bad looking.

When these verbs, except 잘/못 생겼다, occur in the basic (present tense) form, they have a progressive or future meaning.

I keep getting angry.
You’re going to get fat; stop eating.

He was really angry when I saw him.
Her face was puffed up when I saw her.

He was really angry (but no longer is).
Her face was puffed up (but no longer is).

-였다 vs. -어 있다 for certain verbs

-어 있다 focuses more on how things are now rather than on what was done, but both forms express more or less the same thing – a present state resulting from a completed action.

Your eyes are very puffed up.
" "

The key is in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
" "

Your eyes very puffed up.
" "

The key in the pocket.
-였다 vs. 고 있다 for verbs of wearing/contact

-고 있다 focuses more on how things are now rather than on what was done, but both forms express more or less the same thing – a present state resulting from a completed action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>겨울옷을 입었어요.</td>
<td>She’s wearing winter clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>겨울옷을 입고 있어요.</td>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>등산화를 신었어요.</td>
<td>She’s wearing hiking boots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>등산화를 신고 있어요.</td>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰 가방을 들었다.</td>
<td>He’s holding a big satchel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰 가방을 들고 있다.</td>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-였었

With descriptive verbs, there is generally only a subtle difference between -였 and -였었, with both denoting ‘past state,’ but the latter creates a more distant feeling.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>옛날엔 날씬했(었)어요.</td>
<td>I used to be slender.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올겨울도 추웠지만 작년 겨울은 더 추웠(었)어요.</td>
<td>It was cold this winter, but last winter was even colder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어렸을 때도 똑똑했(었)었는데 지금도 아주 똑똑해.</td>
<td>She was smart when she was little, and she still is very smart.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With action verbs, the difference can be sharper. There, -였었 expresses:

- A more remote past than what is indicated by a single -였, thereby implying an experience prior to a past reference time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>전에 잠깐 만났었어요.</td>
<td>I had met him briefly before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화했을 때 이미 떠났었어요.</td>
<td>I had already left when you called.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16 TENSE AND ASPECT

- Circumstances implying discontinuation of a situation
  
  신혼여행 갔았습니다.  
  결혼을 했었습니다.  
  엄마를 닮았었어요.  
  감기가 걸렸었습니다.  
  잘 알았었습니다.

  They went on their honeymoon, but are back.
  I was married before.
  I used to look like my mom.
  I had a cold.
  I used to know it well.

  신혼여행 갔습니다.  
  결혼을 했습니다.  
  엄마를 닮았어요.  
  감기가 걸렸습니다.  
  잘 알았습니다.

  They went on their honeymoon (and are still gone).
  I got married and still am.
  I look like my mom.
  I have a cold.
  I got it. I understand.

  지난주에 병원에 입원했어요.  
  감기가 걸렸습니다.

  I had been hospitalized last week.
  I have a cold.

  지난주에 병원에 입원했어요.  
  감기가 걸렸습니다.

  I got hospitalized last week (and am still in the hospital).
  I have a cold.

16.1.6 -더, -었더

This form is used for a less assertive retrospective report of a past or continuing action or state (‘I saw…’, ‘I noticed…’, ‘I heard…’), based on a perception, impression, casual observation, or hearsay. It is very commonly used, but only in the spoken style since it presupposes a particular person to speak to. It can occur in either the 해요 or 해 style. (-더 may be pronounced -드 – see 8.3.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>해요 style (존댓말)</th>
<th>해/ style (반말)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-더라구요, -테요, -던테요</td>
<td>-더라, -테, -던테</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>해요</th>
<th>해/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-던가요</td>
<td>-디, -던</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: The -더(요) and -던테(요) endings are often accompanied by rising intonation.

-더 does not occur with the more formal 합니까 style. Expressions such as 갑디다 and 갔음디다, with the -ㅂ/음디다 ending, are old-fashioned and are used only among old folks.

- -더 with either descriptive or action verbs

  코요테 새 노래가 참 신나더라.  
  새 앨범이 5집이던가요?  
  부인이 참 예쁘더라.  
  성격은 별로라던데요.  
  개 공부 진짜 열심히 하더라.

  I noticed Koyote’s new song is very upbeat.
  Was her new album the fifth one?
  His wife is a beauty, I noticed.
  Her personality is not very good, I heard.
  I saw him studying really hard.
이번 시험에는 꼭 합격하겠는데.  
It seemed like he’d definitely pass the test this time.

do서관에 그 책이 없더라구요.  
I noticed the library didn’t have that book.
 오다 보니까 밤에 비가 오네요.  
On my way, I saw it raining hard.
 비가 많이 오디/오던?  
Was it raining hard?
 오늘 못 온다더라.  
I heard that he can’t come today.
 왜 못 온다더라요?.  
Why did he say he can’t come?

The -더 form is inappropriate for a report based on lengthy experience or something that one is sure about. Therefore, it usually is not used to talk about oneself or a close family member. For this reason, the following sentences sound strange.

Unacceptable/strange-sounding
내 동생은 참 말을 안 듣더라.  
My brother never listens, I noticed.
우리 엄마는 요리를 잘 하시더라.  
My mom is a great cook, I noticed.
우리 남편은 정말 착하더라.  
My husband is really nice, I noticed.

However, -더 is perfectly fine for reporting one’s own feelings from one’s own perspective (‘I find/found myself…’).

나는 김치 볶음밥을 잘 만드는 여자가 좋더라.  
I find myself liking women who can make good Kimch'i fried rice.
나는 이런 치마는 잘 안 입게 되더라.  
I find myself not wearing skirts like this.
기가 막혀서 말이 안 나오더라.  
That was so unbelievably ridiculous that I found myself speechless.
너무 맛이 없어서 못 먹겠더라구요.  
It was so bad that I found myself unable to eat it.
기분 나쁘더라. 정말 화가나더라.  
I was upset. I found myself getting really angry.

The -었더 form is NOT used with descriptive verbs in sentence-final position (although it is found on descriptive verbs in non-final positions; see 16.2.2). Hence, we can say 지루하더라 ‘I found it boring,’ 시끄럽더라 ‘It was noisy, I noticed,’ 맛있더라 ‘I found it delicious,’ and so on, but NEVER 지루했더라, 시끄러웠더라, or 맛있었더라.
-었더 is used only with action verbs to report an action/process that is already completed at the time of observation. The following pairs illustrate the contrast between -었더 and -더.

**Example Pairs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean (Past Perfect)</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>밖에 비 왔더다.</td>
<td>I noticed that it had rained.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밖에 비 오더다.</td>
<td>I noticed that it was raining outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어 왔더라구요.</td>
<td>I saw that he had come in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어 오더라구요.</td>
<td>I saw him coming in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장미가 다 시들었더라.</td>
<td>I saw the roses all withered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장미가 시들더라.</td>
<td>I saw the roses withering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼굴이 통통 부었더라구요.</td>
<td>I saw her face all puffed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼굴이 통통 붓더라구요.</td>
<td>I noticed her face was getting all puffy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 16.1.7 -을, -겠

A variety of forms involving -을 (ㄹ after a verb stem ending in a vowel) or -겠 are used to talk about the future, but they are not ‘pure’ future tense markers. Rather, as the following examples show, they are more directly associated with the expression of intention and conjecture, which indirectly evokes the future.

- **-을래(요)** ‘I am going to…; Are you going to…?’
  - 언제 또 만날래?  
    - When are you meeting him again?  
  - 그 사람 이제 그만 만날래요.  
    - I’m going to stop meeting him from now on.  

- **-을게(요)** ‘I will…; Let me…’
  - 숙제 꼭 낼게요.  
    - I’ll be sure to turn in the homework.  
  - 제가 도와 드릴게요.  
    - Let me help you.  

- **-을까(요)**? ‘Shall I/we…; Will you/(s)he …I wonder?’
  - 제가 언제 들을까요?  
    - Shall I drop by sometime?  
  - 다음달까지 끝낼 수 있을까요?  
    - Will we be able to finish it by next month?  
  - 너희들끼리 갈 수 있을까?  
    - Will you be able to go by yourselves?  
  - 그 친구들이 파티에 올까요?  
    - Will they come to the party, I wonder?  
  - 내일 정말 눈이 올까?  
    - Will it really snow tomorrow?  

- **-았을까(요)** ‘Will you/(s)he have…-ed?; I wonder whether…’
  - 그 친구 지금쯤 도착했을까?  
    - Will he have arrived by now?  
  - 서운했을까요?  
    - I wonder whether she was upset.  

- **-을 거, -겠** ‘I will…; Will you…?; You /(s)he… will probably…’
  - 목요일쯤 떠날 거예요.  
    - I’ll leave around Thursday.  
  - 오전에 떠나실 겁니까?  
    - Will you be leaving in the morning?
이제 괜찮을 거예요.  You’ll probably be okay now.
자주 연락 드리겠습니까.  I’ll be in touch often.
엄마가 기다리시겠다.  Mom must be waiting for us.

• -었을 것, -겠겠 (Conjecture about a past/completed event or state)

A: 이제 다 고쳤겠지요?  I guess they’ve fixed it by now?
B: 아직 못 고쳤을 거예요.  I doubt that they have.
A: 표 사느라고 힘들었겠지?  I bet it was difficult to buy the ticket, right?
B: 많이 힘들었을 거야.  I’m sure it was.

-을게요 (promissory) vs. -을 거예요 (plan): ‘I will…’

To someone who will be waiting for your call, you say 전화할게요, but to others you say 전화할 거예요. -을게요 is used if the speaker’s intentions are in any way the listener’s personal concern. To your mother or spouse, who is concerned about your health, you promise with 담배 끊을게 ‘I promise I will quit smoking.’ To most others, you would simply talk about your plan by saying 담배 끊을 거야 ‘I’m going to quit smoking.’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>16.1.8  -을 거 versus -겠</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When used to express conjecture, the two forms can differ in meaning. -을 거 is for conjecture based on knowledge, reasoning, factual support, or substantial evidence, while -겠 indicates conjecture based on feelings, emotions, casual judgment, or circumstantial evidence.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 고추 매울 거예요. 내가 먹어봤어요.  These peppers will be hot. I tried them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>색깔 보니까 고추가 맵겠어요.  Their color tells me that the peppers are going to be hot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일기예보에서 오늘 비 올 거래요.  The weather forecast says it’ll rain today.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하늘 보니까 비 오겠어요.  The look of the sky tells me that it’s going to rain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-겠 is often used to express sympathy or concern, but -을 거 is used for neutral and objective information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sympathy/concern</th>
<th>Neutral guess/conjecture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>피곤하시겠어요.  You must be tired.</td>
<td>피곤하실 거예요.  You’ll be tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화비 많이 나오겠네요.  Your phone bill will be large, I’m afraid.</td>
<td>전화비 많이 나올 거예요.  Your phone bill will be large.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sympathy/concern

He must have been late for class.

He was probably late for class.

Eat slowly, you’re going to get sick.

You’re going to catch a cold, be careful.

Questions containing -겠 are often answered with the -을 거 form.

A: 이 정도 갖고 되겠어요?  Will this much be enough?
B: 될 거예요.  It’ll be enough.

16.1.9 Only -겠, not -을 거

Unlike -을 거, which is mostly used to express a neutral intention/conjecture, -겠 often expresses a variety of other things, including the following.

- Courteous requests/questions

Would you sit down, please?

Would you like to order?

What would you like to drink?

NOTE: Less formally, one could say: 앉으실래요, 주문하실래요, etc.

- Courteous promise

I’ll call again.

I’ll enjoy the food.

NOTE: Less formally, one could say: 전화 드릴게요, 먹을게요, etc.

- Other courteous/formulaic expressions

How do you do?

Excuse me. (when entering a place)

Let me stop here. (in letter writing)

I’ll be grateful if you come back later today.

I understand.

- Formal reports in weather forecasts or meetings

Tomorrow’s daytime temperature will be like today’s.

There will be a welcoming speech from the president of the university.

In a moment, we’ll give you the entertainment news.
• Ability/possibility
이 거 다 먹겠니?
Will you be able to eat it all?
그 사람이 이 시간에 밥이나 집에 있겠지?
Fat chance that he’ll be home at this time.
설마 지금껏 안 먹었겠어요?
Could he still not have eaten? (I doubt it.)
누가 일이 이렇게 나빠질지 알았겠어요?
Who would have known that things will get this bad?

• Hypothetical/idiomatic expressions
졸려 죽겠다/미치겠다.
My eyelids feel so heavy that I’m dying/going crazy.
집에 전화가 없어서 답답해 몇 살겠다.
Having no phone in the house drives me so crazy that I can’t stand it.
너무 웃어서 배꼽 빠지겠다.
My stomach hurts [my belly button is going to come out] from laughing too much.
음식을 많이 차려서 상다리 부러지겠어요.
You prepared so much food that we might need a bigger table
[this table is going to break].
웬일이야? 내일은 해가 서쪽에서 떠겠다.
What’s going on? The sun will rise in the west tomorrow.
(to indicate something unexpected but good has happened)
좀 조용히 얘기 해. 귀청 떨어지겠다.
Talk quietly please. You are deafening me [my ear(drums) will fall out].
왜 한숨을 폭폭 쉬고 그래? 땅 깊지겠다.
Why do you keep sighing so deeply? The ground might sink.
별 상식 없는 사람 다 보겠네요.
What a person lacking in common sense he is.
16.2 Tense and aspect on non-final verbs

This section focuses on whether a verb in non-final position is marked separately for tense/aspect and, when it is, how its interpretation relates to the tense/aspect of the final verb.

16.2.1 Conjunctive constructions (see ch. 21)

Here, there are two possibilities.

- The internal verb is not marked for tense/aspect, but relies on the final verb for its interpretation.

비 오기 전에 왔어요. 
I came before it rained.
그동안 책 쓰느라고 바빴어요.
I’ve been busy writing a book for a while.
운전하면서 먹을 거예요.
I’ll eat while I drive.
눕자마자 잠이 들었어요.
I fell asleep as soon as I lay down.
사워하는데 전화가 왔어요.
The phone call came as I was taking a shower.
비행기표 사서 보내 줄게.
I’ll buy the air ticket and send it to you.
눈이 많이 왔어 비행기가 지연됐어요.
It snowed a lot, so the airplane got delayed.

- Both verbs carry tense/aspect.

눈이 많이 왔기 때문에 비행기가 지연됐어요.
Because it snowed a lot, the airplane got delayed.
기분이 몰시 나빴지만 꿈 참았어요.
I patiently held my feelings in, although I was very upset.
저녁에 외식할 거니까 일찍 들어 와.
Come home early because we’re going to eat out this evening.

Tense/aspect marking on the inner verb in patterns such as the following dramatically changes the meaning of the sentence.

학교에 갔다가 서점에 들렀어요. 
I went to school, then dropped by a bookstore.
학교에 가다가 서점에 들렀어요.
On the way to school I dropped by a bookstore.

16.2.2 Adnominal constructions

The adnominal suffixes (-는, -은, -던, -을, etc.) that connect a clause with a noun also provide information about tense/aspect. (See 22.2 for more on adnominal expressions.)
-는 is used to indicate:

- With action verbs and compound 있다/없다 verbs: Present tense or simultaneity with the event in the main clause.

- 옆집에 사는 사람을 만났다. I met a person who lives next door.
- 사고나는 장면을 목격했습니다. I witnessed the accident taking place.
- 일리있는 말을 했어요. He said something that has a good point.
- 전례없는 일입니다. It’s something without precedent.

- Fixed expressions

- 쉬는 시간 break (time)
- 먹는 물 drinking water
- 택시타는 곳 taxi stop

-은 (or -) is used to indicate:

- With descriptive verbs: Present state

- 따끈한 차 hot tea
- 작은 소망 humble wish
- 차가운 냉수 cold water
- 군인인 너 you who are in the military

- With most action verbs: Past tense, or a time prior to the event in the main clause.

- 여행가서 찍은 사진이야. These are photos that I took when I went on a trip.
- 한 달 전에 부친 소포가 어제야 도착했어요. The package that they mailed a month ago arrived just yesterday.
- 이미 본 영화를 또 빌려 왔어요. He rented a movie that we had already seen.

- With some action verbs that denote a process: Present state resulting from a completed process.

- 젖은 수건 wet towel
- 잘 익은 복숭아 well-ripened peach
- 불어 떨어진 라면 totally soggy ramen
- 살찐 고양이 fat cat
- 화난 사람 angry person
- 감기 걸린 사람 person who has a cold

- With verbs of wearing/contact: Present state resulting from a completed action.

- 안경을 쳐한 학생 the student who is wearing glasses
- 파란 우산을 든 꼬마 the kid who is holding a blue umbrella
- 체크남방에 청바지를 입은 남자 the man who is wearing a plaid shirt with blue jeans
-던 and -었던 are used to indicate:

- With descriptive verbs: -던 is used for a situation that continued for a while but has changed; -었던 represents the past state at a certain point of time. There is only a subtle difference between the two forms.

착하던/착했던 친구가 많이 변했다.

The friend who used to be nice has changed a lot.

물은 안 갈아 줬더니 예쁘던/예뻤던 꽃이 다 시들었다.

I didn’t change their water, so the flowers that used to be beautiful are all withered.

- With action verbs: -던 represents a past habit or a suspended action. In contrast, -되었던 indicates a completed action from a retrospective viewpoint. In the following cases, the difference can be subtle.

예전에 살던/살았던 집이에요.

That’s the house where I used to live.

내가 다니던/다녔던 학교야.

That’s the school that I used to attend.

전에 좋아하던/좋았던 노래다.

That’s the song that I used to like.

Depending on the nature of the verb, however, -던 may indicate a temporarily suspended action and -되었던 may indicate a one-time only event.

친구들과 만나던/만났던 카페

the café where I used to meet with friends

친구들과 만났던 카페

the café where I had met with friends once before

빨간 옷을 입던 친구

the friend who used to wear red clothes

빨간 옷을 입었던 친구

the friend who had worn red clothes once before

내가 먹던 사과

the apple I was eating (but temporarily stopped)

내가 먹었던 사과

the apple I had eaten before

NOTE: Regardless of the verb type, both -던 and -되었던 denote only a past habit if the verb occurs with 즐겨.

내가 즐겨 먹던 사과

apples I used to enjoy eating

친구들과 즐겨 만난던 카페

the café where I used to enjoy meeting friends

빨간 옷을 즐겨 입었던 친구

the friend who used to enjoy wearing red clothes

-을 (or ㄹ) is used to indicate:

- A future event with respect to the event denoted by the final verb

피자 먹을 사람은 이리로 모여.

Gather here, those who are going to eat pizza.

오늘 별 시험 준비를 하고 있었어요.

I was preparing for an exam to be taken today.
• Fixed expressions

볼 일 things to take care of  갑 시간 time for bed
먹을 거 things to eat  죽을 고생 hell of a difficult experience

• Intention or conjecture

두 달 안에 끝마칠 계획입니다. I’m planning to finish in two months.
아무래도 늦을 모양이에요. It looks like he’s probably going to be late.
올 사람은 다른 것 같습니다. I think everyone who’s coming came.

-었을 (or 있을) is used to indicate:

• Conjecture about a past event that has not been verified

어제쯤 도착했을 편지가 왜 아직 안 온까요? I wonder why the letter that should have arrived by yesterday is not here yet.
병원에 갔으면 하루 만에 나았을 병이야. It’s a sickness that would have been healed in a day if you had gone to the hospital.

Special case: -을 때 vs. -었을 때 ‘when…’
-을 때: simultaneous with the action in the main clause
-었을 때: completed prior to the action in the main clause

어제 백화점에 갔을 때 고등학교 동창을 만났다. I ran into my high school friend when I went to the department store yesterday.
어제 백화점에 갔을 때 고등학교 동창을 만났다. I ran into my high school friend on my way to the department store yesterday.

지난번에 올 때 아무 것도 안 사 갖고 왔어요. Last time when I was coming, I didn’t bring anything.
지난번에 왔을 때 집에 아무도 없었어요. Last time when I came, there was no one at home.

16.3 More aspect-related contrasts

A variety of important aspect-related contrasts are marked by suffixes, auxiliary verbs, or a combination of the two.

16.3.1 Beginning/changing into

• -기 시작하다 ‘begin’

비가 내리기 시작한다. It’s beginning to rain.
태권도를 배우기 시작했어요. I began learning t'aekwŏndo.
16 TENSE AND ASPECT

- **-게 되다** ‘become; come to’

친하던 친구하고 사이가 서먹서먹하게 됐어요.
My relationship with my once close friend became awkward.
무서워하던 선생님을 좋아하게 됐다.
I came to like the teacher that I once feared.

- **-어지다** ‘become’

해가 점점 길어진다.
The days are getting gradually longer.
허리가 많이 가늘어졌다.
Your waist has become very slender.
십년은 더 젖어지긴 거 같아요.
You look like you’ve gotten at least 10 years younger.

16.3.2 Continuation

- **-어 가다** ‘gradually (from present to future)’

밥이 다 돼 간다.
The rice is getting almost done.
사랑이 식어 간다.
Our love is gradually cooling off.
살아 가다 보면 좋은 날이 올거야.
If you keep on living, better days will come.
회사가 쓰러져 간대요.
They say the company is gradually collapsing.

- **-어 오다** ‘gradually (from past to present)’

슬슬 배가 고파 온다.
I’m gradually getting hungry.
지금까지 잘 참아 왔어요.
We’ve stood up well until now.

16.3.3 Completion

- **-고 나오다** ‘have finished’

한참 자고 나면 괜찮을 거야.
You’ll feel better after taking a nap.
다들 떠나고 나니까 빈집같다.
The house feels empty after everyone has left.
방부터 치우고 나서 공부해야지.
I better clean the room first before I study.

- **-고 말다** ‘finally end up doing’

결국 들건고 말았어.
I ended up getting caught.
물고기가 끝내 죽고 말았어요.
The fish ended up dying in the end.
i이 일은 반드시 해내고 말거야.
I’m going to complete this no matter what.

- **-어 날다** ‘make it all the way; manage to complete’

수술 후 통증이 심했을 텐데 잘 견디 냈어.
The pain after your surgery must have been bad, but you did a good job managing it.
I wonder whether I’ll be able to manage to complete the assigned mission.

We must find the criminal at all costs.

- 어 치우다 ‘get rid of completely’
  단숨에 숙제를 해 치웠다.  
  I dashed through my homework.
  어제 남은 음식을 먹어 치웠어요.  
  I ate up all the leftovers from yesterday.
  그렇게 무능한 사람은 갈아 치워.  
  Get rid of such an incompetent person.

- 어 버리다 ‘do completely (to one’s regret or relief)’
  어떡해요? 비행기를 놓쳐 버렸어요.  
  What should I do? I missed my plane.
  아이스크림이 다 녹아 버렸다.  
  The ice cream melted completely.
  그렇게 경 우 없는 사람은 그냥 무시해 버리세요.  
  Just completely ignore such a rude person.
  나쁜 기억은 썩 지워 버리는 게 건강에 좋아요.  
  It’s healthy to completely erase bad memories.

16.3.4 Completion followed by an enduring result

- 어 놓다, 어 두다 ‘complete something (and keep the resulting state)’
  With 놓다 the emphasis is on the completion of an action, whereas with 두다 it is on the purposeful retention of the result of an action.
  비행기표를 미리 예약해 놓으켜 둘까?
  Shall I make a reservation for the airline ticket in advance?
  컴퓨터 그냥 켜 놓으세요/두세요.  
  Just leave the computer on, please.
  이따 배고플테니까 지금 많이 먹어 봄/둬. (나 < 놓아)
  Eat big now, since you’ll be hungry later.
  차를 길에 세워 놓고/두고 어디 갔어?
  Where did he go, with his car parked in the driveway?
  세일할 때 많이 사 놓으려구요/두려구요.  
  I’m trying to stock up on things when there’s a sale.
  빨래는 비눗물에 담가 놓으세요/두세요.  
  Keep the laundry soaking in the soapy water.
• -어 놓다 only (with exclusive focus on the completion of an action)
   강아지가 신발을 물어뜯어 놓았어요.
   *The puppy has chewed up my shoes.*
   뱅소니 운전사가 사고쳐 놓고 도망갔어요.
   *A hit-and-run driver had an accident and ran away.*
   그 친구가 거의 다 된 일을 망쳐 놓았어.
   *He ruined the work that was almost finished.*
   내일까지 고쳐 놓겠대요.
   *They said they’ll fix it by tomorrow.*
   간다고 약속해 놓고 이제 와서 만소리하면 어떡해?
   *How can you change your mind now, after you promised to go?*

• -어 두다 only
   그냥 자게 내버려 두세요.
   *Just leave him alone so he can sleep.*
   다시한 번 말해 두겠는데 다음부터는 늦지 않는 게 좋을 거다.
   *Let me tell you once again: You better not be late from now on.*

16.3.5 Experience

• -어 보다 ‘try’
   이 안경을 한 번 써 보세요.
   *Try these glasses on.*
   그 음식점에 저도 가 봤어요.
   *I’ve been to the restaurant too.*

• -는/은 적이 있다 or 없다 ‘have an (or no) experience of’ (일 can replace 적.)
   가끔 학교버스를 놓치는 일이 있습니다.
   *I sometimes miss the school bus.*
   밥은 한번도 굶은 적이 없어요.
   *When it comes to a meal, I’ve never skipped one.*
   택시 탔다가 바가지 쓴 적이 한두 번이 아니야.
   *This is not the first time I took a taxi and got ripped off.*
   고속도로에서 운전하다가 타이어가 터진 일이 있다.
   *I once got a flat tire while driving down the highway.*

• -어 본 역사를 없다 ‘never experienced (emphatic)’
   평생 거짓말은 해 본 역사를 없다.
   *I have no history of lying.*
   그런 말은 들어 본 역사를 없어.
   *I’ve never heard of such a thing.*
   복권에 당첨 돈 본 역사를 없어요.
   *Never in my life have I won a lottery.*
16.3.6 Habit

- 곧하다 ‘usually do; used to’

스트레스가 쌓이면 운동을 하곤 합니다.  
I usually exercise whenever I get stressed.
외로울 때 혼자서 바닷가에 가곤 했다.  
Whenever I felt lonely, I used to go to the ocean by myself.

- 어 버릇하다 ‘make a habit of’

이제부터 아침에 일찍 일어나 버릇을 해야겠어요.  
I think from now on I should make a habit of getting up early in the morning.
잘 못하는 일도 자꾸 하버릇하면 잘하게 돼.  
If you keep doing something that you may not be good at, you’ll become good at it.

16.3.7 Repetition

- 어 대다 ‘do continuously’

그렇게 떠들어 대니 목이 안 쉴 수가 없지.  
How can your voice not go hoarse when you babble on like that?
스키장 가자고 졸라 대는 바람에 할 수 없이 갔다 왔어요.  
I had no choice but to take them skiing because they were pestering me for it.

- 어 쌓다 ‘repeat excessively’

아이가 계속 울어 쌓는다.  
The child is crying non-stop.
정말 잘 먹어 쌓는다.  
You really do keep eating.
Modality involves information about a wide range of contrasts that reflect speakers’ attitudes and intentions. Like tense and aspect, modality is expressed with the help of verbal inflection and/or auxiliary verbs.

17.1 Requests, suggestions, permission, and prohibition

17.1.1 Requests

- **어(라) (commands)**
  
  제발 방 주문 좀 해라.
  
  Get the room organized, please.
  
  여기 망치소면 하나하고 소주 한 병 주세요.
  
  We’d like one order of octopus noodles and a bottle of soju.

- **(좀) -어 줄래 (Please) … for me**
  
  내일 아침 7시에 좀 깨워 줘요.
  
  Please wake me up at 7 a.m. tomorrow morning.
  
  학교 정문 앞에 세워 주세요.
  
  Please drop me off right in front of school.

- **-면 한다/고맙겠다/감사하겠습니다 ‘It would be nice if you…’**
  
  아빠, 저 돈 좀 부쳐 주셨으면 하는데요.
  
  Dad, can you send me some money?
  
  다음부터는 시간을 꼭 지켜 주시겠어요.
  
  It would be nice if you are punctual in the future.

- **( 좀 ) -어 줄래/주시겠어요 ‘Would you …for me?’**
  
  여자 향수 좀 보여 주실래요?
  
  Would you show me women’s perfumes?
  
  밥 한 공기 추가하고 물 좀 갖다 주시겠어요?
  
  Would you bring me another bowl of rice and some water?

- **( 좀 ) -어 주실 수 있을까요? ‘Would it be possible to…for me?’**
  
  죄송하지만, 라디오 소리 좀 줄여 주실 수 있을까요?
  
  Excuse me, but would it be possible to turn down the radio for me?
  
  너무 비싼데 좀 까야 주실 수 있어요?
  
  It’s too expensive for me; can you give me a discount?
17.1.2 Suggestions (advice/instructions)

- 는 게 어때? ‘How about…?’
  - 지도에서 찾아보는 게 어때? How about looking it up on the map?
  - 저녁값은 각자 내는 게 어릴까요? How about going Dutch on the dinner?
  - 한번 더 만나보는 게 어떻겠니? How about meeting him one more time?

- 지 그래? ‘Why don’t you…?’
  - 신문에 구인광고를 내지 그래? Why don’t you put out the want ad?
  - 병원에 좀 가 보지 그래세요? Why don’t you go to the hospital?

- 을 필요/거 없다 ‘No need to…’
  - 치료 받을 필요 없어요. I don’t need any medical treatment.
  - 너무 신경쓸 거 없어. No need to be concerned so much.

- 면 된다 ‘All you need is to…’
  (Be careful not to use this pattern to ask for permission! See the following box.)
  - 관리비는 이 달 말일 안으로 입금하시면 됩니다. You can pay the maintenance fee at the bank before the end of this month.
  - 김치찌개는 김치하고 돼지고기를 썰어 넣고 그냥 끓이면 됩니다. All you need for Kimch'i stew is to put in chopped up Kimch'i and pork, and just boil them.

- 도록 해 ‘Make sure that…’
  - 앞으로는 좀 더 일찍 일어나도록 해. Make sure that you get up a bit earlier from now on.
  - 출근 시간에 절대 늦지 않도록 하세요. Make sure that you are never late for your work in the morning.

- 을 것 (in written instructions)
  - 신분증을 반드시 지참할 것. You must carry your ID.
  - 모든 서류를 다음 주 월요일까지 제출할 것. All documents must be submitted by next Monday.

17.1.3 Permission

- 어도 된다/괜찮다 ‘may; can’
  - 좀 잔여 봐도 돼요? May I try these (clothes) on?
  - 반말해도 괜찮아. You can be casual when you talk with me.
  - 미리 예약하지 않아도 돼니까? Is it okay for us not to make a reservation in advance?
### The difference between -어도 된다 and -면 된다

English speakers tend to use the -면 된다 pattern to ask for permission, but that is a mistake. To ask for permission to go to the restroom, 화장실 가도돼요? should be used, NOT 화장실 가면 돼요? -면 된다 is employed for instructions or directions – 비오면 연기하면 돼 ‘you can postpone if it rains,’ 시청가려면 여기서 좌회전하시면 됩니다 ‘To go to the city hall, you should make a left turn here.’ It may also be used to request confirmation of what you are required to do (수요일까지 내면 돼요? ‘Will it do if I submit it by Wednesday?’). To ask for permission to be late, you should say 금요일까지 내도 돼요? ‘May I submit it by Friday?’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODALITY</th>
<th>SITUATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-면 안 돼요? ‘Would it be not okay if…?’</td>
<td>장례식에 안 가면 안 돼요? Can I not go to the funeral?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>합석 좀 하면서 안 될까요? Could you share the table with (others)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-을 수 있을까요? ‘Will it be possible…?’</td>
<td>전화 좀 쓸 수 있을까요? May I use the phone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>같이 좀 앉을 수 있을까요? May I sit with you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17.1.4 Prohibition

- 지 마 ‘Don’t…’
  - 다시는 나한테 전화하지 마. Don’t ever call me again.
  - 너무 긴장하지 마세요. Don’t be too nervous.

- 번 안 된다 ‘You must not…’
  - 진통제를 과용하지 마. You must not overuse pain killers.
  - 여기서 좌회전하면 안 돼요. You cannot make a left turn here.

- 어선 안 된다 ‘You should not…’
  - 한약 드는 동안 돼지고기를 입에 대서선 안 돼요. You should not eat pork while you’re taking Chinese medicine.
  - 이 말은 절대 아무한테도 해선 안 돼요. You must not tell anyone this.

- 을 수 없다 ‘You are not allowed to…’
  - 박물관내에서 사진 찍을 수 없습니다. You are not allowed to take pictures in the museum.
  - 이 곳에서는 수영할 수 없습니다. Swimming is prohibited here.
  - 도서관 안에서는 음식을 먹을 수 없습니다. You are not allowed to eat in the library.
17.2  Obligation, ability, and possibility

The dividing lines for obligation, ability, and possibility are not always clear-cut, so there may be some overlap in the examples that follow.

17.2.1  Obligation (necessity)

• -어야 한다/된다 ‘must; have to’
  항상 다른 사람의 말을 경청해야 한다.
  \textit{One must always listen when other people speak.}
  백불 갖고 일주일을 살아야 돼요.
  \textit{I must survive on 100 dollars this week.}
  당분간 허리띠 졸라매야(되)겠어요.
  \textit{We’ll have to tighten our belts for the time being.}

• -지 않으면 (or 안-면) 안 된다 ‘must; have to’
  을 안으로 취직하지 않으면 안 돼요.
  \textit{I must find a job before the year is over.}
  나는 하루도 커피를 안 마시면 안 돼.
  \textit{I have to have coffee every single day.}

• -지 않으면 수가 (or 안-을 수가) 없다 ‘have no choice but to’
  도움을 청하지 않을 수가 없었어요.
  \textit{I had no choice but to ask for his help.}
  잔소리를 안 할래야 도저히 안 할 수가 없어요.
  \textit{I can’t possibly help but complain, even if I try not to.}

• -는/을 수밖에 없다 ‘have no choice but to’
  아무래도 직장을 그만두는 수밖에 없다.
  \textit{I have no choice other than to quit the job.}
  방세가 너무 비싸서 아파트를 옮기는 수밖에 없겠어요.
  \textit{The rent is too expensive, so we’ll have no choice other than to move to a different apartment.}
  도움을 청할 수밖에 없었어요.
  \textit{I had no choice but to ask for his help.}

17.2.2  Ability

• -을 수 있다 ‘can; be able to’
  왼손으로 테니스 칠 수 있어?
  \textit{Can you play tennis with your left hand?}
  마감일까지 제출할 수 있을까요?
  \textit{Will we be able to submit it by the deadline?}
제가 도울 수 있는 한 최선을 다해 도와 드리겠습니다.

*I’ll help you as best I can.*

할 수 있는 대로 교통이 편리한 집을 구하려고 해요.

*As far as possible, I’m trying to find a place with an easy commute.*

- 못- ‘cannot; be unable to’

아기가 아직 못 걸어요.

*The baby can’t walk yet.*

수영은 할 수 있는데 골프는 잘 못 차요.

*I can swim, but I can’t play golf well.*

NOTE: Inability is usually expressed by 못-; -을 수 없다 is used for prohibition or impossibility rather than inability (see 17.1.4 & 17.2.3).

- 을 줄 안다/모른다 ‘know how to…’

김치 담글 줄 아세요?

*Do you know how to make Kimch’i?*

어떻게 너는 먹을 줄만 알고 요리할 줄은 모르니?

*How come you only know how to eat, but not how to cook?*

운전은 할 줄 알지만 길을 잘 몰라요.

*I know how to drive, but I’m not good with directions.*

17.2.3 Possibility

- 수(가) 있다/없다 ‘There is a/no possibility…’

제 꾸에 제가 넘어 가는 수가 있다.

*It’s possible to be outwitted by one’s own cleverness.*

어떻게 그럴 수가 있어? 있을 수 없는 일이다.

*How can it be? It’s impossible.*

표가 매진돼서 할 수 없이 내일 표를 예약했어요.

*Tickets were sold out, so I had no choice but to reserve one for tomorrow.*

방문이 열리지 않아서 볼 수 없이 창문으로 들어 갔다.

*The bedroom door wouldn’t open, so I had no choice but to go in through the window.*

-지도 모른다 ‘may; be possible’

그 소문이 맞는지도 모른다.  

*That rumor may be true.*

남자친구가 아닐지도 모른다.  

*He may not be a boyfriend.*

여행갔는지도 모른다.  

*She might have gone on a trip.*
17.3 Regret, desire, and doubt

17.3.1 Regret

• -었어야 한다/있다 ‘should have…’

전작 병원에 갔어야 해요.
You should have seen a doctor much earlier.

밤늦게 커피를 마시지 말았어야 되는데…
I shouldn’t have had coffee late at night.

못 오면 못 온다고 얘기할 때 해야 하지.
If you couldn’t come, you should have told me so.

• -을걸 (그랬다) ‘I wish I had…’

엄마한테 좀 더 잘해 드릴걸 그랬어요.
I wish I had been a better daughter to my Mom.

사랑한다고 고백할걸.
I wish I had confessed to her that I love her.

규칙적으로 건강검진을 받았더라면 좋았을걸.
I wish I had gotten regular health check-ups.

• -지 (그랬어) ‘I wish you had…’

여행가서 사진 좀 많이 찍지 (그랬어).
I wish you had taken more pictures during the trip.

곧바로 경찰에 신고를 하지 그랬어.
You should have made a report to the police immediately.

• -면 -있었을텐데 ‘would have…if …’

내가 미리 알았으면 무슨 조치를 취했을텐데.
I would have taken some measures if I had known about it in advance.

차라리 아무 것도 몰랐으면 좋았을텐데.
I’d rather have known nothing about it.

• -는 건데 … ‘should have…’

길을 묻어보고 가는 건데 잘못했어.
It’s my mistake. I should have asked for directions beforehand.
작년에 운전면허 시험을 보는 건데 그랬어. 그 때 봤어야 하는 건데.
I should’ve taken the driver’s license exam last year. I should’ve taken it then.

• -게 아니는데 ‘shouldn’t have…’
술 마시고 운전하는 게 아니는데.
I shouldn’t have driven a car after drinking.
잘 자리에 그렇게 많이 먹는 게 아니었는데.
I shouldn’t have eaten so much right before going to bed.

17.3.2 Desire (wish)
• -고 싶다, -고 싶어한다  ‘would like to; want’
어떤 집에서 살고 싶니?
What kind of house would you like to live in?
정원이 크고 바다가 보이는 집에서 살고 싶어.
I want to live in a house with a big yard and an ocean view.
내 동생은 가수가 되고 싶어한다.
My younger brother wants to become a singer.
• -었으면 좋겠다/한다  ‘It would be nice if…’
평생 하와이에서 살았으면 좋겠다.
It would be nice to live in Hawaii forever.
전공을 바꿨으면 합니다.
I think I would like to change my major.
잠 좀 실컷 잔으면 원이 없겠다.
I wouldn’t have any other wish if I could sleep as much as I like.

17.3.3 Doubt
• -을라고?
설마 지금까지 안 먹었을라고?
I strongly doubt that they haven’t eaten until now. (How can they not have?)
그런 잉꼬부부가 설마 부부싸움을 할라고요?
I doubt that such a happily married [macaw] couple fight – surely they don’t.

17.4 Degree

17.4.1 ‘Nearly/almost’
• -을 뻔했다  ‘almost happened’
어젯밤에 더워서 미칠 뻔했어.
It was so hot last night that I almost went insane.
고기 굽다가 하마터면 화상을 입을 뻔했어요.
I almost got burnt while barbecuing the meat.

- 을락 말락 한다 ‘almost happening’
  머리가 천장에 닿을락 말락 한다. Your head is almost touching the ceiling.
  속치마가 보일락 말락 해. Your slip is almost showing.

- 다시피 했다 ‘became close to…’
  차 사고로 거의 죽다가 다시피 했다.
  She’s near death due to a car accident.
  부도로 인해 회사가 거의 파산하다시피 했습니다.
  The company is close to bankruptcy due to the bounced payment.

- 다시피 한다 ‘almost as if…’
  완전히 집 드나들다가 다시피 하는구나.
  He goes in and out of this place like it’s his own house.
  일년을 도서관에서 살다가 다시피 했어.
  I almost lived in the library for a year.

17.4.2 Deserving quality

- 을 만하다
  요즘 볼 만한 영화가 뭐 있어요?
  Are there any good movies (worth seeing) lately?
  그 식당 부페가 먹을 만하다는데요.
  I tried that restaurant buffet; it was quite good (well worth trying it).
  그런 행동을 하다니 비난받을 만하네요.
  They deserve to be criticized for behaving like that.
  힘든 좀 들지만 그럭저럭 견딜 만해요.
  It’s a bit tough but somehow manageable. I’m okay handling it.

17.5 Evidentiality

A variety of verb forms are used to indicate how speakers have come to think or know what they say or report and how committed they are to its truth. Use of these forms allows speakers to strengthen or soften the impact of their statements and to distance themselves from what they say.

17.5.1 They say... (hearsay)

Because the information is ‘second-hand,’ the speaker is not responsible for whether it is true. (See 22.1 for quoted clauses.)
• - démarche, - 다녀다(구요), - 답니다

기름값이 또 올랐단다.  They say that the price of gas went up again.
요새 부동산 경기가 안 좋대요.  I hear that the real estate market is slow these days.
부인이 많이 아프더더.  I heard that his wife is very sick.
위암이라더라구요.  They say it’s stomach cancer.
항암치료를 받고 있답니다.  I heard that she’s receiving chemotherapy.

17.5.2 Seems like; feels like; I think...

The following forms can express a guess or opinion in a less assertive way.

• - 거 같다

성격이 괴팍해서 친구들하고 잘 못 어울리는 거 같아요.  It seems like he’s so picky that he doesn’t get along with his friends.
아무래도 핸드폰을 잃어버린 거 같다.  I think I lost my cell phone.
말은 안 해도 많이 힘들었던 거 같아요.  It seems like she had a tough time even though she doesn’t talk about it.
경기가 무승부로 끝날 거 같은데요.  I bet that the game will end in a tie.

• - 돼 하다/싶다

(less commonly used than - 거 같다; often employed in written language)

눈이 충혈되고 눈꼽이 건걸 보니 결막염에 걸린 듯합니다.  Looking at your red and runny eyes, it seems like you might have conjunctivitis.
자꾸 멀미가 날 듯 해서 더이상 운전 못하겠다.  I don’t think I can drive any more because I feel like I’m getting car-sick.
절대적인 의미의 남녀평등이란 불가능할 듯 싶다.  I think that equality between men and women in the absolute sense may be impossible.

• - 지 싶다, - 을까 싶다

좀 늦어도 괜찮지 싶어.  I think it might be okay to be a little bit late.
범세 도착했지 싶은데 모르겠다.  I think they already arrived, although I’m not sure.
어제 소개팅한 남자한테서 전화가 오지 않으니까 싶은데.  I feel like I may be getting a phone call from the guy who I met on a blind date yesterday.
17.5.3  Looks like; appears; I get the impression that...

The following forms are somewhat more assertive than the preceding ones because their use presupposes some type of observable evidence.

-나 보다, -은가 보다

 엄마 설겼이 하시나 봐.  Looks like Mom is doing the dishes.
결혼할 사람이나 보다.  Looks like he’s her fiancé.
사실 깨 어려운가 봐요.  It looks like she’s not doing well financially.
어디 외쳤나 보다.  Looks like they went out somewhere.
시험 문제가 어려웠나 봐.  It looks like the exam questions were tough.

NOTE: In the present tense, action verbs usually occur with -나 보다 (자나 보다) and descriptive verbs with -은가 보다 (작은가 보다); in the past tense, both types of verbs occur with -나 보다 (toISOString 보다, 작았나 보다).

-어 보인다 (based on immediate sensory experience)

 빵이 맛있어 보인다.  The bread looks delicious.
나이에 비해 젊어 보여요.  He looks young for his age.
좀 외로워 보였어요.  She looked a little lonely.

NOTE: This is used only with descriptive verbs.

-저게 생겼다 (based on subjective judgments)

 천상 처음부터 일을 다시 하게 생겼다.  Looks like we’ll have to start all over again.
 일이 이렇게 많으니 밤새우게 생겼네요.  With this much work, it looks like we’ll have to stay all night.
 입장 곤란하게 생겼어.  Looks like I’ll be put in a difficult position.

 마음씨 좋게 생겼다.  He appears to have a kind heart.

-모양이다  (based on indirect evidence, including appearance or second-hand information)

 상대가 마음에 안 드는 모양이야.  Looks like he doesn’t like her date.
 지금 막 끝난 모양이에요.  It looks like it’s just finished.
 아예 안 올 모양이다.  Looks like he’s not coming at all.
 피곤한 모양이에요.  It looks like he’s tired.
무척 바빴던 모양입니다.  It looks like she was very busy.

-겠다 (see 16.1.8)

 이 사과는 색깔 보니가 정말 맛있겠어요.  I bet this apple is delicious, looking at its color.
어제 늦게까지 일하느라 피곤했겠다.
You must have been tired working till late last night.

17.5.4 *I am almost certain...; probably...*

The following forms imply a fairly reliable source or a general belief that one concurs with. For this reason, they are relatively assertive.

- **을 거다** (see 16.1.8)
  아무리 설득해 봐도 소용없을 거다.
  *It’ll probably be useless to try to persuade her.*
  성수기에 비행기표 구하기가 힘들 거예요.
  *I’m pretty sure that it’ll be hard to find a plane ticket during peak travel season.*

- **을 텐데**
  교통이 복잡할 텐데 지하철 타고 가세요.
  *I’m sure the traffic is heavy, so take the subway.*
  결혼 준비하느라 바쁜데 이번 프로젝트에 너무 신경쓰지 마세요.
  *You must be busy with your wedding preparations, so don’t worry about this project.*

- **을 결** (with a rising intonation)
  출퇴근시간이라 교통이 복잡할 결.
  *I’m sure the traffic will be bad because it’s rush hour.*
  택시보다 지하철이 더 빠른 결.
  *I’m pretty sure that the subway will be faster than a taxi.*

17.5.5 *Summary of evidential patterns*

The following table offers a summary of the evidential patterns discussed above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'I hear...'</th>
<th>With an action verb</th>
<th>With a descriptive verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비 온다</td>
<td>비 온다</td>
<td>아프다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 온다고 한다</td>
<td>비 온다고 한다</td>
<td>아픈다고 한다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비가 온다고 한다</td>
<td>비가 온다고 한다</td>
<td>아픈다고 한다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 올까 싶다</td>
<td>비 올까 싶다</td>
<td>아픈가 싶다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 오려나 보다</td>
<td>비 오려나 보다</td>
<td>아픈가 보다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 오지 않다</td>
<td>비 오지 않다</td>
<td>아프지 않다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 오기 생겼다</td>
<td>비 오기 생겼다</td>
<td>아프기 생겼다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 오기 생겼다</td>
<td>비 오기 생겼다</td>
<td>아프기 생겼다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 오기를 보다</td>
<td>비 오기를 보다</td>
<td>아픈가 보이다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'I am almost certain...'</th>
<th>With an action verb</th>
<th>With a descriptive verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비 올 거야</td>
<td>비 올 거야</td>
<td>아플 거야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 올 텐데</td>
<td>비 올 텐데</td>
<td>아플 텐데</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 올 결</td>
<td>비 올 결</td>
<td>아플 결</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.6 Special verb-endings expressing the speaker’s attitude

The following verb-endings are frequently used in colloquial speech.

17.6.1 Explanatory/emphatic

- 는/은 거 다 is extremely common; it creates the following effects.

(a) Inviting the listener to be engaged in the conversation. Use of - 는/은 거 다 implies an unstated reason for asking the question, and invites something more than a simple to-the-point response:

정말 괜찮은 거예요?
Are you really alright? (If not, I can do something for you…)

그 사람하고 결혼까지 생각하고 있는 거니?
Are you thinking about even marrying him? (You got to be kidding!)

혹시 마음에 두고 있는 사람이 있는 거야?
Do you by any chance have someone in mind? (Why are you avoiding this guy?)

(b) Presenting the story in a dramatic way (in the present tense), invoking the listener’s attention to what is to follow:

아침을 해 놓았다고 좀 먹고 가라고 하시는 거예요. (늦었는데…)
You know, she was telling me to eat before leaving, saying that she fixed breakfast for me. (I was late…)

나보고 그 사람하고 결혼을 하라는 거다. (그게 말이나 되니?)
They were telling me to marry him, you know. (Does that even make any sense?)

수업시간에 깜빡거리 줄고 있는데 선생님이 딱 보고 계시는 거야.
I was dozing off during class and guess what – the teacher was looking at me.

- 는/은 거 있지 is also commonly used for a similar effect.

모두 내 얼굴만 쳐다보는 거 있죠.
You know what? Everyone was staring at me!

전자렌지에 커피를 놓고 깜짝 떨어져버린 거지.
You know what? I totally forgot I had coffee warmed up in the microwave.

정신없이 바쁘다 보니 여권 만료일이 지난 거 있지.
Having been so incredibly busy, I didn’t even realize that my passport expired.

(c) Making the sentence more tangible and clear. The situation being described can be verified while the sentence is being uttered:

파인애플은 이렇게 자르는 거야. You are to cut pineapples like this.

여기서 뭐 하는 거야?
What are you doing here?

빨래하는 거야. I’m washing clothes (as you can see).
17 MODALITY

- the -다/는 거 아니니?

This is used for dramatic presentation of new or surprising information.

내가 부동산 중개인이 됐다는 거 아니니?

I’ve become a real estate agent. Can you believe it?

제가 이번에 승진한다는 거 아니니가?

I’m getting promoted this time. Can you believe it?

- 단/馁/잔 말이다. -다/나/자/라구요, -다/나/자/라니가, & -다/나/자/라니?

These are employed with the quoting pattern (see 22.1) to repeat what one has already said or sometimes just to say something in an emphatic way.

A: 어떻게 그렇게 내 일에 무관심할 수가 있어?
B: 무관심한 게 아니라 바쁘니까.

A: 그래도 그렇지. 좀 관심 좀 가져보란 말야.
B: 알았단니가. 잔소리 좀 이제 그만 하라구.

A: 잔소리라니? 이게 잔소리로 밖에 안 들리니?

A: How can you be so indifferent and show no concern for what I do?
B: It’s not that I’m being indifferent. I told you that I’m busy.
A: Even so, you should show some interest, I’m telling you.
B: Okay, I said I got your point. No more nagging please.
A: Nagging? Does it sound like nothing but nagging to you?

17.6.2 Exclamatory and beyond

- 네 (spontaneous emotional reaction)

이 옷 못 보던 건데, 색깔이 참 예쁘네요.

I haven’t seen that dress before; its color is really pretty.

하와이는 본토에 비해 물가가 비싸네.

Things are expensive in Hawaii compared to the mainland.

- 데 (general exclamation)

모자가 잘 어울리는데!

The hat looks very good on you!

이 오징어볶음 정말 맛있는데요!

This panbroiled cuttlefish is really delicious!

- 구나, -군요 (first realization)

너 왔구나.

Oh, you’re here.

네가 그 영수네 반 친구구나.

Oh, you’re that classmate of Youngsoo’s.

하와이는 공기가 정말 좋군요.

The air quality in Hawaii is really good.

- 다 (no audience intended)

저 강아지 너무 귀엽다!

That puppy is so cute!

커피 향기 진짜 좋다.

The aroma of the coffee is really good.
• -구만 (casually noticing something that wasn’t expected)
  화난 거 아니구만. Hey, she’s not angry.
  문이 잠겼구만. Oh, the door’s locked.

• -담, 늘담 (lightly expressing a complaint or dissatisfaction)
  그렇게 남을 헐뜯는 법이 어디 있담?
  웬 그렇게 비싸게 받는담?
  웬 그렇게 꼼꼼거리던담?
  How can he back-bite me like that?
  Why do they charge so much?
  Why is she so slow (like a snail)?

• -올라 (warning or showing endearing concern)
  우산 갖고 가라. 비 맞올라.
  그렇게 뛰어가다 떨어질라.
  깨진 유리 만지지 마. 다칠라.
  Take an umbrella with you. You’re going to get rained on.
  You’re going to fall, running like that.
  Don’t touch the broken glass. You’re going to get hurt.
18 Negation

18.1 How to negate statements and questions

18.1.1 Short versus long negation

Except for a very small number of verbs that have an inherently negative counterpart (있다 ~ 없다, 알다 ~ 모르다, etc.), there are two basic ways to negate a verb in Korean. One is to place 안/못 in front of the verb (short negation) and the other is to attach -지 않다/못하다 at the end of the verb (long negation). The table below presents examples involving an action verb, a descriptive verb, and the copula verb. (n/a = non-applicable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Short negation</th>
<th>Long negation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with 안</td>
<td>with 못</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가요</td>
<td>안 가요</td>
<td>못 가요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비싸요</td>
<td>안 비싸요</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(책)이에요</td>
<td>(책)이 아니에요</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that the action verb 가다 allows both short negation and long negation, as does the descriptive verb 비싸다 (although not with 못). The copula verb (책)이다 allows only short negation by 안, whose spelling changes to 아니. (The contrast between 안 and 못 is discussed in 18.1.2.)

Meaning-wise, short negation and long negation are usually interchangeable. However, the short form is more direct and therefore more colloquial, while the long form is less direct and is more frequently used in formal writing.

In long negation, a particle can be added after -지 in order to emphasize the verb – 불이 났을 때 빠져 나오지 못했어 ‘I couldn’t escape when there was a fire.’ Short negation is more widely used than long negation, but the latter often sounds more natural with verbs that are three or more syllables in length.

아름답지 않다. (rather than 안 아름답다.) It’s not beautiful.
학자답지 않다. (rather than 안 학자답다.) She’s not scholarly.

Nonetheless, short negation sounds natural with certain highly frequent multi-syllable verbs.

안 좋아한다. (or 좋아하지 않는다.) I don’t like it.
안 어울린다. (or 어울리지 않는다.) They don’t look good together.
안 잘라진다. (or 잘라지지 않는다.)  It (the meat) won’t cut.
안 깨끗하다. (or 깨끗하지 않다.)  It’s not clean.
안 보고 싶다. (or 보고 싶지 않다.)  I don’t want to see it.

18.1.2 안 versus 못

안 expresses the meaning of ‘don’t intend,’ ‘does not,’ and ‘is not,’ while 못 is typically used to express inability as well as the meaning of ‘definitely not’ or ‘be impossible.’

불어를 일부러 안 썼어.
I deliberately didn’t use French.
불어를 못 썼어. (이해할 수 있는 사람이 없어서.)
I couldn’t use French. (Because there was no one who could understand me.)

안 can be used with any verb, but 못 is usually not employed for either short or long negation involving descriptive verbs. In the case of certain descriptive verbs denoting desirable qualities, the use of 못 in long negation (-지 못하다) expresses the lack of such qualities or the speaker’s dissatisfaction with the negative state of affairs.

넉넉하지 못하다. He’s not well-to-do. 똑똑하지 못하다. She’s not smart.
정직하지 못하다. She’s not honest. 너그럽지 못하다. He’s not generous.

NOTE: The -지 in -하지 못하다/않다 may sometimes be contracted to -치 for frequently used expressions – 똑똑치 못하다, 만만치 않다 ‘It’s no easy matter.’

The descriptive verb 못하다 by itself means ‘be not as good as,’ as in 동생이 형만 못하다 ‘The little brother is not as good as the older brother.’

18.1.3 Fixed expressions in which the choice of negative is frozen

조퇴해야지 안 되겠다. I think I’ll have to leave work early.
가지 않으면 안 되요. I must go.
사고를 당했다니 정말 안됐다. I hear they had an accident; it’s too bad.
칼이 너무 안 들어요. The knife is too dull.
개 정말 못생겼다. He’s really bad-looking.
이런 못난 자식. Oh, you fool.
저런 되지 못한 자식. What a bastard.
개 정말 못했다. He’s really a brat.
" 못돼 먹었다. 
" 때 UnityEditor프.
### 18.1.4 How to negate complex verb constructions

- **‘Verb + verb’ compounds are treated as one unit.**

  - **먹어 봤어:** I tried (the food).
  - **먹어 봤어.** or **먹어 보지 못했어:** I haven’t tried (the food).
  - **보고 싶어요:** I want to see it.
  - **안 보고 싶어요.** or **보고 싶지 않아요:** I don’t want to see it.
  - **长得보인다:** You look good.
  - **안长得보인다.** or **长得보이지 않아요:** You don’t look good.
  - **사 주었다:** I bought it for him.
  - **사 주었다.** or **사 주지 못했다:** I couldn’t buy it for him.
  - **가야 됩니다:** I have to go.
  - **안 가도 됩니다.** or **가지 않아도 됩니다:** I don’t have to go.

- **‘Bound noun + verb’ compounds are treated as one unit.**

  - **약하다:** He’s weak.
  - **약하지 않다:** He’s not weak.
  - **깨끗해요:** It’s clean.
  - **깨끗하지 않아요:** It’s not clean.
• ‘Free standing noun + verb’ compounds are treated as two units.

배고파. 배 안 고파. or 배고프지 않아.

I’m hungry. I’m not hungry.

축구한다. 축구 못 한다. or 축구하지 못한다.

I play soccer. I can’t play soccer.

NOTE: ‘Noun + 있다’ is negated as ‘noun + 없다’, as in 재미있다/재미없다 (except 필요하다, whose negated counterpart is 필요없다).

18.1.5 Negative prefixes for Sino-Korean nouns

금- [禁]: 금연 no smoking  금주 no drinking
물- [沒]: 물염치하다 be shameless  물상식하다 be senseless and absurd
무- [無]: 무면허 unlicensed  무인도 deserted island [no person island]
미- [未]: 미혼 unmarried  미성년자 under age (minor)
부- [不]: 부조화 disharmony  부적합하다 be inappropriate
불- [不]: 불분명하다 be unclear  불평등하다 be unequal/unfair
비- [非]: 비무장지대 demilitarized zone  비경제적이다 be uneconomical

18.2 How to negate commands and proposals

-지 말다 is used for the negation of commands and proposals. (말다 is an irregular verb, as the following examples show.)

 걱정(하지) 말아요./마. Don’t worry.
추월하지 마시오. Do not pass.
이메일로 하지 말고 카드로 보내자. Let’s send a card instead of an e-mail.
담배꽁초를 함부로 버리지 말옵시다! Let’s not toss cigarette butts everywhere!

The principal use of 말다 is to negate commands and proposals, but there are also cases where it is used to negate other verb forms.

가지 말아야겠어요. I think I shouldn’t go.
비 오지 말았으면 좋겠어요. I hope it won’t rain.
밥 먹다 말고 어디가? Where are you going in the middle of eating?
가든지 말든지 마음대로 해. Do as you wish – go or not.
갈까 말까 방법이는 중이에요. I’m vacillating over whether to go or not.
그 가게는 가나마나야. 물건이 없어. No use going to that store. They don’t have much stuff.
18.3 Negative form, but positive meaning

-Negation(요) ‘you know’

Originally a contracted form of -지 않아, -Negation(요) is used to seek confirmation or agreement, not to negate. (It is pronounced with a falling or level contour.)

전화 오앉아. The phone is ringing, you know.
전화 왔앉아. There was a phone call, you know.

The -Negation(요) form is very assertive and can be used (with an exasperated tone) when one is highly annoyed.

참견하지 말라 그랬잖아.
I told you to mind your own business.
먹기 싫은데 왜 자꾸 먹으려? 싫다잖아.
Why do you keep bugging me to eat when I don’t want to? I told you I don’t want to.

-여야 되는 거 아니니 ‘you know’

Frequently used, this is a way to strongly remind someone what (s)he should do or should have done. (It is pronounced with a falling or level contour.)

가야 되는 거 아니니. You have to go, you know.
약속을 했으면 지켜야 될 거 아니야. She should keep her promise since she made it, you know.
신경을 좀 써여야 될 거 아니에요. You should have shown some concern, you know.

그렇게…-을 수가 없다 ‘very…’

그렇게 바싹 말았을 수가 없어. (= 너무너무 바싹 말랐어요.)
She’s way too skinny.
연기를 그렇게 잘 할 수가 없어. (= 연기를 아주 잘 해.)
He’s an incredibly good actor.
경치가 그렇게 아름다울 수가 없어요. (= 경치가 무척 아름다워요.)
The scenery is incredibly beautiful.

열이 얼마나 높은지 몰라요. (= … 굉장히 높아요.)
She has a very high fever.

- 얼마나…-는/은지 모른다 ‘very…’

얼마나 많이 삽는지 몰라. (= 정말 많이 삽.)
I bought so much stuff.
얼마나 바빴는지 몰라요. (= 너무너무 바빴어요.)
I was so very busy.
열이 얼마나 높은지 몰라요. (= … 굉장히 높아요.)
She has a very high fever.
• **-기 작이 없다**  ‘very…’ (used only for negative conditions)

미안하기 작이 없다. (= 정말 미안하다.)
_I’m terribly sorry._
불편하기 작이 없네요. (= 굉장히 불편하다.)
_It’s awfully inconvenient/uncomfortable._

• **Double negation**

As in English, two negatives can create a positive. It is useful to treat each of the following examples as a simple fixed expression.

없는 게 없어요. ( = 다 있어요.) _They have everything._
비극이 아닐 수 없다. ( = 비극이다.) _It’s a tragedy._
하지 않을 수 없다. ( = 해야 된다.) _I have to do it._
가지 않으면 안 돼. ( = 가야 돼.) _I have to go._

18.4 **Expressions that require negative verbs**

Certain expressions can be used only if the verb is negated (or at least has a negative meaning).

다시는 너를 못 볼 줄 알았어.
_I didn’t think I could ever see you again._

미처 상상도 못 할 일이야.
_It’s beyond the stretch of my imagination._

아직(것) 여자 친구도 없나?
_Don’t you have a girlfriend yet?_

이 비디오 카메라는 성능이 별로 안 좋은 거 같아요.
_This camcorder doesn’t seem to have very good performance._

요즘은 그리/그다지 바쁘지 않습니다.
_I’m not that busy these days._

면종류를 과히 좋아하지 않는 편이에요.
_I kind of don’t like noodles that much._

드라마 결말이 어떻게 됐는지 전혀 몰라요.
_I have zero idea as to how the drama ended._

남자친구가 먼저 사과할 기미가 도무지 안 보여.
_I don’t see the slightest inkling of my boyfriend’s intention to apologize to me first._

무슨 말을 하는지 도무지 알아 들을 수가 있어야지.
_I couldn’t possibly understand what he was saying._

담배에 중독이 돼서 도저히 못 끊겠어.
_I can’t possibly quit smoking because I’m addicted to it._
시차가 바뀌어서 잠이 좀처럼 오질 않아요.
   I can hardly sleep because of jet lag.

이 소문 퍼뜨리면 절대 안 된다.
   You should not spread the rumor by any means.

무슨 바쁜 일이 있는 지 영 전화를 안 받아요.
   He may be busy with something; he doesn’t answer the phone at all.

호주로 유학간 그 친구한테서 통 소식이 없어.
   There’s been no news whatsoever from the friend who moved to Australia to study.

이번에 들어온 신입사원이 여간 똑똑한 게 아니야.
   The recently hired guy in our office is extremely smart [smart beyond ordinary].

물이 안 나와서 이만저만 불편한 게 아니에요.
   There’s a water stoppage, so I can’t describe just how inconvenient things are.

고통을 이루 다 말로 표현할 수 없다.
   I can’t possibly describe the pain in words.

중요한 전화 기다리느라 끊적 못 해.
   I can’t budge because I’m waiting for an important phone call.

부모님 은혜를 결코 잊어선 안 된다.
   We should never forget what our parents have done for us.

일이 밀려서 조금도 쉴 틈이 없어요.
   I don’t have even a minute for a break because of the backlog of work.

그건 한날 변명에 지나지 않는다.
   That’s nothing but an excuse.

내 자존심을 상하게 할 생각은 추호도 없어.
   I didn’t mean to hurt your pride, not in the least.

내 말이 채 끝나기도 전에 전화를 끊어 버리는 거 있지.
   You know what? He hung up on me before I even finished what I was saying.

미래는 아무도 모른다.
   No one knows the future.

맥주 겨우 두 잔밖에 안 마셨어.
   I had no more than two glasses of beer.

듣(지)도 보(지)도 못하던 이름인데요.
   That’s a name I neither heard of nor saw.
19 Particles

Particles (also called suffixes) are typically attached at the end of a noun or a noun phrase. Some carry information about grammar (is the noun a subject or direct object?) and others carry information about meaning, including subtle nuances that are expressed in English by means of stress, intonation, and so on.

19.1 Omission of particles

Unless they carry information that cannot be inferred from other sources, particles may be omitted. The most frequently omitted ones are -이/가, -을/를, and -의, but given the right context, it is also possible to leave out certain other particles as well.

이 책(은) 선생님(께) 갖다 드려.  Take this book to your teacher.
친구(의) 동생(이) 학교(에) 간어요.  My friend’s younger sister went to school.

When permitted, most particle omission takes place only in colloquial speech, not in formal writing. In fact, particles should be retained in any kind of writing, since they can do the work of pauses and intonation when it comes to breaking sentences into smaller chunks.

마이클과 동규는 비자 인터뷰를 하러 대사관에 간다. (in writing)
마이클하고 동규, 비자 인터뷰하러 대사관 갔다. (in speaking)

Michael and Tongkyu went to the Embassy to do a visa interview.

Even in speaking, particles are best retained for the purpose of rhythmic balance and the syntactic grouping of words when the sentence is long. The short sentences in the first column sound natural without particles but if the same particles are omitted in the second column, the sentences would sound lopsided.

차 없어요.  I don’t have a car.
여자친구가 차가 없어요.  My girlfriend doesn’t have a car.
전기 나갔다.  The power went out.
아파트 전체에 전기가 나갔다.  The power went out in the entire apartment complex.
소문 벌써 퍼졌어요.  The rumor spread already.
소문이 인터넷을 통해서 벌써 퍼졌어요.  The rumor spread already via the Internet.
19.2  -이/가

The particle -이/가 is primarily used to mark a subject, but it can also mark certain non-subjects.

19.2.1 Use of -이/가 to mark subjects

Subjects marked by -이/가 can be divided into two types – those with no added meaning and those with an added meaning.

- **With no added meaning**
  -이/가 indicates a ‘neutral’ subject.

  한국 경제가 크게 발전했다.  The Korean economy made great progress.
  (네가) 먼저 가.  (You) go first.
  식당(이) 잘 됩요.  The restaurant has good business.

  This type of subject is commonly omitted when its referent can be inferred from the context. (This is especially true when the referent is a person.) Even when the noun is retained, the particle can easily be omitted.

- **With an added meaning**
  -이/가 adds a sense of focus, newness, or exhaustive listing (‘this and only this’) to the subject. This type of subject cannot be omitted.

  A: 죄송합니다.  I’m sorry.
  B: 아닙니다. 제가 죄송하죠.  Not at all. I’m the one who is sorry.
  A: 어느 나라가 월드컵을 주최했죠?  Which country hosted the World Cup?
  B: 한국과 일본이 했어요.  Korea and Japan did.

The following pairs of examples illustrate the contrast between the two types of subjects. The first subject in each pair is neutral – it does not receive any phonetic focus and refers to a specific entity. In contrast, the second subject has an added meaning – it is focused (with high pitch). Moreover, when it is a common noun (rather than a name or a pronoun), it refers to a general class rather than to a single thing.

  식당(이) 잘 됩요.  The restaurant has good business.
  식당이 잘 됩요.  Restaurants (not other things) have good business.
  자두(가) 맛있어요.  This plum is delicious.
  자두가 맛있어요.  Plums (not other fruit) are delicious.

In all the examples considered so far, -이/가 can be replaced by the honorific particle -께서 when the referent of the subject is worthy of special deference (see
This is possible only when -이/가 occurs on a subject; it cannot happen when -이/가 is used to mark a non-subject, as in the next set of examples.

19.2.2 Use of -이/가 to mark non-subjects

In addition to its role as subject marker, -이/가 has several other functions. It can appear on:

- The noun that precedes 되다 and 아니다
  
  고등학교 동창이 원수가 됐다.  
  My high school friend has become my enemy.
  
  미국에 온 지 근 20년이 됐다.  
  It’s almost 20 years since I came to the U.S.
  
  회계사가 아니라 변호사야요.  
  He’s not a CPA, but an attorney.

- The direct object of verbs such as 있다, 없다, and 필요하다
  
  나한테 좋은 생각이 있어요.  
  I have a good idea.
  
  현재 길이 별로 없어요.  
  I don’t have much cash.
  
  무엇보다도 시간이 필요하다. 
  I need time more than anything.

- The direct object of certain psychological verbs
  
  요리 잘하는 남자가 좋더라.  
  I find that I like men who are good cooks.
  
  몸매 좋은 사람이 부러워요.  
  I envy those who have a nice figure.
  
  지녀가 제일 무서워요.  
  I’m most scared of centipedes.
  
  지구 온난화가 두렵습니다.  
  I fear global warming.
  
  아리조나 기념관이 보고 싶어요.  
  I’d like to see the Arizona Memorial.

NOTE: If these verbs are converted into action verbs by attaching -어 하다, as in 무서워하다 and 두려워하다, the particle has to change to -을/를 (지녀를 무서워 한다; see section 15.1.2.)

- Focused possessors
  
  동생이 집이 더 크다.  
  The younger brother’s house is bigger.
  
  엄마가 머리가 아프세요.  
  My mom’s head hurts.

- Emphatic negation
  
  별로 나가고 싶지가 않아.  
  I don’t really want to go out.
  
  시계가 정확하지가 않다.  
  The watch is not accurate.
Use of -и as a name particle

The particle -и is added to a Korean first name that ends in a consonant, usually when the person being referred to is a child or a close friend/sibling of a similar age or younger.

미선и가 석훈и를 만나러 왔어.
Miseon came to see Seokhoon.
영미하고 소영и하고 싸웠네.
I heard that Youngmee and Soyoung had a fight.

A: 이거 진석и 모자에요?
B: 아니, 기철이가야.
   A: Is this Jinseok’s hat?
   B: No, it’s Kichul’s.

A: 선영и가 현진씨한테 청혼했다며?
B: 아니야. 현진씨가 선영и한테 청혼을 했지.
   A: I heard that Sunyoung proposed to Hyunjin, is that true?
   B: No, that’s not true. It was Hyunjin who proposed to Sunyoung.

NOTE: The name particle is attached only to Korean names, not to foreign names:
마이클이 월리엄을 만나러 왔어. ‘Michael came to see William.’ (The -и in
‘마이클이’ is a subject particle.)

19.3 -은/는

The particle -은/는 is known to be difficult for English speakers, and perfect mastery cannot be achieved in a short period of time. However, the following information should be helpful in understanding its fundamentals.

Put simply, -은/는 has two basic uses:

- Marking a topic that appears at the beginning of the sentence and that indicates what the sentence is about.
- Marking an element that is to be contrasted with other elements.

When used on a word that is not at the beginning of the sentence, -은/는 is always contrastive, as in 영화가 얼굴은 예쁘다. When it appears on an element at the beginning of a sentence, it can mark a topic or it may signal a contrast – sometimes both, depending on the context and the content of the sentence. The following interpretations are based on the most likely scenario.

오늘은 정기 휴일입니다. Today is a regular holiday. (topic)
오늘은 바빠서 안 돼요. TODAY is not possible because I’m busy. (contrast)
Her face is round. (topic or contrast)
Her face is pretty. (contrast)

Money is important, of course. (topic)
MONEY, I have. (contrast)

The element marked by -은/는 often corresponds to the subject of the sentence, but sometimes it occurs in addition to a subject as in:

In Korea, autumn is beautiful.
As for the mountains, Sŏrak Mt. is the best.

19.3.1 Uses of -은/는 when it marks a topic

• To set the stage for the rest of the sentence, by indicating what it is to be about

This cake, did you make it yourself?
As for Yunho, he was wearing a tie today.
In summer, naengmyŏn is all you need.
Passing or failing the exam depends on luck.

• To express old information (either known to both the speaker and the listener, or part of the shared background)

The rice cake, who ate it?
Was there a rice cake? I didn’t see it.

Star Wars is really a masterpiece.
What kind of movie is Star Wars?

NOTE: ‘Rice cake’ and ‘Star Wars’ are NEW information to B and therefore don’t appear with -은/는 in his utterances.

As for the car, what kind are you planning to buy?

• To define or make a broad statement

Men are rational animals.
Hawaii is paradise on earth.

Korea is a peninsula surrounded by the ocean on three sides.

• To change the topic

How’s the food? How about the price? What about the ambience of the restaurant?
19.3.2 Uses of -은/는 when it marks a contrast

-은/는 is used to highlight points of contrast. Notice that the two elements marked by -은/는 are being contrasted in the following sentences.

오늘은 수업에 가지만 내일은 못 갈 것 같다.
*I'm going to class TODAY, but I don't think I'll be able to TOMORROW.*

외제차는 비싸지만 국산차는 비싸지 않아요.
*IMPORTED CARS are expensive, but the KOREAN-MADE ones are not.*

꽃은 샀지만 캐익은 내가 구웠어.
*I bought the FLOWERS, but I baked the CAKE.*

Sometimes, the elements being contrasted do not appear in the same sentence.

A: 백합 열 송이만 주세요.
B: 백합은 없는데요. (다른 꽃들은 있지만…)
   *A: Please give me ten lilies.
    B: LILIES, I don’t have any. (Although I have other flowers…)*

A: 한국어가 어려워요?
B: 어렵지 않아요. (그렇지만 공부할 게 너무 많아요.)
   *A: Is Korean difficult?
    B: It’s not DIFFICULT. (But there’s a lot to study.)*

In English, this type of information is usually expressed with the help of dramatic intonation, but in Korean the particle -은/는 is powerful enough to do the job itself (although it is often accompanied by high pitch).

Contrastive -은/는 can occur (often contracted) in many different positions in the sentence.

조금은 이해할 수 있어.  I can understand A LITTLE.
제 생각엔,…  In MY opinion,…
남편같으론 별로야. He’s not great as a HUSBAND.
요새 갈아선…  If it’s like THESE days…
먹어선 안 된다. You must not EAT this.
깨끗은 해.  It’s CLEAN (but…).
도와는 줄게.  I’ll HELP you (but...).
좋긴 좋다.  As for quality, it’s GOOD.
운동을 날마다 하기는 어렵다. Exercising EVERY DAY is tough.
전적으로 나쁘다고는 할 수 없다. We can’t say that it’s TOTALLY bad.
It is sometimes unclear whether a sentence-initial -은/는 marks a topic or a contrast. Depending on which element is focused, a sentence such as 공부는 성아가 잘 한다 can have different interpretations:

그것은 성아가 잘 한다. (공부 is a topic. The sentence is about study in general; 성아, not other people, is good academically.)

공부는 성아가 잘 한다. (공부 is contrastive. 성아 is good academically, but not at some other things.)

If the noun marked by -은/는 is not at the beginning of the sentence, however, it can only have one interpretation:

성아가 공부는 잘 한다. (공부 is contrastive: 성아 is good academically, but not at some other things.)

There is a big difference in meaning and nuance between a noun marked by -은/는 and one marked by -이/가.

얼굴은 예쁘다. She has a pretty FACE (but a lousy personality, bad figure, poor brain, or something else that is bad).

얼굴이 예쁘다. She has a pretty face.

The following table provides a summary of different uses of -이/가 and -은/는 with respect to the subtle cue of phonetic focus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The different uses of -이/가 and -은/는 with respect to phonetic focus:</th>
<th>Unfocused (low pitch)</th>
<th>Focused (high pitch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-이/가</td>
<td>neutral subject</td>
<td>exclusive ('this and only this')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-은/는</td>
<td>topic</td>
<td>contrast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.4 -을/를

The prototypical function of -을/를 is to mark a direct object, but it can also be used in a variety of other ways.

19.4.1 Use of -을/를 to mark direct objects

The particle -을/를 is primarily used to mark a direct object whose referent is the ‘undergoer’ of the action denoted by the verb.

책을 주문했어요. I ordered the book.

Often, a noun that functions as a direct object in Korean occurs with a preposition in English.

대학을 졸업했다. He graduated from college.

친구를 기다리고 있습니다. I am waiting for my friend.

새 차 사는 것을 포기했어요. I gave up on buying a new car.
19.4.2 Use of -을/를 to mark non-direct objects

In addition to its role as direct object marker, -을/를 can be used to mark:

- A destination (instead of 에)
  외국을 자주 나간다.  
  They often go abroad.  
  할머니는 작은집을 가셨어요.  
  Grandmother went to uncle’s place.

- Purpose of a movement
  남해안으로 여행을 떠났어요.  
  She left for a trip to the south coast.  
  영화구경을 갈까?  
  Shall we go for a movie?

- The noun that describes a property of a direct object (instead of -로)
  차를 외체를 삽어.  
  I bought a car, a foreign-made one.  
  구두를 높은 걸 삽어.  
  She bought the shoes, ones with high heels.

- The indirect object of certain verbs for added exclusiveness (instead of -에게/한테/께)
  책을 그 친구를 주었어요.  
  I gave the friend the book.  
  돈을 할아버지지를 드렸어요.  
  I gave Grandfather the money.

- Duration of an action or state
  근 일주일을 아팠어요.  
  I was sick for almost one week.  
  두 시간(동안)을 걸었다.  
  I walked for two hours.

- Quantity
  친구가 너 만나러 세번을 왔었다.  
  Your friend came to see you three times.  
  오늘 커피 세 잔을 마셨어요.  
  I drank three cups of coffee today.  
  한 시간에 90 마일을 달렸어요.  
  We drove 90 miles in one hour.

- Emphatic negation
  다리가 움직이질 않아.  
  My legs won’t move.  
  아이가 통 말을 듣질 않는다.  
  The child doesn’t listen at all.

NOTE: -철 is a contracted form of 지를. Contraction is normally reserved for casual speech (see ch. 8) and not for writing, but it is used here because emphatic negation is typically very colloquial.

19.4.3 Some fixed patterns involving -을/를

The following bold-faced patterns, which are usually employed for formal and written language, are fixed expressions that include -을/를.

오늘 자정을 기해서 새 법이 효력을 발휘한다.  
As of midnight tonight, the new law goes into effect.
Whether it’s the East or the West, parents’ love for their children is endless.

Aside from who wins and who loses, let’s enjoy the game to the fullest.

We visited every site on Jeju Island, including Halla Mountain.

In order to win this game, we practiced hard for the entire year.

The expedition began its voyage toward the Arctic.

19.5 -도

-도 helps express emphasis as well as the meaning of ‘also,’ ‘even,’ and ‘indeed.’ It cannot co-occur with -이/가 or -을/를, but it does occur in combination with other particles. Here is a summary of its basic uses.

• ‘Also’
  그 영화도 봤다. I saw the movie too.
  그 음식점에도 가 봤어요. I’ve been to that restaurant also.

• ‘Even’
  밥은 커피를 못 먹었어요. I didn’t even have water, let alone a meal.
  꿀에도 몰랐어요. I didn’t know, not even in my wildest dreams.
  버릇이도 낫지 않아요. He’s so shameless. [Even a flea has a shame.]
  얼마 먹지도 못했어요. I didn’t even eat much.
  네 맛은 이제 콩으로 메주를 쏟아도 안 믿는다. I don’t believe what you say any more [even if you say you make soybean paste out of soy].

• ‘Indeed’
  너는 참 샌드 많다. You are very jealous indeed.
  해수욕장에 사람도 많다. There were indeed lots of people at the beach.
  많이도 먹는다. You really do eat a lot.
  불행하게도 여행 중 사고를 당했습니다. Unfortunately, an accident happened during their trip.

• ‘Not only ~ but also’; ‘neither ~ nor’
  놀기도 잘 놀고 공부도 열심히 해요. Not only does she play hard, she also studies hard.
Take care of it secretly [so not even the mice or the birds know about it].
It’s just right, not too cold or too hot.

19.6 -의

The particle -의 links two nouns, the first of which often denotes a possessor, as in 남편의 직장 동료 ‘husband’s colleague.’ It can also be used when no possession is involved, as in 연상의 여인 ‘older woman (as a romantic partner).’ In most cases, -의 is omitted within compound nouns, even in formal writing, as in 한국 문학 ‘Korean culture,’ 해외 토픽 ‘newsy topics from abroad,’ and 물건 가격 ‘prices of things.’

However, there are cases where -의 must be retained at all times.

- In fixed formal expressions
  천고바비의 계절 the season of high sky and fat horses (autumn)
  성공의 비결 secrets of success
  표현의 자유 freedom of speech
  불변의 진리 unchangeable truth

- In fixed expressions of other types
  스승의 날 (5 월 15 일) Teachers’ Day (May 15th)
  선물의 집 gift store
  사랑의 기쁨 joy of love
  연하의 남자 younger man (as a romantic partner)
  남의 집, 남의 눈, etc. other’s house, other’s eyes (attention), etc.
  반의 반 a quarter portion

- Following another particle
  둔만의 약속 promise between just the two of us
  자식으로서의 도리 one’s duty to one’s parents
  하와이에서의 추억 memory of our time in Hawaii
  한국으로부터의 소식 news from Korea

- When followed by coordination involving -와/과
  너희 나의 차이점 the difference between you and me
  존과 매리의 책 John and Mary’s book
19.7  -에

-에 is one of the most frequently used particles in Korean. It has multiple meanings and uses, usually centered around the expression of location in space or time.

19.7.1 Uses of -에 involving space

• Location where someone/something exists
  학교 근처에 살아요.  I live in the vicinity of school.
  얼굴에 뭐가 묻어.  You have something on your face.
  양복을 옷걸이에 걸어 두세요.  Leave the suit hanging on a hanger.
  답변지에 이름을 쓰세요.  Put your name down on the answer sheet.

• Destination
  학교에 갔다.  She went to school.
  친구들을 생일 파티에 초대했어요.  I invited friends to my birthday party.
  동창들이 모두 학교에 모였어요.  All of the alumni gathered at school.
  게도 우리 그룹에 포함시키자.  Let’s have him join our group.

NOTE: 뛰다 and 갈다, which are simple manner of motion verbs, call for -까지 where -에 might otherwise be expected. 학교까지 뛰었다/걸었다 (학교에 뛰었다/걸었다 is unacceptable).

• Inanimate recipient
  화초에 물을 주었다.  I gave water to the plant.
  학교에 등록금을 냈다.  I paid tuition to the school.
  은행에 돈을 맡겼어요.  I entrusted money to a bank.

NOTE: For animate recipients, -에게/한테 should be used instead of -에 (see 19.9).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-에 and -에다(가)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For emphasis in colloquial speech, -에 can sometimes be followed by -다(가) when marking a recipient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>차에다 갖다 놓자.  Let’s take it to the car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔에다 문신을 새겼어요.  He got a tattoo on his arm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손에다 발라 뽑.  Try it (the cream) on your hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종이컵에다 마시자.  Let’s drink it in a paper cup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전자레인지에다 데워 먹자.  Let’s warm it up in the microwave before eating it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>냉장고에다 붙여 놓으세요.  Stick it on your refrigerator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Abstract point

추위에 어떻게 지내세요?
I'm used to life in a foreign country.

이제 유학 생활에 익숙해졌어요.
Success depends on your efforts.

성공은 노력하여 달려있다.
She has a lot of interest in tennis.

테니스에 관심이 많다.
I’d like to concentrate on studying.

공부에 전념하고 싶습니다.
He failed in his enterprise.

사업에 실패했어요.
They contributed to the development of our local community.

지역사회 발전에 공헌이 됐습니다.
I’ll go to your office just as you get off work.

• Addition/enumeration

과로에 영양실조레요.
I was told that I have malnutrition on top of exhaustion from overwork.

전기료에다 전화비를 합하면 백 블이 넘는다.
It’s over $100 if you add the phone bill to the electricity bill.

복더위에 후덥지근한 장마까지 접쳐서 사람들의 불쾌지수가 높다.
People are highly irritable because of the muggy rainy spell on top of the dog-day heat.

19.7.2 Uses of -에 involving time, cause/means, and per/for

• Time and/or age

새벽에 잠이 깨어.
I got woken up very early in the morning.

내일 저녁 일곱 시 반에 만나자.
Let’s meet at 7:30 p.m. tomorrow.

침실에 돌아가셨어요.
She died at the age of 70.

• Cause/means

더위에 지쳤어요.
I got worn out by the heat.

바퀴벌레에 괴롭혀요.
I’m fed up with cockroaches.

못에 젖혔어요.
I got poked by a nail.

바람에 모자가 날라갔다.
The hat got blown away by the wind.

천둥소리에 깜짝 놀랐다.
I got startled by the sound of thunder.

술에 취했다.
She got drunk from the alcohol.

거짓말에 속아 넘어가 빼했어요.
I almost got fooled by the lie.

차가 돌에 맞았다.
My car got hit by a stone.

누군가의 발에 밟혀어요.
I got stepped on by someone’s foot.
The clothes got soaked with sweat.
I got bitten by a mosquito.

- **Per/for**
  - This watch is fast by one minute per day.
  - How often [per how many minutes] does the bus run?
  - I meet my boyfriend about twice a week.
  - The codfish is ￦10,000 for three.
  - The condo sold for ￦300,000,000.
  - Good sleep is the best thing for one's health.
  - I’d like to thank you for your kindness.
  - Like father, like son.

### 19.7.3 Some fixed patterns involving -에

정치에 대해서는 문외한입니다.
*With regard to politics, I’m a lay person.*

그 일에 관해 아는 바가 없습니다.
*I know nothing about that matter.*

외국어에 관한 한 자신있습니다.
*I’m confident as far as foreign languages are concerned.*

경우에 따라 다르겠죠.
*It will depend on the situation.*

최근 연구에 따르면 적당한 양의 카페인이 몸에 좋다고 합니다.
*According to a recent study, a moderate amount of caffeine is good for our health.*

예년에 비하면 날씨가 별로 안 더운 편이야.
*Compared to previous years, the weather is kind of not that hot.*

일기예보에 의하면 주말에 태풍이 온다고.
*According to the weather forecast, a typhoon will arrive during the weekend.*

일시적 현상에 불과하다.
*It’s no more than a temporary phenomenon.*

그것은 헛소문에 지나지 않는다.
*That’s nothing but a false rumor.*

외국생활에 있어서 외국음식을 이기는 방법을 터득하는 것이 필요하다.
*When it comes to living in foreign countries, it’s necessary to learn how to overcome loneliness.*
The primary uses of -에서 are to indicate a starting point (concrete or abstract) and to mark the location of an activity.

- **Starting points (concrete)**
  
  한국에서 편지가 왔어요.  
  우리 집은 골에서 두 번째 집이야.  
  매일 30 분에서 한 시간 정도 운동하도록 하세요.

- **Starting points (abstract)**
  
  그 기사를 신문에서 읽었습니다.  
  비용은 회사에서 부담합니다.  
  독창성은 진정한 호기심에서 비롯됩니다.

- **Location of an activity**
  
  학교 앞 시계탑에서 기다릴게.  
  공원에서 시간을 좀 때웠어요.  
  거실 소파에서 잡이 들었어요.

---

Verbs that require -에 in Korean, but take a plain direct object in English:

수영복이 몸에 꽉 맞는다.  
이 곳 음식이 잡_VOICE_에 맞는다.  
질문에 대답해요.  
조심스럽게 배에 접근했다.  
내년에 대학에 입학한다.

The swimsuit fits the body perfectly.  
The food here suits my taste.  
Answer the question.  
We approached the boat cautiously.  
I enter college next year.
-에 versus -에서 for location
-에 is used to indicate a location where someone/something exists or where an action ends up, while -에서 is used to represent a location where an activity actually takes place. (By ‘activity,’ we mean ‘doing something,’ including even sleeping. Whatever the activity involves, it must take place INSIDE the location.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자리에 앉으세요.</td>
<td>Please be seated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자리에서 떠들지 마세요.</td>
<td>Don’t make noise while seated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밖에 비가 온다.</td>
<td>It’s raining outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밖에서 만날까요?</td>
<td>Shall we meet outside?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some cases, both -에 and -에서 are allowed with a negligible difference in meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>미국에/미국에서 살아요.</td>
<td>I live in America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호텔에/호텔에서 묵었어요.</td>
<td>We put up at a hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교에/학교에서 모였다.</td>
<td>We gathered at school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교 앞에/앞에서 세워 주세요.</td>
<td>Please drop me off in front of school.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 19.9 -에게(서)/한테(서)

-에게(서) is usually used in written/formal language, whereas -한테(서) is colloquial.

#### 19.9.1 -에게/한테

The basic function of these particles is to indicate ‘to someone,’ as in 나한테 왔다 ‘She came TO ME.’ They contrast with -에, which is used for ‘to a place,’ as in 학교에 왔다 ‘She came TO SCHOOL.’

- Animate recipients (-께 is used for honorific recipients.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>시민들에게 광고지를 나눠 주었다.</td>
<td>They distributed flyers to the citizens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>강아지한테 장난감을 주었다.</td>
<td>I gave a toy to the puppy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남한테 책임을 돌리지 마.</td>
<td>Don’t shift responsibility to others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어른들에게 안부 전해 주세요.</td>
<td>Please give my regards to your parents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>너희한테 미쳤어, 황쩍 만했어.</td>
<td>He’s crazy about you, totally smitten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 책 저한테 있어요.</td>
<td>The book is with me. (I have the book.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 사람한테 필요한 건 시간이야.</td>
<td>What’s necessary for him is time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남에게 뒤파어지고 싶지 않아요.</td>
<td>I don’t want to fall behind others.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-에게 vs. -한테 vs. -게 vs. -더러/보고 for an animate recipient
At the beginning of a letter, only -에게 and -게 are used:
영채에게 Dear Youngchae
김교수님께 Dear Professor Kim
-더러/보고 is used only for ‘telling’ verbs (usually in colloquial quoted speech)
for an intended recipient of the message:
영진이보고 나한테 전화 좀 하라고 전해 줄래요?
Would you tell Yongjin to call me?
엄마더러 직접 오시라고 해.
Tell your Mom to come herself.

-Animate agent ‘by (someone)’
너한테 완전히 속았다. I’ve been completely duped by you.
독사한테 물렸어요. I got bitten by a poisonous snake.
일반인에게 많이 읽히는 책입니다. It’s a popular book among the general public.

19.9.2 -에게(서)/한테(서)
Addition of -서 to -에게/한테 ‘to someone’ changes its meaning to ‘from someone.’ The -서 is optional, however, and the interpretation (‘to someone’ or ‘from someone’) is usually determined by the context. Recall that -에서 is used for ‘from (a place)’; see 19.8.

-‘From (someone)’
도서관에서 빌린 게 아니라 친구한테(서) 빌려.
I borrowed it from a friend, not from the library.
시댁에서 막 나오는데 남편한테(서) 전화가 왔어요.
As I was just coming out from my in-laws’ place, a phone call came from my husband.
전문가에게 조언을 구하도록 합니다.
Let’s get some advice from an expert.

19.10 -(으)로
The two most basic uses of -(으)로 are to indicate a direction (원쪽으로 ‘toward the left’) and a means or instrument (차로 ‘by means of car’). However, it has multiple other more or less related meanings and uses.
19.10.1  -(으)로 involving direction, change, and choice

• Direction
  밖으로 나갈까요?  Shall we go outside?
  어디로 옮겨요?  Where are you moving it to?

NOTE: In the examples below, -(으)로 is appropriate but -에 is not, because the precise destination point is not clear. (See 19.7.1 for the use of -에 to mark a destination.)
  오른쪽으로 가세요. (ok)    오른쪽에 가세요. (not acceptable)
  아파트로 이사갔다. (ok)    아파트에 이사갔다. (not acceptable)

• Change
  이 거 백 원짜리로 좀 바꿔 주시겠어요?  Can you change this into W100 coins?
  논문을 영어로 번역하고 있어요.  I’m translating my dissertation into English.
  두 달만에 몸무게를 70킬로로 줄였다.  I reduced my weight to 70 kg in two months.
  차를 새 거로 바꿨어요.  I replaced my car with a new one.

• Choice
  어느 예식장으로 정할까요?  Which wedding hall shall we decide on?
  아침은 빵으로 매우자.  Let’s just take care of breakfast with bread.
  같은 젤로 두 개 주세요.  Give me two of the same.
  일회용으로 사자.  Let’s buy a disposable one.
  없던 일로 하지요.  Let’s forget that it happened.
  다음주 토요일로 정할까요?  Shall we make it next Saturday?
  담배를 끊기로 했습니다.  I decided to quit smoking.
  성인100명을 대상으로 설문조사를 실시했다.  We carried out a survey, targeting 100 adults.

• ‘As (someone)’
  선교사로 한국에 5년간 있었다.  I was in Korea for five years as a missionary.
  식당에서 종업원으로 일합니다.  I work as a waiter in a restaurant.
  회장으로 1년을 지냈습니다.  I spent a year as president.
  그 사람이 사윗값으로 적격이야.  He is perfect son-in-law material.
  너 나를 필요로 보는 거야?  Who do you take me for?
19.10.2 Uses of -(으)로 involving means, cause, time, and manner

- Means/instrument (‘by means of; with’)  
  차로 갔까, 비행기로 갔까?  
  Shall we go by car or by airplane?  
  것가락으로 먹는 게 더 편해요.  
  It’s easier to eat with chopsticks.  
  카드로 지불해도 되겠습니까?  
  Will it be okay if I pay with my credit card?  
  두부는 콩으로 만든다.  
  Tofu is made with beans.  
  극장이 학생들로 봉비네요.  
  The theater is crowded with students.  
  한국말로 여러분의 생각을 자주 표현하세요.  
  Try to express your thoughts in Korean frequently.  
  우리 대화로 오해를 풀어 보자.  
  Let’s try to solve our misunderstanding by communicating.  
  70 마일로 가다가 걸렸어.  
  I got caught driving at 70 miles an hour.  
  어느 길로 오셨어요?  
  Which road did you take to get here?  
  우리 팀이 3 대 1 로 이겼어.  
  Our team won by 3 to 1.  

- Cause/source  
  과로로 쓰러졌대.  
  I hear that she passed out from exhaustion.  
  직장암으로 돌아가셨어요.  
  He died of colon cancer.  
  도박으로 망했다.  
  He went bankrupt from gambling.  
  집안일 평계로 모임에 안 나갔어.  
  With the excuse of a family matter, I didn’t go to the meeting.  
  사고 소식으로 온 식구가 슬픔에 잠겼다.  
  Everyone in the family was overwhelmed with sadness by the news of the accident.  

- Time  
  한국어 실력이 날로 늘고 있어요.  
  Your Korean is improving day by day.  
  환율이 시시각각으로 변합니다.  
  The exchange rate changes every second.  
  아침저녁으로 제법 선전해요.  
  It’s quite chilly in the mornings and the evenings.  

- Manner  
  양가 부모님께 정식으로 인사드렸어요?  
  Have you formally introduced one another to each of your parents?  
  강제로 선을 보내 하는 법이 어디 있어요?  
  How can you force me to go on a blind date for an arranged marriage?  
  즐거운 마음으로 일합시다.  
  Let’s work with a happy attitude.
19.10.3 Some fixed patterns involving -(으)로

언니로서 동생에게 한마디 하겠는데...

Let me tell you one thing as your older sister...

태풍으로 인해 인명피해가 많았습니다. [written/formal]

There was a great loss of life due to the typhoon.

사고로 말미암아 앓을 못 보게 되었다. [written/formal]

He became blind because of the accident.

자주 바뀌는 정책은 국민들로 하여금 불만을 토로하게 만들었다.

Frequent changes in public policy made people complain. [written/formal]

한국 갔다 올 때 하와이로 해서 왔어요.

I came back from Korea by way of Hawaii.

말씨로 외서 성격이 차분한 것 같아요.

Judging from her way of speaking, she seems to have a calm personality.

생긴 거로 보나 실력으로 보나 그 사람이 최고야.

Based on either his looks or his ability, he is the best.

19.11 -와/과, -하고, and -(이)랑

The two most basic functions of these forms are to coordinate nouns and to express accompaniment. -와/과 is usually used in written/formal language, while -하고 and -(이)랑 are used more colloquially. (The contrast between -와/과 and -(이)랑 parallels that between -에게 and -한테.) -(이)랑 has a more spoken flavor.

19.11.1 ‘And’ type coordination

외국인이 좋아하는 한국의 대표적 음식은 갈비와 떡볶입니다.

Foreigners’ favorite Korean foods include Kalbi and Pindaettok (Korean pancakes).

죄와 벌은 책으로 읽었는데 전쟁과 평화는 영화로 봤어요. (-와/과 only)

As for Crime and Punishment, I read the book, but as for War and Peace, I saw the movie.

시간 어른들하고 친정 부모님이 오셨어요.

My husband’s family and my parents came over.

빵이랑 과자랑 마실 거랑 잔뜩 샀어.

I bought tons of stuff, including bread, cookies, and beverages.

좋기도하고 덜컥하기도하고 그래요.

I have mixed feelings – glad on the one hand and sad on the other.

NOTE1: Nouns can also be conjoined by 및 in formal writing or very formal speech, except when they refer to a person – 상품 교환 및 환불 가능 ‘Merchandise can be exchanged or refunded,’ or 섭취방법 및 주의사항 ‘Directions for use and warnings.’
NOTE: 그리고, which is employed primarily to combine sentences, can also be used to combine nouns (짜장 하나, 잼뽕 들, 그리고 탕수육 하나 주세요. ‘One tchajang, two tchamppongs, and one sweet-and-sour pork, please.’).

19.11.2 Accompaniment

The meaning of accompaniment that is expressed by -와(과)/하고/이랑 does not always translate as ‘with’ in English – it is sometimes equivalent to ‘to,’ ‘from,’ or even nothing at all.

• ‘With’ in English

He shook hands with the representative of the other party.
I finished the event successfully, cooperating with my colleagues.
I feel sad having to part with friends.
He’s on very close terms with me.
I broke up with my boyfriend.
I’ll take turns driving with a friend.
Our car collided with the car in front of us.
My interview date overlaps with my friend’s wedding.
I talked one hour on the phone with a friend.
I agree with you.

• ‘To’ in English

I’m very close to my sister.
Isn’t he so similar to Dad?

• ‘From’ in English

I got divorced from my husband.
It’s totally different from what I thought.

• ‘Into’ in English

I ran into him on my way home from work.

• No preposition in English

Try to consult a psychiatrist.
She’s someone who’ll marry my brother.
Suni and Younghee look very much alike.
-에(게)한테 (one-way relationship) vs. -와/과/하고/이랑 (reciprocal relationship)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence 1</th>
<th>Sentence 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I phoned (or made a call to) my husband.</td>
<td>My husband and I talked on the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I contacted Mom.</td>
<td>Mom and I were in touch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t compare me to brother.</td>
<td>Don’t compare me and brother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The shoes look good for the skirt.</td>
<td>The shoes and the skirt go well (together).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.11.3 Some fixed patterns involving -와/과

In the following patterns, which are mostly found in formal language, -와/과 is usually appropriate. (The last two allow -와/과 only.)

모든 사람과 더불어 화평하게 지냅니다.

Let’s get along harmoniously and peacefully with everyone.

이것은 진품과 다를이 없습니다.

This is exactly the same as the original (the genuine article).

지난 번 경 우와 마찬가지로 우리 팀이 역전승을 거뒀다.

Our team came from behind to win the game, just like in our last match.

우리의 계획과 반대로 일을 진행했어요.

The project went contrary to how we planned it.

어린 아이와 같이 마음이 순수하다.

She has a childlike innocence.

결혼과 동시에 작장을 그만두었습니다.

I quit my job at the same time that I got married.

19.12 -만, -뿐, and -밖에

19.12.1 -만 ‘only; just’

100불만 까지 주세요.

Can you give me just a $100 discount?

그 친구는 명품만 좋아해요.

She likes only brand-name products.

빨리만 한다고 좋은 게 아냐.

Being just fast is not necessarily good.

일은 안 하고 먹기만 해.

He only eats, without working.

좋기만 하다.

It looks just fine to me. (Who says it’s not?)

NOTE: -만 has two other uses. With time expressions, it indicates ‘after an interval of’ (오랜만이에요 ‘It’s been a long time,’ 십 년 만에 왔어요 ‘I came back after 10
years of being away’). At the end of a sentence, -만 does the job of conjunctive ‘but’ (主제님습니다만, 제 생각에 그 방법은 움직이 않은 것 같습니다 ‘I may be out of line, but that plan doesn’t sound right to me’).

19.12.2 -뿐 ‘only; just’

뿐 is usually used in the following patterns.

남은 게 이것뿐이에요?
Is this all that’s left?

바쁜 사람은 비단 너뿐(만)이 아니야.
You’re not the only busy person.

소설뿐(만) 아니라 시도 쓴다.
She writes poems as well, not just novels.

이 제품은 가격이 저렴할뿐더러 성능도 우수합니다.
This product has high performance as well as a low price.

이삿짐을 옮기기만 했을뿐 정리는 아직 안 했어.
I only moved my things (furniture, etc.), but haven’t put them in order yet.

커피를 좋아한다뿐입니까? 없으면 못 살아요.
It’s not just that she likes coffee. She can’t live without it.

19.12.3 -밖에 ‘(nothing) but’

-밖에 must be used with an accompanying negative. There is usually an expectation of some kind that is not satisfied in the eyes of the speaker or with respect to general standards.

맥주 한 잔밖에 못 마셔요. I can’t drink more than one glass of beer.
포기하는 수밖에 없겠어요. There’ll be no choice but to give up.
조금씩이야. 일곱 시밖에 안 됐어. The night is still young. It’s only 7:00 p.m.
일밖에 모르는 사람이야. She cares about nothing but her work.
너무 이기적이다. 저밖에 몰라. He’s so selfish. He cares only about himself.
-만 vs. -밖에

Other than the fact that -밖에 must be followed by a negative expression, the difference in meaning between the two is not always clearcut. -만 is usually appropriate when the choice is made ‘willingly,’ while -밖에 is more appropriate when the choice is made unwillingly or reluctantly.

이건 생각해서 그날 한 잔만 마셨어.

* I had only one drink being mindful of my health.

술이 모자라서 한 잔밖에 못 마셨어.

* I had only one drink because there was not enough liquor.

만 원만 쓰고 나머지는 지금하러고요.

* I’m going to spend just $10,000 and put the rest into my savings.

만 원밖에 안 써는데 돈이 별세 다 떨어졌어요.

* I spent just $10,000 but I’m already out of money.

In other cases as well, they are often not interchangeable.

**Use only -밖에, not -만: ‘all I have; all that’s left; all I can; and so on’**

돈이 천 원밖에 없어. *I only have $1,000 (no more).*

사과 한 개밖에 안 나왔다. *We only have one apple (no more).*

한 잔밖에 못 마실니다. *I can have only one drink (no more).*

**Use only -만, not -밖에: in commands or proposals.**

안주만 먹지 말고 술도 좀 들어요.

* Don’t just eat the side dishes; have some drinks.

운전해야 되니까 한 병만 시키자.

* Let’s order just one bottle because we have to drive.

### 19.13 -부터

- **Starting from; beginning with**
  - 기초부터 확실히 다지세요.
    - 뭐 사실 거부터 시키자.
  - 어려서부터 물을 두려워했어요.
  - 다음 달부터 요리학원에 등록해야겠어요.

  Be sure to get a firm grasp of basics first.
  
  Let’s order something to drink first.
  
  I’ve been afraid of water since I was little.
  
  I think I should register for cooking school, starting from next month.

- **Starting point: combined with -(에)서 or -(으)로**
  - 도서관에서부터 걸어 왔어요.
  - 집을 처음(서)부터 다시 지었어요.
  - 오빠로부터.
  - 피해자로부터 손해배상 청구서가 날라왔어.

  I walked from the library.
  
  We rebuilt the house from scratch.
  
  Your brother. (signature in letter-writing)
  
  A written claim for damages came flying in from the victim.

**NOTE:** None of the instances of -부터 in the above examples can be replaced by -에서.
-에서 vs. -부터

Both -에서 and -부터 indicate some sort of a starting point but they are interchangeable only when there is an end point expressed by -까지.

주차장에서/부터 사무실까지 from the parking lot to the office
10살에서/부터 15살까지 from 10 to 15 years old
2월 말에서/부터 3월 중순까지 from the end of February to the middle of March

In other cases, only one is possible:

**Use only -에서, not -부터:** ‘from (a point)’ – without an end point expressed by -까지

브라질에서 편지는 왔다. A letter came from Brazil.
집에서 떠났다. She left from home.
1시간에서 2시간 정도 from one hour to two hours
맨끝에서 두 번째 집 the second house from the very end

**Use only 부터, not -에서:** ‘first; starting from; since; from (a person)’

밥부터 먹자. Let’s eat first.
내일부터 비 온대요. I hear that it will rain starting from tomorrow.
 처음부터 다시 하자. Let’s start over from the beginning.
언제부터 자는 거야? Since when are you sleeping?
오빠로부터 (or 오빠한테서) 편지가 왔어요. A letter came from my brother.

Both are possible, but they differ in meaning in the following case:

제 1 과에서 시험 문제가 나온다. The exam is based on chapter one.
제 1 과부터 시험 문제가 나온다. The exam starts from chapter one.

### 19.14 -까지

- ‘To; until’ (end point in time or space)

어젯밤 늦게까지 책을 읽었어요.
I was reading till late last night.

영업시간은 오전 8시부터 오후 5시까지입니다.
Our business hours are from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m.

 돌아와서부터 지금까지 줄곧 잠만 잔 거 있죠.
You know, I’ve been doing nothing but sleeping from when I got back up till now.

여기서부터 집까지 바래다 줄게.
I’ll escort you from here to your house.

- ‘And even’

세탁기, 냉장고, 그리고 침대까지 새로 샀다.
I bought a new washer, a new fridge, and even a new bed.

가족에 친척에 친구들까지 초대했어요.
She invited her family, her relatives, and even her friends.
• ‘Even; as far as’

**How is it possible to be that ignorant, even after graduating from college?**

**I’m ready to sacrifice even my life.**

**I don’t want to date her so much that I’d be hated for it by others.**

**I won’t go as far as calling it my ‘Churyang’ (resistance to alcohol), but I can drink about one bottle of soju.**

19.15 -조차 and -마저

These particles are somewhat similar to -까지 in that they express the meaning ‘even; as far as.’ However, there are also differences: -조차 is reserved for ‘even the most basic or the most expected thing,’ while -마저 and -까지 are used to indicate ‘even the last.’ Both -조차 and -마저 are used only for undesirable situations, but there is no such restriction on -까지.

• ‘Even the most basic’: -조차 is most natural

**I can’t remember even her name.**

**I am so tired that I don’t even want to lift a finger.**

**I slept without even knowing that someone came in.**

• ‘Even the last’: -마저/까지 is more natural than -조차

**He went as far as selling out his conscience.**

**I missed even the last bus/train; how am I going to get home?**

• Undesirable situation in general: any of -조차/마저/까지

**I don’t even have time to eat, let alone time to exercise.**

**Even his family members don’t seem to be aware of the fact that he got a divorce.**

**Even my closest friend didn’t come to my wedding, you know.**
• Desirable situation: only 가지 is natural

유엔 사무총장까지 지내신 훌륭한 분이세요.

He’s a great man who even served as the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

5 캐럿짜리 다이아까지 받았대요.

She even received a five-carat diamond ring.

그 남자는 못 하는 게 없어, 심지어 요리까지도.

There’s nothing he cannot do well, including even cooking.

19.16 -(이)나

• The best of the remaining choices (not used with past tense)

빵이나 먹지 말 밥을 해요?

Why don’t we just eat bread; what are you making rice for?

참견말고 걸레질이나 하지.

Why don’t you stop butting in and just do the mopping?

참도 안 오고 애인도 없고 빨래나 하자.

I can’t sleep, nor do I have a girlfriend, so let me just do the laundry.

이번 닭에는 좀 협들고 다음 닭에야 될 거 같은데요.

It won’t be ready this month; it will have to be next month, I’m afraid.

애기는 나중에 하고 빨리 먹기나 해.

You can talk later, so go ahead and just focus on eating.

• Emphasis on quantities that are more than expected

성수기라 그런지 항복 항공료가 천 붐이나 하는 거 있어.

Perhaps because it’s high season, the round trip airfare is as high as $1,000.

맥주를 자그마치 일곱 병이나 마셨어요!

I drank as many as seven bottles of beer!

-تصل이나 expresses even stronger emphasis on something that is more than expected.

네? 천 병씩이나 해요? 그렇게 비싸요?

What? A thousand dollars? That expensive?

일곱 병씩이나 마셨으니 팔름이 끝길 수밖에.

No wonder you were totally wasted, having drunk SEVEN bottles.

It can also be used casually for unexpected things that don’t involve quantity.

그냥 와도 되는데 팔 섭씨씩이나…

You didn’t have to bring anything; what’s this gift for?

아무거나 시키지 팔 갈비씩이나…

Anything should be fine; you don’t have to order (the expensive) Kalbi.

무슨 중병이 걸렸다고 병문안쪽이나…

What is this visit to check on her health for, as if she has some serious illness?
• Approximation (of quantity) in questions

- How much is a bag like that?
- How many students are there?

• For indefinite pronouns (see 3.2.5)

- 누구나, 언제나, 아무나, 아무거나

• ‘(Either)…or’ (See 21.1.3 for the conjunctive version -으나.)

- Try to learn either taekwondo or hapkido.
- Give me a call at home or at my office.
- Either this or that; they are much the same.

NOTE: ‘(Either…) or’ can be expressed by the word 또는 in formal language.

- Depending on the area, it will either snow or rain.
- It can be purchased either at a market or at a department store.

19.17 Miscellaneous other particles

• -씩 ‘each; respectively; apiece’

- I work eight hours each day.
- Give out three sheets for each person.
- Phone numbers are read digit by digit.
- It’s good to bring and eat a small amount each time when you dine at a buffet.

• -마다 ‘each; every’

- Each house has an air conditioner.
- Take one tablet every five hours.
- She’s not at home every time I call.

• -들 ‘plural -s’

It is unnecessary for most nouns to be marked for plurality as long as the context is clear, as in 사람이 많다. However, -들 must be kept when the noun is accompanied by a demonstrative, as in 그 사람들, 그 학생들, and so on – unless a plural numeral is included, as in 그 두 학생. In addition, it can be attached to adverbs, to connectives, and even to the verb at the end of a sentence to indicate the plurality of the subject noun.

- 왜들 안 와요?
- Why don’t you guys come?
- 편히들 쉬세요.
- You all have a good rest.
가면서들 먹어라.  
Eat them on your way back.

들어오세요 둘이.  
You all come in please.

-끼리 ‘among; by themselves’ (exclusiveness in a group activity or gathering)
우리끼리 애긴데, 팀장이 너무 거만한 거 같지 않아요?
Between ourselves, isn’t the boss too stuck-up?
가족끼리만 모이기로 했는데 친구를 데려 오면 어때해?
Just our family members were going to get together, so how come you brought your friends?
원래 거기끼리 모이게 마련이죠.
It’s always the case that birds of a feather flock together.

-(이)야 ‘if it be’
담한 마리줍이야 혼자 먹을 수 있지.
If it’s a matter of one chicken, I can finish it up by myself, of course.
말이야 쉽지만 행동으로 옮기기는 쉽지 않았어요.
If it’s talk, it’s easy, but it’s not easy to put the words into action.
생기기야 잘 생겼죠.
If it’s looks, he is good-looking, of course.

-(이)야말로 ‘indeed; be THE one’
그 사람이야말로 우리 부서에서 꼭 필요한 인물이지.
He is indeed an indispensable person in our department.
나야말로 이렇게 TV 보고 있을 때가 아니지. 내일이 시험인데.
I am the one who shouldn’t be watching TV like this. I have an exam tomorrow.

-은/는커녕 ‘far from; on the contrary; let alone’
반方面에 일등은커녕 10 등 안에도 못 들웠다.
Far from being at the top of the class, I doubt that you’ll be even within the top ten.
편지는커녕 전화 한 통도 없어요.
There’s not even a phone call from her, let alone a letter.
올 여름에는 퍼서는커녕 수영장도 한 번 못 갔어.
This summer, I couldn’t even go to the swimming pool once, let alone go on a summer vacation.
예쁜기는커녕 호박이 따로 없더라.
Far from being pretty, I found her to be just like a pumpkin (ugly).

NOTE: 커녕 can be replaced by 말할 것도 없고 or 고사하고, provided that 예쁜기는 is changed to 예쁜 건.
• -따라 ‘of all times’
  그날따라 사람이 너무 많았어요.  Of all days, it was that day that it was so crowded.
  금년따라 유난히 비가 많이 였다.  This year, there’s an unusual amount of rain.

• -께나 ‘to some extent’ [spoken/colloquial]
  고집께나 센데요.  She’s quite stubborn.
  심술께나 부리게 생겼다.  He looks somewhat cross-tempered.
  돈께나 있는 사람인 거 같애.  It seems like he’s got some money.
Nothing is absolute in life; it’s all a matter of comparison. This chapter focuses on how similarities and differences are expressed in Korean.

20.1 How to express equality and similarity

20.1.1 ‘As…as’

Many of the following expressions are figurative (involving exaggeration to some extent), which can add an interesting flavor to language.

- 만하다 ‘be as…as; be like…’

- 만하다 ‘be as…as; be like…’

- 만큼 ‘as…as’

- 정도 ‘about as much as; to the extent that’

The daughter is as tall as her mother.
The room is small, like the size of one’s palm.
Her voice is small, like that of a mosquito.
It’s as tiny as a bean.
It’s tiny, like a piece of snot. [familiar/casual]

The movie is as well made as the book.
Can there be anything as unfortunate as a marriage without love?
She doesn’t have an ounce of conscience, not even the slightest amount.
You’re supposed to receive as much credit as the effort you put in.
Order just as much as you’ll be able to eat; don’t order too much.

She’s about as tall as you are.
He can drink about as much as I can.
He drank until he became unconscious.
It’s so crowded that there’s no place to step.
-같다, -같이, -같은 ‘(be) as…as; (be) like…’

The room is like a pigsty.
I have a mountainous amount of work.
Your face looks as pale as a sheet of white paper.
She’s like a leech.
I look completely soaked, like a drenched mouse.
I feel devastated, as if the sky is falling.
She’s like a tiny locust stuck to that big guy (a giant tree).
I feel nervous, as if I’m walking on a thin ice.
I feel relieved, as if a rotten tooth came out.
It’s as good as new now that it’s repaired.
I wish I were as free as you are.
She looks as cunning as a sly fox.
He’s soft and meek like a sheep.
He won’t talk, like a mute who ate honey.
She keeps her appointments sharp and precise like a knife.
Stop that nonsense sleep-talk.
I feel so light that I think I can fly.

-듯하다, -듯이 ‘(be) as…as; (be) as if…’

He lies all the time, as often as he eats.
She goes hungry as frequently as she eats.
She splurges money like water.
Sweat is pouring down like rain.
I was so happy I could leap with joy.
You ate as quickly as a scared crab closes its eyes in the rainy southern wind.
She’s as capricious as boiling porridge.
It’s as quiet as if someone splashed cold water.
The book sells well, as if it has wings.
They show no concern, as if they’re watching a fire on the other side of the river.

As if nothing happened...
as rare as beans sprouting in a drought
just like a snake slithers over a fence (in a surreptitious manner)
like a squirrel running around the rim of a sieve (stuck in a routine)
just like beans get roasted by lightning (super quickly)

This liquor is as strong as that one.
Outside is as bright as broad daylight.
People are swarming in like bees.
Everywhere is as quiet as a mouse [as if a mouse died].

Your car and my car have the same color.
The wife and the husband are the exact same type.
We are no different from family because we have known each other for a long time.

The other company’s products are similar to ours.
The recent fierce competition in the green tea market reminds us of a war zone.
Those two universities are the two greatest in social science.
Cars made in Korea these days can measure up to foreign-made ones.
This company is on a par with the world’s most prominent companies when it comes to its technology.
• Spoken/colloquial expressions
  호두 속살은 마치 사람 두뇌하고 흡사하다.
  The inside of a walnut is similar to the human brain.
  포도 주스는 왜인하고 맛이 비슷하다.
  Grape juice tastes similar to wine.
  둘의 농구실력이 비까비까하다.
  The two’s basketball skills are neck-and-neck.
  버드와이저나 하이트나 그게 그거다 (or 거기서 거기다).
  Budweiser and Hite are about the same.
  다들 실력이 그만그만하다.
  Everyone’s ability is just about the same.
  형하고 동생하고 키가 맞먹는다.
  The older brother and the younger brother are about the same height.

• Idiomatic expressions
  두 팀 선수진이 막상막하요.
  The two teams are neck-and-neck in terms of the quality of their players.
  34살 노처녀나 35살 노총각이나 피장파장이지 뭐.
  A 34-year-old single woman and a 35-year-old single guy are no different, you know.
  두 이론이 대동소이하다.
  The two theories are six of one and half dozen of the other.
  두 학교가 별 차이 없어요. 오십보백보예요.
  There’s little difference between the two schools. They’re about the same.
  다들 서로 잘났다고 다투지만 내가 보기에 도토리 키재기다.
  They all argue that they’re better than the others, but they are all about the same as far as I can see. [It’s like a height contest among acorns.]

• Resemblance in appearance
  웃을 때 모습이 할머니와 꼭 닮았다.
  She looks exactly like Grandma when she laughs.
  아들이 아버지를 써 써다 (or 빼다 박았다). [spoken/colloquial]
  The son is a carbon copy of his father.

20.1.4 ‘Be no less than’
  현재 일본의 한류열풍은 동남아 지역에 못지 않는다.
  The recent wave of Korean pop-culture in Japan is no smaller than the one in South East Asia.
  우리 팀 실력이 그쪽 팀한테 한 치도 기울지 않는다.
  Our team’s skill is not in the least inferior to the other team’s.
20.2 How to express differences

• More/less
언니가 더/덜 예쁘다.
The older sister is more/less beautiful.
지하철이 훨씬 (더) 빠르다.
The subway is much faster.
동생이 월 복복하다. [spoken/colloquial]
The younger sister/brother is way smarter.
이 집이 백배 (더) 맛있어요. [spoken/colloquial]
This restaurant food is 100 times more delicious.
이 색상이 한층 (더) 고상합니다. [written/formal]
This color is much more elegant.
등록금 받돈도 없는데 하물며 차 살 돈이 있겠어?
He doesn’t even have money to pay for his tuition, much less for clothes.

• Than
사진보다 실험 잘 생겼다.
He is better looking in real life than in pictures.
내가 가는 거보다 내가 오는 게 어때?
How about you coming rather than me going?
예상했던 것보다 시험이 좀 어려웠어요.
The exam was more difficult than what we expected.
자유 없이 사느냐 차라리 죽는 게 낫다.
I’d rather die than live without freedom.
너를 시키느냐 내가 한다. 앓느냐 죽지.
I’d rather do it myself than ask you to do it. Better to die than suffer.

• Be better 낫다; be not as good as 못하다
이쪽 게 (더) 낫다/나야요.
This one is better.
사람이 짐승만도 못하다.
He’s worse than a brute.
이번 수상은 전 수상보다 못하다.
The current prime minister is not as good as the previous one.

• In comparison to; compared with
우리 회사가 타 회사에 비해 기술이 부족하다/월등하다.
Our company lacks/excels in technology compared with other companies.
 나는 너에 비하면 아주 개울든 편이야.
I am really lazy compared to you.
• Can’t compare; be beyond comparison; pales in comparison

시중 와인 맛은 양조장에서 음미하는 와인과 비교가 안 된다.

The taste of wine from the market can’t compare to wine from the brewery.

집에서 정성스럽게 싸 도시락은 어느 유명음식점 음식에 덤계 아니다.

Lunch packed at home with love is beyond comparison with food from any famous restaurant.

개는 나한테/나하고 상대가 안 된다.

He’s no match for me.

추진력으로 말할 것 같으면 나는 너한테 게임이 안 된다. [spoken/colloquial]

Speaking of driving force, I can’t compete with you.

그 회사 라면은 이 라면에 짜도 안 된다. [familiar/casual]

The taste of that company’s ramen is nothing near this one.

우리 팀의 현재 공격력으로는 상대팀한테 어림도 없다.

Our team’s current offense can’t match our opponent’s.

그 남자는 내 이상형 근처도 못 간다.

That guy doesn’t come even close to my ideal type of man.

저 배우는 내 여자친구에 비하면 저리가라다 (or 아무것도 아니다).

That actress cannot hold a candle to my girlfriend.

미모가 충향이 빼친다.

When it comes to beauty, she puts Cleopatra [Chunhyang] to shame.

• Be inferior to

승부 근성은 미스터 최한테 아직 멀었다.

You are far inferior to Mr. Choi’s fighting spirit.

운동 실력은 내가 그 친구한테 한참 밀린다.

My athletic abilities are far behind that guy’s.

동생 외모가 형한테 기운다/빠진다.

The little brother’s looks are not as good as his big brother’s.

남편 학벌이 부인한테 좀 밀린다.

The school the husband graduated from is not as good as the one the wife is from.

탁구는 내가 형한테 좀 꿀린다. [male speech]

When it comes to table tennis, I have to give in to my big brother.

20.3 How to express superlatives

• The -est

학생들 중에서 제일 똑똑하다.

He’s the smartest among all the students.

금강산이 가장 아름다운 산으로 손꼽힌다. [written/formal]

Kümgang Mt. is considered to be the most beautiful mountain.
20 COMPARISON

• Indirect expressions
  누구보다도 성실하다.  He’s as sincere as anyone.
  타의 추종을 불허한다.  He’s second to none.
  둘째가라면 서럽다.  I’m second to none.
  따라올 자가 없다.  She’s second to none.
  그 분야에 독보적인 존재이다.  He’s unrivaled in his field.
  꽃중의 꽃은 장미죠.  The flower of flowers is the rose, of course.
  들도 없는 친구예요.  She’s my one and only best friend.
  여름에는 냉면이면 그만이다.  Naengmyŏn is the best in summer.
  스트레스 푸는 데는 노래방이 왔다지.  [spoken/colloquial]
  그 영화 짱이다. [slangy]  That movie is tops.

20.4 How to express proportions and gradation

• -에 따라 ‘in proportion to; accordingly’
  능력에 따라 대우를 받는다.  Everyone is treated in proportion to their abilities.
  평균수명이 길어짐에 따라 고령화 문제가 심각하게 대두되고 있다.  As the average life span increases, aging emerges as a serious problem.
  국제유가가 폭등함에 따라 주식시장이 활기를 띈다.  The stock market is showing signs of life as the international price of oil soars.

• (-면) -을수록 (더) ‘the more…, the more…’
  잠은 잘수록 더 오는 법이다.  It’s natural that the more you sleep, the sleepier you get.
  생각하면 생각할수록 야기 올라요.  The more I think about it, the more exasperated I get.
  친한 사이일수록 더 예의를 지켜야 되는 거 아닌가요?  Shouldn’t people be more polite to someone close?
21 Conjunctives

 Conjunctives typically attach to verbs. They are used to combine clauses into longer sentences and to express various meanings relating to background, time, cause, purpose, and so on. (Adnominal patterns that express these types of meanings are also included in this chapter.)

21.1 Combination of equal-status clauses

21.1.1 ‘And’

• -고 (with descriptive verbs)
  방이 넓고 깨끗하다. The room is spacious and clean.
  광어가 떡이 좋고 생생합니다. The flounder is new and fresh.

• -(으)며 [formal/written]
  원기회복에 좋으며 부작용이 전혀 없습니다. It’s good for restoring energy and has no side effects at all.
  이번 지진으로 부상자가 많이 발생했으며 재산 피해도 많았습니다. Many were injured and a lot of property damage was incurred by the recent earthquake.

21.1.2 ‘And whatever’

• -(이)고...-(이)고
  약혼식이고 결혼식이고 간편하게 해.
  Make the ceremonies for the engagement, the wedding, and whatever, simple.
  과자고 빵이고 떡 좀 먹고 시작합시다.
  Let’s eat some cookies, bread, and whatever, before we begin the work.

• -(이)고 나발이고 [familiar/casual]
  여행이고 나발이고 돋이 있어야지.
  I have to have money for travel and whatever.
  디어트고 나발이고 더 이상 힘들어서 못 하겼다.
  Diet and whatever, it’s too hard to do it any longer.

• -(이)고 뭐고
  피서고 뭐고 시간이 있어야 가죠.
  I can’t go for a summer getaway and whatever else, without time.
It’s past midnight so the subway and whatever else are all closed.

With the dissertation and things, the semester just flew by without my realizing it.

Being invited to end-of-the-year parties and the like, I drank too much.

In terms of his looks, his walk, and everything, he is a complete Dad junior.

Some say Kyŏngju is good and others say Sŏrak Mt. is good; opinions vary.

Rain or shine [rain or snow], she exercises without skipping a single day.
-던가
학교에 있던가 집에 있던가 둘 중에 하나일 거야.

He will be at school or at home, either of the two.

뭐 해서 밥 먹지? 그냥 국에 말아 먹던가 해보았겠다.

What should I eat rice with? I guess I better eat it mixed with soup or something.

-든(지)
네가 오든지 내가 가든지 그 때 상황 봐서 하자.

Whether you come or I go, let’s play it by ear.

밥을 먹든지 말든지 상관 안 해.

I don’t care whether you eat or not.

심심하면 신문을 읽든지 (해).

If you’re bored, read a newspaper or something.

땀이든 뭐든 좀 드셔야지요.

You should eat something, whether it’s bread or anything.

-다든지…-다든지 (-다 changes to -라 for the verb -이다)
전화가 온다든지 누가 찾아 온다든지 하면 즉시 연락해, 알았지?

Let me know immediately if there’s a phone call or someone looking for me, okay?

수박이라든지 참외라든지 뭐 그런 거 없어요?

Do you have watermelon or melon, or something like that?

-(이)랄지…-(이)랄지 [spoken/colloquial]
인삼차랄지 생강차랄지 국산차로 아무 거나 한잔 주세요.

Give me Korean tea, like ginseng tea, ginger tea, or anything like that.

21.1.4 ‘Not only…but also’

-도…-고…-도
피아노도 잘 치고 노래도 잘 불러요.

She’s not only a good piano-player but also a good singer.

성적도 우수하고 대인관계도 원만합니다.

He has a high GPA and also gets along well with people.

-을 뿐더러, -을 뿐(만) 아니라
머리가 우수할 뿐더러 노력도 많이 해요.

She is not only smart, but also hard-working.

물건이 많을 뿐(만) 아니라 값도 싸 게 같아요.

It seems that they not only have a lot of stuff, but their prices are cheap as well.

-거니와, -(으)러니와
시간도 없거니와/없으러니와 만나고 싶지도 않아요.

Not only do I have no time, but I don’t want to see him either.
Flowers are not only expensive but they wither so soon, so...
Money is a problem, so is time.

- 만...-게 아니라
이 식당은 음식맛만 좋은 게 아니라 종업원들도 참 친절해.
This restaurant not only has good food, but their employees are really kind as well.

- (이)자, (이)요
처음이자 마지막이다.  
This is the first and the last.
시인이요 학자다.  
She is a poet and a scholar.

21.2 Combination of unequal-status clauses

In what follows, we will look at conjunctive patterns where one of the clauses is subordinate, providing additional information about the main clause (when the action occurred, why it occurred, and so forth). The dividing lines for the various clause types (‘sequence’ versus ‘reason,’ ‘background’ versus ‘sequence,’ etc.) is sometimes blurry, but they will do for the purposes of exposition.

21.2.1 Background

The following patterns give speakers a way to attract the listener’s interest and to provide the information needed to draw relevant inferences.

- 논데/은데
To draw the listener’s interest and attention:
저 한국 가는데 뭐 부탁할 거 없어요?
I’m going to Korea; do you have anything to ask of me?
부탁드릴게 한 가지 있는데 좀 들어 주시겠어요?
I have one favor to ask of you; would you do it for me?
장모님께 드릴 생일선물을 찾는데 뭐가 좋을까요?
I’m looking to buy a gift for my mother-in-law’s birthday; what do you recommend?
어제 백화점에 갔는데 세일을 크게 하더라구요.
I went to the department store yesterday and saw that they were having a big sale.

To have the listener draw relevant inferences:
지금 좀 피곤한데...(다음에 하면 안돼요?)
I’m a bit tired right now... (can I do it later?)
I noticed that the traffic was slow... (how did you arrive this early?)

I’ve lived in Korea 15 years already... (my Korean should be fluent, of course.)

We’re making chapch’ae... (come over and eat it.)

NOTE: -는 데 (written with an intervening space): ‘in doing…’

What goes into making chapch’ae?

• -نا가, -았던니

Both are used (only with first person, except in questions) to indicate situations in which one discovers something. Usually, -았던니 is not natural for a state that is brought about without the subject’s action – only -نا가 is appropriate for the first three sentences below. (-나 can be used instead of -نا가, but is less common and less colloquial.)

He’s not home; looks like he’s gone to school.

I was drinking with a friend and before I knew it, it was past midnight.

The economy is so bad these days that people have become very ungenerous.

As I heard the other side’s story, I found out that they were falsely accused.

I guarantee the movie will be a hit.

I predict there will be a big earthquake within a year.

• -은 즉, -전대

As I heard the other side’s story, I found out that they were falsely accused.

As I heard the other side’s story, I found out that they were falsely accused.

As I heard the other side’s story, I found out that they were falsely accused.
21.2.2 Time: simultaneity

• -(으)면서 ‘while; as’

The two clauses that are connected by these forms typically share a subject. (으며 can be used instead of 으면서 but is less common and less colloquial.)

음악을 들으며 공부하는 데로이 있다.

I have a habit of studying while listening to music.

잠꼬대를 하면서 잘 자더라.

I saw you sleeping very well while sleep-talking.

일찍 들어 오겠다 그러면서 급히 나갔어요.

He went out hurriedly, saying that he’ll be home early.

경기가 악화되면서 해외여행 인구가 부쩍 줄었다.

As the economy worsened, the number of people traveling abroad plummeted.

• -을 때, -을 적에 ‘when’

여행할 때 비상금을 꼭 챙겨 가세요.

Make sure to take emergency money when you travel.

피곤할 때는 항상 잠들었어요.

Going to a sauna every time I feel tired has become my habit.

시간 있을 때마다 한국어를 공부하려고 합니다.

I intend to study Korean whenever I have time.

어렸을 적에 친구들과 술 바꼭질을 자주 했다.

I often played hide-and-seek when I was little.

• -동안(예), -사이(예) ‘during’

-동안 can be for any amount of time, but -사이 is usually a short while.

공사하는 동안 출입을 잡아주 주시기 바랍니다.

Please keep out of the place during construction.

계산대에서 기다리는 동안 호기심에 책을 들려보기 시작했다.

I started leafing through the book out of curiosity while waiting at the cashier’s.

친구가 일을 보는 사이/동안 서점에 가서 시간을 때웠다.

I went to a bookstore and killed time while my friend was taking care of her errand.

눈 깜짝할 사이에 벌어진 일이예요.

It’s something that happened in the blink of an eye.

• -중에, -도중에 ‘in the middle of’

Both indicate that something occurs in the middle of an action, but -도중에 emphasizes that the action expressed in the first clause is interrupted.

바쁘신 중에 시간을 내 주셔서 감사합니다.

Thank you for taking time out for me when you are busy.
수업하는 중에 전화가 왔다.
There was a phone call in the middle of class.
통화하는 도중에 전화가 그냥 끊기더라구요.
During our phone conversation, the phone just got cut off.
말씀하시는 도중에 죄송합니다만…
I’m sorry for interrupting during your conversation, but…

NOTE: The same meaning can be expressed by a compound noun.
(수업중에, 통화 도중에, 말씀 도중에, and so on.)

• -어서
점어서는 참 예뻤는데 이제 많이 늙었다.
She was very pretty when she was young, but she’s really aged now.
아주 어서서 미국에 왔어요.
I hear that he came to the States when he was very little.
10 년만에 박사가 되서 돌아왔어요.
I heard that she came back in ten years with a Ph.D.
새벽 2 시가 넘어서 들어왔어요.
He came home after 2:00 in the morning.

• -시 [written/formal]
Combined with Sino-Korean nouns, -시 functions as a conjunctive.
개봉 후 보관 시 직사광선을 피해야 주십시오.
When storing after opening, avoid direct sunlight.
카드 도난 사고 발생 시 카드 회사에 즉시 연락하십시오.
Inform the credit card company immediately when the card is stolen.
이착륙과 활주 시에는 커버를 질어 놓으십시오.
Keep the tray folded during takeoff, landing, and taxiing.

21.2.3 Time: sequentiality

• -고 (with action verbs)
약을 먹고 잡이 들었어요. She took the medicine and fell asleep.
졸업하고 바로 취직했어요. He graduated and got a job right away.
방석 깔고 앉으세요. Please use the cushion and sit down.

• -어서(서)
Unlike clauses connected by -고, which express separate events that happen to be in sequence, use of -어서 indicates that something is shared by the two actions. That something can be a direct object, a location, a co-participant, expertise, a posture, and so on.
The difference between -고 and -어서

In English, *and* can connect clauses denoting actions that either overlap or occur in a sequence. In Korean, -고 denotes a simple sequence, while -어서 marks an overlapping sequence (where ‘something’ from the first action is used in the interpretation of the second action).

-저녁 먹고 영화 봤다. *I ate dinner and saw a movie.*  [simple sequence]
-나가서 저녁 먹었다. *I went out and ate dinner (outside).*  [overlapping sequence]

The following paragraph helps show the contrast between -고 and -어서.

아침에 일어나서 사워하고 밥 먹고 학교 가서 공부 좀 했다가 친구 만나서 점심 먹고 캐피 한 잔 하고 저녁에 들어와서 두 시간 동안 한국어 복습하고 이메일 좀 하고 잡아.

-어서 (but not -고) can be replaced by the more colloquial -어 가지고/갖고:

아침에 일어나 갖고...학교 가 가지고...친구 만나 가지고...들어와 갖고...
• -어다

The referent of the direct object in the -어다 clause is transferred from one place to another.

/Shall I bring some coffee for you?
Would you buy it on the way and bring it for me?
I’ll be back after giving my friend a ride home.

• -자마자, -기가 무섭게 ‘as soon as’

-자마자 is neutral, but -기가 무섭게 expresses the speaker’s feeling of being taken aback by just how soon something happens after an earlier event.

He got married as soon as he graduated from college.
She disappeared somewhere as soon as the class was over.
The minute he received his salary, he used it up, you know.
Just as soon as the rainy spell is over, the scorching heat is here in full force.

• -는 즉시, -는 대로 ‘immediately’

You have to come out immediately when you get my phone call, got it?
As soon as you have food trash, take it out immediately.
Let’s set the date again as soon as the weather warms up.
Call me as soon as you get up in the morning.
I’ll e-mail you as soon as I arrive in Thailand.

• -는 순간 ‘the moment when’

My heart skipped a beat the moment I saw you for the first time.
I felt utter darkness the moment I heard the news.
• -다(가) (shift of action, change of status)
  공부하다 말고 무슨 믿 생각이야?
  *What distracting thoughts are you having in the middle of studying?*
  밤새 못 자다가 이제야 잠이 들었어요.
  *He couldn’t sleep all night, but fell asleep only just now.*
  이 길로 곤장 가다가 좌회전하면 됩니다.
  *You can go straight this way and make a left turn.*
  몇 번 사양을 하다가 그냥 받았어요.
  *I tried to decline it several times, but then just accepted it.*
  이렇게 꾸물거리다 눈겼다.
  *I am afraid that we’ll be late moving at this snail’s pace.*
  정말 알다가도 모를 일이에요.
  *It’s really beyond my comprehension.*

• -었다(가) (shift after completion of the first action)
  화장실에 좀 갔다 올게.
  *I’ll be back after using the restroom.*
  갈비는 양념에 재었다가 구워라.
  *Barbecue the galbi after keeping it marinated.*
  겫다가 한번 다시 커 보세요.
  *Try turning it off and then turning it back on.*

• -다…-다 한다 (repeated alternation of two actions)
  하루종일 비가 오다 안 오다 하네요.
  *It’s been raining off and on all day.*
  이랬다 저랬다 하지 말고 확실하게 해.
  *Make your attitude clear without flip-flopping.*
  기름값이 계속 올랐다 내렸다 하네요.
  *The gas price keeps going up and down.*
  정신이 왔다 갔다 한다.
  *I’m feeling out of it. [My mind is going back and forth]*

21.2.4 Time: before, after, until

• -기(직)전 ‘(immediately) before’
  더 늦기 전에 정밀검사를 받아 보십시오.
  *Get a complete check-up before it gets too late.*
  어두워지기 전에 술소로 돌아 왔어요.
  *We came back to our lodgings before it got dark.*
  건물이 폭파되기 직전에 구조되었습니다.
  *I heard that he got rescued just before the building exploded.*
  얼마나 추웠는지 냉동되기 일보직전이었다구요.
  *It was so cold that I was just a step away from freezing, you know.*
• -은 다음, -은 후, -은 뒤 ‘after’

다음 is most common in speaking; 후 is formal-sounding; 뒤 is usually used in weather forecasts or recipes.

우선 발등의 빈 부터 끝 다음에 천천히 생각해 보자.

Let’s think about it in a leisurely way after taking care of the super-urgent thing first.

지하철에서 내린 다음에 버스로 갈아타야 되나요?

Should I transfer to a bus after getting off the subway?

범대를 졸업한 후에 판사가 되는 게 목표입니다.

It’s my goal to become a judge after graduating from law school.

박사학위를 받은 직후에 강단에 섰다.

She started teaching immediately after getting her Ph.D.

많은 뒤 차차 흐러지겠습니다.

It will become gradually cloudy after being sunny.

물이 펄펄 뿜기 시작한 뒤 시금치를 넣는다.

Put in the spinach after the water starts boiling hard.

• -을 때까지 ‘until’

자리가 날 때까지 여기서 기다리지요.

Why don’t we wait here until a seat becomes available?

전원이 다 참석할 수 있을 때까지 바베큐 파티를 연기하자.

Let’s postpone our barbecue party until everyone can attend it.

• -기까지 ‘up to’

This pattern implies that a lot of time and effort has been put into achieving some sort of success.

이 책이 나오기까지 우리는 꽤나는 노력을 했다.

We’ve made extreme efforts to get to the point where this book came out.

우리가 결혼에 곧이기까지 정말 우여곡절이 많았어요.

There were a lot of complications and twists up to the point where we finally got married.

21.2.5 Cause/reason

• -어서, -니까

The two forms most frequently used to express cause/reason, -어서 and -니까, are often interchangeable.

핸드폰이 있어서/있으니까 너무 편해요.

It’s so convenient to have a cell phone.

너무 많아서/많으니까 끼 먹어야 할지 모르겠다.

I don’t know what to eat because there’s so much food.
It’s hard to drive with a bad sense of direction.

I get nervous driving because I haven’t driven for a while.

However, there is a difference between the two: -니까 is appropriate for the speaker’s reasoning or justification of a statement or a proposal/command, while -어서 is most natural for a straightforward and established causal relation.

Don’t trust it too much because this computer is not an authorized one.

This computer is not an authorized product, so it breaks down often.

**Use only -니까, not -어서**

To provide reasoning or justification for the speaker’s proposal or command:

가까우니까 걸어가요.

*Why don’t we walk since it’s close?*

오늘은 너무 늦었으니까 내일 가자.

*Let’s go tomorrow since it’s too late today.*

주말에는 봄비니까 주중에 가는 게 어떨까?

*How about going there during week days since it gets crowded on weekends?*

아무 때고 꾸벅으니까 전화 주세요.

*Give me a call anytime because it’s fine with me.*

When the relation is discovered spontaneously by the speaker:

담배를 피우니까 이상하게 머리가 아픈 거 있지.

*It’s strange that my head hurts when I smoke a cigarette.*

담도리탕 보니까 소주 한 잔 생각난다.

*Looking at the spicy chicken stew, I feel like having a glass of soju.*

이제 이메일 주소 알았으니까 자주 연락할게.

*Now that I know your e-mail address, I’ll be in touch often.*

When the speaker is challenged to justify the result:

차가 막혔으니까 늦었지 (왜 늦어?).

*I was late because there was a traffic jam, of course (why else?).*

표가 매진되었으니까 못 갔지.

*I couldn’t go because the tickets were sold out, of course.*

**NOTE:** -오니/사오니 is archaic-sounding, but is used in certain formal situations such as for automated messages: 지금은 부재 중이오니 (or 전화를 받을 수 없사오니) 메시지를 남겨 주시기 바랍니다 ‘I’m not in right now (I can’t answer the phone right now), so please leave a message.’
Use only -어서, not -니까

If the causal relation is completely established or clearly expected and there is no need to explain or justify (-니까 sounds unnatural at best):

- 차가 막혀서 늦었습니다.  I’m late because of the slow traffic.
- 표가 매진되어 못 갔어요.  I couldn’t go because the tickets were sold out.
- 출퇴근 시간이어서 못 봤어요.  It’s rush hour, so it’s crowded.
- 선약이 있어서 못 갈 거 같아요.  I have a previous engagement, so I don’t think I can go.

In fixed expressions:

- 늦어서 죄송합니다.  I’m sorry for being late.
- 못 알아서 미안하다.  I’m sorry for not having recognized you.
- 전화 주서서 감사합니다.  Thank you for the phone call.
- 민망해서 혼났어요.  I felt terrible because I was embarrassed.

-기 때문에

This is usually found in formal/written language rather than in speaking. It places a strong focus on the reason, and like -어서, it cannot be followed by a command or proposal.

- The majority of traffic accidents occur because people drive after drinking.
- Because she majored in oceanography, she has a lot of interest in the ocean.

-기에, -길래

-기에 is usually for written/formal language while -길래 is for spoken/colloquial use.

- 너무 늦었기에 맥까지 모셔다 드렸습니다.  I took her home because it was late.
- 쌓길래 왕창 샀어.  I bought tons because they were cheap.
- 기 죽어 있는 거 같길래 인심 좀 썩다.  I was generous with him because he seemed to be in low spirits.

-어 가지고/갖고, -는 바람에

These two forms are frequently employed, but usually for colloquial speech. 가지고 can indicate any type of reason, but 바람에 is most natural for a sudden happening.

- My head feels numb because I couldn’t sleep last night.
I starved all day because I didn’t have a penny.

I submitted my exam without answering all the questions because I didn’t have enough time.

I had no choice but to make a sudden stop because the car in front of me stopped out of the blue.

Sales for Korean-made products are slow because imported products are pouring in.

• -(으)므로 [formal/written]

You have been a role-model for others, hence this award.

No information about the classroom is available yet, so I will notify you later via e-mail.

• -느라(고) ‘as a result of doing something’

I’ve been so busy for a while packing for my move.

Does it make sense to say you can’t go to your class because of sleeping in?

Thank you for coming this far.

• -다고 (-다 changes to -라 for the verb -이다)

It’s not something that is going to be solved by postponing.

We are not necessarily happy just because we have a lot of money.

Eat slowly. Don’t eat in a hurry just because you’re hungry.

Everybody is excited because it’s school break.

• -을/를까봐 ‘for fear that …should’

I set the alarm because I was worried I may not be able to get up in the morning.
I worried so much because I was afraid that I might miss the last bus.

21.2.6 Intention/purpose

• -(으)려고 (For spoken variants, -올려고, -울라고, see 8.3.)

- I registered for a health club in order to stay young.
- I’m planning to take a Korean class this semester.
- I was in fact just about to call you.

• -(으)려

Except in the case of 뭐 하러, this form must be followed by verbs of coming and going.

- He went out to meet a friend.
- I was gone to get a massage.
- Do you go to play golf these days?
- What are you buying a used car for?

• -기 위하여/위해 [formal/written]

- They tried all sorts of measures in order to help the nation understand them.
- There will be a memorial service shortly for the soldiers who died in war to protect the country.

• -고자 [formal/written]

- We are planning to have a regular meeting; we sincerely hope that you will attend it.
- We called for a meeting in the hopes of listening to your opinions.
- You can do anything if you just have the strong desire to do it.

• -차 [formal/written]

Combined with a few Sino-Korean nouns, -차 functions as a conjunctive.

- They are scheduled to tour the country for their regular concerts.
President Roh left Korea to visit Hawaii.

- 을/를 경 ‘for dual purpose’

하숙비도 절약하고 친구도 사귈 기회가 생활을 해 보는 게 어떨까?

How about trying dorm life to save on the boarding house expense and also to make friends?

영어도 배우고 건문도 넓힐 겪 해외 연수를 계획 중입니다.

I’m planning on a language course abroad to learn English and also to broaden my experience.

- 을 생각, -을 작정, -을 션

앞으로 어떻게 할 생각이야?

What are you planning to do from now on?

당분간 호텔에서 몸을 작정입니다.

I’m planning to stay at a hotel for a while.

졸업을 할 혼 미를 션이야.

I’m planning to postpone my graduation by one year.

21.2.7 Purpose/result

- 게, -도록 ‘so that, to the point’

These two forms are more or less interchangeable, but -도록 is less common and slightly formal-sounding compared to -게. (See 10.4.3 for -게.)

Purpose:

30 분만 더 자게 내버려 두자.

Let’s leave him so he can sleep just 30 more minutes.

갈비 굽게 석탄 불 좀 꺼우자.

Let’s start the charcoal fire so we can barbecue the galbi.
Try and say that again, so I can understand.
Water the plants regularly so they won’t die.
Put on the lid so the soup won’t get cold.

Result (all fixed expressions):

코가 비뚤어지게 마셨어.  I drank a lot until my nose got twisted.
종일 눈이 빼지게 기다렸어.  I waited all day until my eyes popped out.
뻐 빼지게 일만 했어.  I only worked my guts [bones] out.
ripple 그렇게 돌이지게 쳐다보니?  What are you staring at, as if you could puncture a hole (in my face)?
입에 침이 마르게 놓 침찬을 하더라.  I heard him praising you until his saliva dried up.
내가 귀에 못이 박히게 얘기했잖아.  How many times have I told you [until a nail got hammered into your ear]?
혀가 담도록 여러 번 말을 했잖아.  Didn’t I tell you so many times that my tongue wore out?
귀가 따갑도록 전소리를 들었다.  I heard him nagging till my ears were burning.
손이 밀이 되도록 빌었다.  I begged and groveled for forgiveness [until my hands became feet].

The two forms are not always interchangeable. In the following examples, choice of either -개 or -도록 is fixed. (See 17.1.2 for -도록 하다.)

나가세요? 어디 가시계요?  Are you going out? To go somewhere?
제발 조용히 좀 해라. 잠 좀 자게.  Please keep quiet. So I can sleep.
날씨가 기가 막혀하게 좋다.  The weather is breathtakingly good.
이 기회에 코를 납작하게 해 줘야지.  I better crush his arrogance this time.
손에 몸을 쥐게 한다.  It makes my palms sweat.
서울이 몰라 보게 달라졌어요.  Seoul has become unrecognizable.
밤새도록 열이 나고 아팠어요.  I was sick with fever all night [till dawn].
죽도록 사랑했는데...  I loved her to death but...
21.2.8 **Condition**

- **-(으)면**

누가 보면 두 사람이 사귀는 지 알겠다.

*If anybody saw them, they would think that the two are dating.*

될 수 있으면 영양소를 고르고루 섭취하도록 하세요.

*If possible, try to take all nutrients evenly.*

한국말을 잘 하려면 한국말을 가능한 한 많이 사용해야 한다.

*You should use Korean as much as possible if you want to be good at it.*

숙제 다 했으면 이 것 좀 도와 줘라?

*Would you help me with this if you’re done with your homework?*

- **-(으)면...-을텐데/(으)련만**

조금만 더 열심히 했으면 합격했을텐데.

*I would have passed (the exam) if I had worked harder.*

운동을 좀 열심히 하면 좋으련만.

*How nice it would be if he exercised diligently.*

내가 여유가 있으면 좀 도와 주련만.

*I’d help them a bit if I could afford it.*

- **-었더라도,-었던들**

좀 일찍 떠났더라도 늦지 않았을텐데...

*If we had left early, we wouldn’t have been late.*

미리 연락을 해 봤더라도, 이런 불상사는 없었을 거 아니에요?

*If you had informed us in advance, there wouldn’t have been a mishap like this.*

조금만 더 컸었던들 새로운 분야에 도전할 수 있을텐데...

*If I were just a bit younger, I would be able to take up the challenge of a new field.*

내가 키가 더 크고 날씬했던들 슈퍼모델 대회에 출전했을텐데...

*If I had been taller and slimmer, I would have competed in the supermodel contest.*

- **-다면** (-다 changes to -라 for the verb -이다)

내일 지구가 멸망한다면, 오늘 하루 무엇을 하겠습니까?

*What would you do today if tomorrow were the end of the world?*

만일 내가 복권에 당첨된다면, 세계일주를 하고 싶어요.

*I would like to travel around the world if I won the lottery.*

만약 그 말이 사실이라면, 내 손에 장을 지지겠다.

*If that were true, I’d be a monkey’s uncle. [I’d cook stew in my hands.]*

내가 나라면 어떻게 하겠니?

*What would you do if you were me?*
• -거든 (used with a command or proposal)
  조금 있다가 드라마 끝나거든 가라.  Go in a little while after the drama is over.
  너무 비싸거든 사지 마세요.  Don’t buy it if it’s too expensive.
  비 오거든 소풍가는 거 취소하자.  Let’s cancel the picnic if it rains.

• -어야(만) ‘only if’
  두 가지 시험에 다 붙어야만 운전면허를 받을 수 있습니다.
  You can get a driver’s license only if you pass two types of tests.
  하늘을 바라 볼을 따지.
  You have to take necessary action to achieve an intended goal.
  [Only if you look at the sky, can you grab a star.]
  지원자가 학생이 어야/학생이러야 합니까?
  Do the applicants have to be students?

• -는 한 ‘as long as’
  혼이 닳는 한 도와 드릴게요.
  I will help you to the best of my ability.
  될 수 있는 한 자극적인 음식은 피하도록 하셔야 됩니다.
  You should avoid spicy food as much as possible.

• -을 경우 ‘in case’
  제가 늦을 경우를 대비해서, 마당에 불 좀 커 놓으세요.
  In case I’m late, please turn on the light in the yard.
  만에 하나라도 내가 못 올 경우에 내 대신 회의에 참석 좀 해 줄래?
  Just in case I can’t come, can you attend the meeting on my behalf?

21.2.9 Concession (‘even if; even though’)

• -어도
  표백제를 써도 얼룩이 안 지워져요.
  The stain doesn’t come out even if I use bleach.
  그런 일은 상상만 해도 끔찍하다.
  It’s scary even just to imagine such a thing.
  삼일 전까지만 해도 이번 모임에 나온다고 했는데.
  Even as recently as three days ago she said she would come to this meeting.
  이 돈은 무슨 일이 있어도 (or 하늘이 두 쪽 나도) 갈아야 해.
  You must pay this money back no matter what happens (even if the sky falls).
  절대로 피 한 방울 안 나올 사람야.
  He’s really a cold-blooded person. [Even if he’s stabbed, no blood will come out.]
  늦어도 다음주 월요일까지는 제출하겠습니.
  I’ll submit it by next Monday at the latest.
Even though it's hot (because it's summer), it's too hot.

-(이)라도 is used instead of -(이)어도 for the verb -이다.

I'm grateful even if it's just words.

It's not late even if we start from now.

You should have at least phoned me.

Anything is fine, so give it to me quickly.

-더라도, -을지라도

Hang in there for the time being even if it's tough.

Even if you had come earlier, you wouldn't have been able to see your friend leaving.

Even though the questions were tough, how can you not get even one answer correct?

Even if I had to get a loan, I really want to buy this house.

Even if I have to take a vacation, I intend to be sure to attend that friend's wedding.

Many people gathered to watch the soccer game in spite of the rain.

Thank you for coming in spite of the difficult traffic.
Although it was late at night, the students’ demonstration continued.

Although it was late at night, the street was filled with people.

-even

Even if it’s far, how far can it be?
Even if I try, I can’t possibly bear it.
Oh well, I’m none the worse for the loss.

-어 팍자 [spoken/colloquial]
I don’t think he’s home even if you call.
It will only hurt your mouth to say it.
He couldn’t have run that far. [It’s a flea even if he jumps.]

-은들 (used with rhetorical questions)
If it’s expensive, how expensive can it be?
What’s the use of regretting?
What would it achieve to find my birth mother?

-기로서니
No matter how upset you are, you shouldn’t use such harsh language.
Even if I bought some expensive clothes, do you have to nag like that?

-을망정, -을지언정
Even though I’m poor, I don’t beg from others.
If you can’t say ‘thank you,’ you better not be angry at least.
Even if I have to starve to death, I don’t want to do such a thing.
Even if I have to give up, I don’t have any desire to ask for help.
• -(으)나마
작으나마 성의로 받아 주세요.
   Although it’s small, please accept it as a token of my appreciation.
도와주신 못하나마 방해는 하지 말아야지요.
   If you can’t help, you better not interfere at least.
비록 적은 돈이나마 치료비에 보태세요.
   It’s not much, but please use it to defray your medical expenses.
멀리서나마 생일 축하드려요.
   I congratulate you on your birthday, although it’s from far away.

• -(으)면...-었지
죽으면 죽었지, 나하고는 같이 안 갈래.
   Even if I died, I wouldn’t want to go with you.
같이 가기 싫으면 싫었지, 왜 소리를 지르고 그래?
   Even if you don’t want to go with me, why do you have to yell?
헤어지면 헤어졌지, 더 이상은 못 참겠어요.
   Even if we break up, I can’t stand it any longer.

• -거늘 [literary/old-fashioned]
어린 애들도 젠서를 알거늘 하물며 어른이 안 지키셔야 말이 되니까?
   Does it make sense for adults not to maintain order when even children do it?
동물도 자기 새끼는 귀한 줄 알거늘 너는 이제 동물만도 못하냐?
   Aren’t you worse than animals; even they know how precious their little ones are.

21.2.10 Contrast
• -지만
차린 건 없지만 많이 드세요.
   I didn’t prepare much food, but help yourself.
피곤하시겠지만 이 서류 좀 검토해 주시겠어요?
   You must be tired, but would you please go over this document for me?
운동이 중요하다지만 지난번 운동은 오히려 몸에 해롭다.
   Exercise is said to be important, but excessive exercise does more harm than good for the body.

• -(으)나 [formal/written]
의견에 따르긴 하겠으나 결과는 책임지지 않겠습니다.
   I’ll follow your decision, but not take responsibility for the result.
좋은 약은 일에 쓰나 몸에 이롭다.
   Good medicine is bitter to the mouth but good for the body.
- 는데/은데 (used for a mild and implicit contrast)

공부는 잘하는데 사교성이 없어.  She’s good academically but not sociable.
알았었는데 생각이 안 나네요.  I used to know but can’t remember.
물건은 좋네요 값이 비싸다.  It’s a good product but expensive.

- 건만 (used for an emphatic contrast, followed by something disappointing)

할 일은 많은 건만 시간이 너무 없다.  I have so much to do, but have so little time.
나이는 몇을 만큼 꿈었건만 사람이 왜 그 모양이지?  He’s old enough, but how come he’s so immature?

-(으)면서 ‘while, at the same time’

매일 만나면서 안 만난대요.  They see each other every day, but they say that they don’t.
많이 갔으면서 뒤가 피곤해?  Why are you tired after having slept so much?
갑이 않으면서도 절긴 것 같다.  It seems that the cloth is thin, yet durable.

- 되

가기는 가되 너무 일찍 가진 마.  You can go, but don’t go too early.
마시긴 마시되 적당히 마셔라.  You can drink, but drink moderately.

- 는 게 (used to express regrets and excuses)

일찍 온다는 게 (그만) 차가 막하는 바람에 늦었어요.  I meant to come early but because of heavy traffic, I was late.
한 번 찾아 뵐다는 게 (그만) 어떻게 하다보니가…  I meant to come and pay you a visit, but somehow…

- 는/은 반면에 [formal/written]

대외적으로 명성을 얻고 있는 반면에 대내적으로는 불신을 사고 있다.  They are earning fame on the outside, but incurring distrust on the inside.
카펫은 경제적인 반면에 위생적이지는 않다.  A carpet is economical but not sanitary.

- 것과는 달리, -것과는 대조적으로 [formal/written]

예상했던 것이는 달리 상황이 그리 나쁘지 않았다.  The situation wasn’t that bad, unlike what was expected.
뉴스에 보도되는 것과는 대조적으로 경제가 아직도 많이 침체되어 있다.  The economy is still very down in contrast to what’s reported on the news.
This chapter concentrates on the use of quoted clauses, adnominal clauses (such as 하는 일 and 입던 옷), -지 clauses, and nominalizations involving -기 and -음.

22.1 Quoted/reported clauses

Through direct and indirect quotes, speakers report what they have said or heard and what they think, believe, intend, and so on.

22.1.1 Direct quotes

A direct quote – stating exactly what was heard or thought – is expressed with the help of -하고 for onomatopoeic sounds and either -하고 or -라고 for speech and thoughts. (Double quotation marks are used for speech, and single quotation marks for thoughts in Korean.)

“딩동댕” 하고 초인종이 울렸다.
‘Ding-dong-dang,’ the door bell rang.

“내일 우리집에 올래?” 하고/라고 물었다.
‘Will you come over to my place tomorrow?,’ he asked.

‘아픈 거 아닌가’ (하고) 걱정했어요.
‘I was worried (thinking), Isn’t she sick?’

‘괜찮아 지겠지’ (하고 생각)했는데 증세가 더 심해졌어.
‘I thought, ’It’ll get better,’ but the symptoms got worse.

‘좀 더 열심히 했으면 좋았을걸’ 하고 후회가 돼요.
‘I regret it (thinking), ’It would have been nice if I had worked harder.’

‘이게 뭐악이냐’ 했어요.
‘I thought to myself, ‘What a windfall this is.’

Some direct quotes have become part of fixed expressions.

뭐니 뭐니해도 소주에는 삼겹살이 최고지요.
Pork belly meat is the best for drinking soju with, no matter what they say.

이제 와서 나 물라라 하면 어먹해?
How can you say you don’t care at this point?

이래라 저래라 말이 많아요.
He’s very bossy with his demands [saying, ‘Do it this way, do that way’].
보자 보자 하니까 못 하는 말이 없어.
Because I’m so patient with you, you don’t watch what you say.

22.1.2 *Indirect quotes*

An indirect quote – paraphrasing and reporting what was heard or thought – is formulated in the report style, which is similar in many respects to the casual speech style, as illustrated below. The reported information is accompanied by -고 했다 in written/formal/neutral language, by (-고) 그랬다 in spoken/colloquial language, by -고 물었다 for questions, and so on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Casual speech style</th>
<th>Report style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>되/하니/하라/하자</td>
<td>한다/하니/하라/하자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement</td>
<td>Same as to the left except: (책)이다 is changed to (책)이다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보니/보(느)나/ 찾아/찾(느)나</td>
<td>보(느)나/ 찾아(느)나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보아라/ 찾아라</td>
<td>보라/ 찾아라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보자/ 찾아</td>
<td>Same as to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Proposal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report style differs from the casual speech style in two major ways. First, questions allow only the -냐 ending (으냐 after a consonant for descriptive verbs), whereas the casual speech style allows either -니 or -냐. Second, the report style command ending is -(으)라, while a casual speech command calls for -어/아라. Here are some examples.

“책을 찾는다/찾았다.”
→ 책을 찾는다고/찾았다고 했다. *He said he was looking for/found the book.*

“음식 맛이 좋다/좋았다.”
→ 음식 맛이 좋다고/좋았다고 한다. *They say the food is/was delicious.*

“비 오면 연기할 거예요.”
→ 비 오면 연기할 거라 그랬어요. *They said they’d postpone it if it rains.*

“뭘 보니?”
→ 뭘 보나고 물었다. *She asked me what I was looking at.*

“날씨 좋으니까?”
→ 날씨 좋으니까고 물었다. *He asked me if the weather is nice.*

“이제 가 봐.”
→ 이제 가 보라고 하십니다. *He says that you can go now.*
All other styles, including those with special endings, give way to the above one and only report style. The following table presents an overview of how sentences with various types of endings are indirectly quoted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence</th>
<th>Indirect quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Statement</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“가다” or “가(요)”</td>
<td>간다고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“가다” or “가(요)”</td>
<td>간다고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“가겠다”</td>
<td>간다고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“가겠다”</td>
<td>간다고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“갈 거예요”</td>
<td>갈 거라고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Question</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“합니까?” or “해(요)?”</td>
<td>하나고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“합니까?” or “해(요)?”</td>
<td>하나고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“하겠습니까?”</td>
<td>하겠냐고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“할 거야?”</td>
<td>할 거냐고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“할래요?”</td>
<td>할래요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“앉아(요)” or “앉아라”</td>
<td>앉으라고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proposal</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“앉읍시다” or “앉아(요)”</td>
<td>앉자고</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: The suffix -었 is always retained, but -겠 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change.

Here are some samples that compare indirect quotes in various styles to their direct quote counterparts. (The honorific suffix -시 can be added depending on who is making the report to whom, regardless of whether it originally appeared in the speech being reported – see ch. 2.)

“밥 먹으라.”  
→ 밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.  
I told her to eat.

“같이 보자.”  
→ 같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.  
I suggested that we see it together.

NOTE: The suffix -었 is always retained, but -겠 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence</th>
<th>Indirect quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“밥 먹어라.”</td>
<td>밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“같이 보자.”</td>
<td>같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some samples that compare indirect quotes in various styles to their direct quote counterparts. (The honorific suffix -시 can be added depending on who is making the report to whom, regardless of whether it originally appeared in the speech being reported – see ch. 2.)

“밥 먹어라.”  
→ 밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.  
I told her to eat.

“같이 보자.”  
→ 같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.  
I suggested that we see it together.

NOTE: The suffix -었 is always retained, but -겠 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence</th>
<th>Indirect quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“밥 먹어라.”</td>
<td>밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“같이 보자.”</td>
<td>같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some samples that compare indirect quotes in various styles to their direct quote counterparts. (The honorific suffix -시 can be added depending on who is making the report to whom, regardless of whether it originally appeared in the speech being reported – see ch. 2.)

“밥 먹어라.”  
→ 밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.  
I told her to eat.

“같이 보자.”  
→ 같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.  
I suggested that we see it together.

NOTE: The suffix -었 is always retained, but -겠 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence</th>
<th>Indirect quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“밥 먹어라.”</td>
<td>밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“같이 보자.”</td>
<td>같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some samples that compare indirect quotes in various styles to their direct quote counterparts. (The honorific suffix -시 can be added depending on who is making the report to whom, regardless of whether it originally appeared in the speech being reported – see ch. 2.)

“밥 먹어라.”  
→ 밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.  
I told her to eat.

“같이 보자.”  
→ 같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.  
I suggested that we see it together.

NOTE: The suffix -되었 is always retained, but -겠 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence</th>
<th>Indirect quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“밥 먹어라.”</td>
<td>밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“같이 보자.”</td>
<td>같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some samples that compare indirect quotes in various styles to their direct quote counterparts. (The honorific suffix -시 can be added depending on who is making the report to whom, regardless of whether it originally appeared in the speech being reported – see ch. 2.)

“밥 먹어라.”  
→ 밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.  
I told her to eat.

“같이 보자.”  
→ 같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.  
I suggested that we see it together.

NOTE: The suffix -었 is always retained, but -겠 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence</th>
<th>Indirect quote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“밥 먹어라.”</td>
<td>밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“같이 보자.”</td>
<td>같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some samples that compare indirect quotes in various styles to their direct quote counterparts. (The honorific suffix -시 can be added depending on who is making the report to whom, regardless of whether it originally appeared in the speech being reported – see ch. 2.)

“밥 먹어라.”  
→ 밥 먹으라(고) 그랬어요.  
I told her to eat.

“같이 보자.”  
→ 같이 보자(고) 그랬어요.  
I suggested that we see it together.
“내 생일이 언제인지 알아요?” 하고 물었다.
*He asked, ’Do you know when my birthday is?’*
→ 자기 생일이 언제인지 아나고 물었다.
*He asked whether I know his birthday.*

선생님이 “호텔 직원이 친절했어요?”라고 물으셨다.
*The teacher asked, ’Were the hotel employees kind?’*
→ 선생님이 호텔 직원이 친절한냐고 물으셨다.
*The teacher asked whether the hotel employees were kind.*

“파티에 같이 갈래?” 하고 물더라.
*’Do you want to go to the party with me?’, he asked.*
→ 파티에 같이 가겠냐고 물더라.
*He asked me whether I would go to the party with him.*

점원이 “학생이신가요?” 하고 묻더라구요.
*The store clerk asked, ’Are you a student?’*
→ 점원이 학생이냐고 묻더라구요.
*The store clerk asked whether I’m a student.*

나한테 “다음에 또 오세요”라고 분명히 말했어요.
*He clearly said to me, ’Please come again next time.’*
→ 나한테 다음에 또 오라고 분명히 말했어요.
*He clearly said to me to come again next time.*

### 22.1.3 주다 and indirect quotes

The verb 주다 is quoted in a special way when it is used for commands and requests.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original sentence ('give it to ME’ or ‘do it for ME’)</th>
<th>Indirect quote (followed by 했다, 그랬다, 부탁했다, etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“(해) 주십시오”</td>
<td>(해) 주십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“(해) 주세요”</td>
<td>(해) 주십시오 or (해) 달라고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“(해) 줘요”</td>
<td>(해) 달라고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“(해) 줘”</td>
<td>(해) 달라고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“(해) 줄래?”</td>
<td>(해) 달라고 or (해) 주겠다고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“(해) 주시겠어요?”</td>
<td>(해) 달라고 or (해) 주시겠어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

주십사 (not 주시라) is used in indirect quotes when the person to whom the command/request is directed merits an honorific form.

사장님께 “꼭 전화 주십시오”하고 부탁 드렸습니다.
*I asked the president, ’Please make sure to give me a call.’*
사장님께 꼭 전화 주십사(고) 부탁 드렸습니다.
I asked the president to make sure to give me a call.

교수님께 “추천서 좀 써 주세요” 하고 부탁 드렸어.
I asked the professor, ‘Please write a recommendation letter for me.’

교수님께 추천서 좀 써 주십사(고) 부탁 드렸어.
I asked the professor to write a recommendation letter for me.

 Elsewhere 달라 is used, including when the -시 used in the original sentence is a marker of courtesy rather than a marker of honorification.

“여기 해장국 하나 주세요.” (courtesy -시 in 주세요 to a younger waitress)
‘Please give me one haejangkuk (morning soup).’

내가 저 아가씨한테 해장국 하나 달라고 부탁했어.
I asked the waitress to give us a haejangkuk.

나 좀 도와 주시나요? 
He was saying, ‘Please do me a favor.’

자기 좀 도와 달라 그러더라. 
He was asking to do him a favor.

These exceptional changes of the command/request forms of 주다 into 주십사 and 달라 take place only when the person making the request is also the beneficiary of the action. Notice the contrasts in the following three pairs of examples.

나 군밤 좀 갖다 줄래?
Mom told me to bring some roasted chestnuts to her. (Mom = her)

 엄마가 군밤 좀 갖다 달라(고) 그러셨어. (asker = beneficiary)
Mom told me to take some roasted chestnuts to her. (Mom = her)

할머니 군밤 좀 드려라
Mom told me to take some roasted chestnuts to Grandma.

In some cases, 달라 is used in place of 주라 in a question expressing an indirectly quoted request.

Question is understood as an indirect request:

“후추 좀 갖다 주시겠어요?”
Would you bring me the black pepper?

 웨이터한테 후추 좀 갖다 달라고 했어요.
I asked the waiter to bring me the black pepper.
Question is understood either as an inquiry or as an indirect request:

“저하고 결혼해 주시겠어요?”

Would you marry me?

→ 자기하고 결혼해 주겠냐고 물더라구요.

He was asking whether I would marry him.

“저하고 결혼해 주시겠어요?”

Would you marry me?

→ 자기하고 결혼해 달라(고) 그러더라구요.

He was asking me to marry him.

22.1.4 Various types of quoting verbs

In addition to the basic quoting verbs (했다, 그랬다, 물었다), an indirect quote can also be followed by any verb of saying or thinking and even by another clause.

- Followed by saying-type verbs

누나라고 불려.

Call me your sister.

자기서 범인이 아니라고 우긴다.

He insists that he didn’t commit the crime.

잘했다고 칭찬해 주었다.

I praised him for doing a good job.

술을 입에 대지 않겠다고 맹세해.

Make the pledge that you’ll stop drinking.

다시는 늦지 말라고 경고했어.

I warned him not to be late again.

아이들을 잘 돌봐 달라고 신신당부했어.

I repeatedly asked her to take good care of the kids.

차 한 대 사담라고 노래를 한다.

He’s repeatedly asking me to buy him a car.

빨리하라고 재촉 좀 해요.

Please push him to do it fast.

- Followed by thinking-type verbs

반드시 성공할 거라고 확신한다.

I strongly believe that we’ll surely succeed.

불가능하다고 결론내렸습니다.

I concluded that it’ll be impossible.

일등할 거라곤 예측 못 했다.

I didn’t expect that we’d rank at the top.

열심히 한 덕분이라고 봄.

I think it was thanks to the hard work.

- Followed by a clause

몸이 좀 안 좋다고 보약 먹어요.

He’s taking herbal medicine because he’s not feeling too well.

한 학기 휴학하겠다고 이번학기 등록을 안 했어요.

She didn’t register this semester, saying that she’s taking a semester off.

너도나도 유학가겠다고 영어 배우느라 야단들이어요.

Everybody is crazy about learning English so they can study abroad.
추천서를 써 달라고 이메일이 왔어.

An e-mail message came asking me to write a recommendation for her.

음주운전하지 말라고 수차례 주의를 받았다.

I’ve received several warnings not to drive drunk.

22.1.5 Reduction of indirect quotes in colloquial speech or hearsay

A shortened quotative pattern is frequently used in colloquial speech. It makes use of reduced endings (without -고 하 or -고 그러) for each of the four speech styles – 간답니다 instead of 간다(고 하), 간단다 instead of 간다(고 그러), 간답니다, and so on. The reduced forms are often used to convey hearsay without the need to reveal the source of information.

Statements: ‘I hear/I heard…’; ‘They say…’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>존댓말 (Formal)</th>
<th>반말 (Casual)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>합나다 style</td>
<td>해요 style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간답니다</td>
<td>간대요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니답니다</td>
<td>아니레요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가답니다</td>
<td>가내요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가랍니다</td>
<td>가래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가답니다</td>
<td>가재요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: 간다더라 is frequently used instead of 간다(고 하)더라 (see 16.1.6).

Here are actual samples of reduced indirect quotes and of their direct quote counterparts. As with the regular report styles, -였 is always retained, but -껏 and -을 may be replaced as long as the intended meaning does not change. Thus, “안 갈래” may be quoted as 안 간대 or 안 가겠데, for example.

“오늘이 결혼기념일이야.”
→ 오늘이 결혼기념일이랍니다.

I hear that today is their wedding anniversary.

“결혼한 지 오래 됐어요.”
→ 결혼한 지 오래 됐다던데요.

I hear that it’s been a long time since they got married.

“밤에는 영하로 내려가겠습니다.”
→ 밤에는 영하로 내려가겠습니까.

According to the weather report, it will go below zero tonight.

“저녁에 좀 늦을 거예요.”
→ 형이 저녁에 좀 늦을 거예요 (or 늦을 거래요).

I heard that brother will be a bit late this evening.
“급방 갈 거야.”
→ 할아버지가 급방 오신댔어 (or 오실 거래).
  Grandpa said he’ll come soon.

“할머니, 언제 오실 거예요?”
→ 손녀딸이 나보고 언제 올 거내.
  My grand-daughter was asking me when I’ll be coming.

“중매 결혼하셨어요?”
→ 사람들이 나한테 중매결혼했네요.
  People ask whether I had an arranged marriage.

“당장 결혼합시다.”
→ 그 남자가 나보고 당장 결혼하ጄ다.
  He’s asking me to marry him right away.

“늦지 마세요.”
→ 집사람이 나보고 오늘 늦지 말랬는데...
  My wife told me not to be late today.

“전화 받아라.”
→ 언니, 할머니가 전화 받으라서.
  Sis, Grandma is telling you to answer the phone.

“전화 받으세요.”
→ 할머니, 언니가 전화 받으시래요.
  Grandma, sister is telling you to answer the phone.

“오빠보고 나한테 전화 좀 해 달라 그래.”
→ 오빠, 언니가 전화 좀 해 달래.
  Brother, sister is asking you to give her a call.

“오빠보고 나한테 전화 좀 해 달라 그래.”
→ 오빠, 할머니가 전화 좀 해 달라서.
  Brother, Grandma is asking you to give her a call.

The following examples illustrate reported speech that occurs inside questions.

내일 비 온답니까?  Did they say it will rain tomorrow?
혼자 오래요?        Did they ask you to come by yourself?
같이 가겠니?        Did he ask you go with him?
왜 오셨어요?         Why did you tell me to come?
저 사람 누구래요?     Who do they say that person is?
뭐가 그렇게 바쁘대니? Why does he say he’s so busy?
This reduced form is used only to quote something oneself; it cannot be used to ask someone to convey a quote to someone else. For that, a quoting verb is required — 오빠한테 전화 왔다(고) 그래 ‘Tell brother that there’s a phone call for him,’ 할아버지한테 먼저 드시라(고) 그래 ‘Tell Grandpa to go ahead and eat first,’ and so on.

The reduced form -단다 or -(이)란다 can be employed to indicate emphasis (‘I’m telling you,’ ‘you know’) as in 어제는 너무 펌곤해서 온종일 잠만 졌단다 ‘I slept all day yesterday, you know, because I was too tired,’ 오늘이 이모부 생일이란다 ‘Today is your uncle’s birthday.’

22.1.6 Special patterns involving indirect quotes

For the purposes of confirmation or clarification, the verb following a quote is sometimes omitted, leaving just -고 to end the sentence — 언제 오신다고(요)? ‘When did you say you’re coming?’ (See 17.6.1 for more on special endings involving quotes.)

The quoted part of a sentence is often followed directly by a conjunctive suffix. For example, -다면서 or -(이)라면서 is used to request confirmation of information that the speaker heard from someone else.

하와이는 한여름에도 그렇게 덥지 않단단요?
I hear that Hawaii is not too hot even in the middle of the summer, is that true?

약혼한 사이라면서?
I heard that you two are engaged, are you?

Here are more examples in which the quote is followed by a conjunctive suffix.

이집이 맛있다기에 한 번 와 보였어요.
Because I hear this place is delicious, I thought I’d come and try it.

쌤으시다 멋지 저희 집에서 차 한잔 하시겠어요?
If it’s okay with you, would you like to have a cup of tea at my place?

이게 얼마나하면 자그마치 네 한 달 응돈 두배 값이야.
Do you know how much this is; it’s twice as much as your monthly allowance.

비온다 더니 좀 뽀뽀 난데요.
I heard it would rain, but it’s only bright and sunny.

이 근처에 아주 잘하는 한국식당이 하나 있는데.
I hear that there’s a very good Korean restaurant around here.
22.2 Adnominal clauses

Adnominal clauses, which are formed with the help of a special set of suffixes (see 16.2.2), provide information about the noun to their right – 청바지가 잘 어울리는 여자 ‘a girl who looks good in blue jeans’ or 이해심이 많은 남자 ‘a guy who is very understanding.’

No matter how long the adnominal clause is (it can be very long in writing), it always precedes the noun it describes. The entire portion of the sentence that comes before the noun (boldfaced in the example below) is a clause that describes it.

혹독한 다이어트로 7 킬로그램을 감량, 77 사이즈의 의상을 55 사이즈로 바꿔 놓은 후 영화 ‘위대한 사랑’에서 색시한 몸매를 과시한 김선희도 운동의 중요성을 강조했다.

Sunhee Kim, who lost 15 pounds through a strict diet, changing her dress size from 77 to 55 and showing off her sexy figure in the movie ‘Great Love,’ also emphasized the importance of exercise.

It’s also important to remember that there can be more than one adnominal clause for the same noun:

여기가 바로 어제 책을 산, 서울에서 제일 큰 서점이다.

This is the very bookstore where I bought a book yesterday, which is the biggest in Seoul.

22.2.1 Types of adnominal clauses based on the noun described

For purposes of illustration, we divide adnominal clauses into several types, depending on the sort of noun that they occur with.

• Ordinary nouns:
(Notice that prepositions in the English translations have no counterparts in the following Korean adnominal clauses.)

아는 여자 the woman that I know
훌던 날씨 the weather that was cold
학생들이 잘 가는 식당 the restaurant that students frequently go to
비밀을 털어 놓을 친구 a friend that one can tell secrets to
과일 깐다는 칼 the knife that one peels fruit with
살빠지는 약 diet pill [medicine with which one loses weight]
사람 보는 눈 insight into people [eyes with which one judges people]
키스하는 장면 the scene in which they kiss
졸업한 학교 the school one graduated from
지진이 일어난 시간  the time at which the earthquake hit
결혼할 사람  the person to whom one will get married; or 
the person who will marry

• Nouns that indicate a general class:
거/것 is employed for a concrete thing, 일 for an abstract thing, and 데/곳 for a place. (곳 sounds formal compared to 데.)

국립박물관에 볼 것이 많아요.  There are a lot of things to see in the National Museum.
가장 매웠던 건 떡볶이였어요.  The most spicy thing was ttŏkbokki.
어차피 알게 되실 일이에요.  It’s something you’ll get to find out anyhow.
어제 밥 먹으러 간 데가 어디지?  Where was it that we went to eat yesterday?
뜻이 있는 곳에 길이 있다.  Where there’s a will, there’s a way.

• Nouns that sum up and/or classify the adnominal clause:
일주일에 한 번씩 젖질방에 가는 게 습관이 됐다.  (게 < 것이)
It has become my habit to go to the sauna once a week.
그냥 한 번 해 본 소리예요.  It’s something that I just said without any particular intention.
주식값이 뛰 확률이 높습니다.  There’s a high probability that the stock price will jump.
사람들과 어울리기 싫어하는 경향이 있어요.  He has a tendency not to like to mingle with people.
그 선수의 장점은 왼손잡이인 점이다.  That player’s strength is the fact that he is left-handed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambiguity in the meaning of 거/것</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>내일 먹을 거예요.  That’s the thing to eat tomorrow. (concrete thing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보낼 거 없어요.  There’s nothing to send. (concrete thing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll eat it tomorrow. (fact)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s no need to send it. (fact)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Nouns that indicate a result
비오는 소리예요.  It’s the sound of the rain falling.
고기 타는 냄새가 난다.  I smell the odor of meat burning.
 궐했던 차국이예요.  It’s a scar from the stitches.
• **Special nouns**

The following (mostly bound) nouns combine with adnominal clauses to create special patterns. The exact meaning of each noun is often difficult to identify.

이왕 온 김에 며칠 더 쉬다 갑시다.
*While we’re here, let’s take a few more days of break before going back.*

말 나온 김에 지금 하는 게 어릴까요?
*While we’re on the subject, what about doing it now?*

아예 막 본 김에 제사 지내지요.
*Since we have what we need, why don’t we go ahead and do it?*

[Since we have the rice cake, why don’t we hold the memorial service?]

일이 항상 마음 먹은 대로 되는 건 아니야.
*Things don’t always turn out the way we wish.*

소식 듣는 대로 나한테 좀 알려 주.
*Let me know as soon as you hear any news.*

밀리 괴서를 가는 대신 근처 계곡에서 하루 놀다 왔어요.
*Instead of going to a far-away summer resort, we spent a day at a nearby valley.*

많은 분들이 도와 주셔서 감사할 따름입니다.
*I can only be thankful for the help from so many people.*

외동딸인 나로선 형제 많은 친구가 부러울 따름이다.
*As an only child, I can’t help envying friends with lots of siblings.*

나 자신도 못 믿는 마당에 누구를 믿겠어?
*How can I trust anyone when I can’t even trust myself?*

해질 무렵에 경치가 제일 멋있어요.
*The scenery around sunset is the most beautiful.*

그거야 내가 알 바 아니지.
*That’s none of my business.*

들리는 바에 의하면, 그 친구가 해고당했데요.
*From what I hear, he was laid off.*

말씀 듣린 바와 같이, 다음 주에 모임을 갖겠습니다.
*As I announced before, we’ll be having a meeting next week.*

굶어 죽으란 법은 없다.
*We’re not going to starve to death.*

여자만 일하라는 법이 어디 있어?
*Who says only women have to work?*

퇴학을 당할 법도 하죠.
*He deserves to be expelled from school.*

먹는 쪽 쪽 살이 쎄다.
*Every time I eat anything, it adds to my weight.*
Every time I earned any money, I used it up.

It’s been a long time since I lost my job.

It’s been only a year since I changed my major.

It’s so tough that I’m on the verge of dying.

In fact, I was just about to call you.

I was actually hungry, so it’s great. Let’s go eat together.

I entered the sea with my clothes on.

I passed by, pretending that I didn’t recognize her.

You know, he saw me but pretended that he didn’t notice me.

Why would he hate you for no reason?

How would I know that?

I can’t read the book with the children making so much noise.

Nouns such as 사실, 소문, 말, 소리, -거/것, and so on are often accompanied by a preceding quote or report followed by an adnominal suffix. These constructions are useful in situations such as the following.

• To express the nature (fact, rumor, etc.) of a quote/report

They still don’t know the fact that their son died in the war.

I heard a rumor that she’s taking drugs.

There was not even a single congratulatory word, although it’s my birthday.

She asked me more than a dozen times to break up with her.
How do we barge in when there wasn’t even a word inviting us to the party?

Have you already forgotten our promise not to break up till death?

I received advice to learn a song before I go there.

The news that the tsunami occurred was really shocking.

The report that the company president received bribes hit the newspaper headlines.

Present some evidence that I broke the law.

To quote a proverb (see 12.1.4)

One cannot scratch one’s own back.’

[A monk can’t cut his own hair.]

There is a saying that life begins at 40.

So-called democracy is...

I forgot the fact that there’s a time difference.

I’m telling you that I don’t want to meet him.

He doesn’t have a job to speak of.

the belief that it will get done if you do it

extremely competent and successful person

influential family

22.3 -지 clauses

-지 clauses are used to express questions, conjectures, things that one knows or doesn’t know, and so on. They are built with the help of an adnominal suffix on the clause and -지, and are typically followed by verbs such as 알다, 모르다, and 물어보다.

Do you know where he lives?

I don’t know whether (or not) she is home.

influential family
22.3.1 What’s inside -지 clauses

Here are some examples of -지 clauses involving various types of verbs.

- With an action verb (오다):

언제 오는지 아니?  
언제 왔는지 몰라요.  
언제 왔었는지 기억 안 나요.  
비가 어찌나 오던지 안 보일 정도였어요.  
비가 얼마나 왔던지 차들이 다 물에 잡겼어요.  
언제 울지/울는지 몰라요.  
언제 오겠는지/올래는지 물어봐.  
이미 왔을지도/왔을는지도 몰라.

Do you know when he’s coming?  
I don’t know when he came.  
I don’t remember when he came (and left).  
It was raining so hard that I couldn’t see anything.  
It rained so much that all the cars were under water.  
I don’t know when he’ll come.  
Ask when he’ll be coming.  
He may have come already.

- With descriptive verbs (좋다 and -이다):

날씨가 좋은지 모르겠다.  
날씨가 완았는지 모르겠네.  
날씨가 얼마나 완았었는지 놀라.  
날씨가 어찌나 좋았던지 사람들 다 바닷가에 나왔더라.  
언제가 좋을지/좋을는지 모르겠어.  
다음주가 좋겠는지 한 번 여쭤봐.  
지난주가 더 좋아했음지도/ 좋아했을는지도 몰라요.

I wonder whether the weather is good.  
I wonder whether the weather was good.  
I can’t believe how good the weather was.  
The weather was so good that everyone came out to the beach.  
I don’t know when will be a good time.  
Ask whether next week will be okay.  
Last week might have been better.

어떤 사람인지 궁금해요.  
어떤 사람이었(었)는지 알고 싶다.  
어찌나 작한 사람이었(었)던지 지금도 생각나요.  
나쁜 사람일지도/일는지도 놀라.  
누가 적합한 사람이겠는지 알아봐.  
좋은 사람이었을지도/이었을는지도 모르죠.

I’m curious what kind of person she is.  
I want to know what kind of person she was.  
She was such a nice person that I still remember her.  
She may be a bad person.  
Find out who’ll be suitable for it.  
She might have been a good person.

NOTE: The above examples include two special patterns: 어찌나/ 얼마나…-지 ‘so…(that…)’ and -지도 모른다 ‘might; be possible.’
22.3.2 What’s outside -지 clauses

Various types of verbs other than 알다, 모르다, and 물어보다 can follow -지 clauses.

연세가 어떻게 되시는지 맞춰 봐.  
Guess how old he is.

커피맛이 어떻게 되는지 기억나?  
Do you remember how the coffee tasted?

왜 그런지 조사해 보자.  
Let’s investigate why that is the case.

어떤 선물이 좋을지 생각해 봐.  
Think about what would be good for a gift.

몇 명이나 몇 공격이 안 된다.  
I can’t figure out how many are coming.

어디를 갈지 망설이고 있어요.  
I’m hesitating on where I should go.

어ithmetic 됐지 빠하다.  
It’s obvious how it’s going to end up.

불을지 떨어질지 미지수예요.  
It’s still to be seen whether I’ll pass or fail.

In some cases, there is no following verb, creating a gentle question.

어제 보낸 메일은 받으셨는지요?  
I wonder whether you received the mail I sent yesterday – did you?

요즘 어떻게 지내시는지요?  
How are you doing these days?

-지 clauses are also often followed by particle phrases such as -에 대해(서)/관해(서) ‘as to; with regard to.’

어떤 직장을 구할지에 대해서 고민 중입니다.  
I am thinking hard as to what type of job I should find.

-지 sometimes alternates with -줄 when the verb that follows an indirect question is 알다 or 모르다.

몇 살인지 몇 살인줄 알아요?  
Do you know how old I am?

여행간지/여행간줄 알아어요.  
I knew (or thought) you went on a trip.

이렇게 좋은지 좋은줄 몰랐어요.  
I didn’t know it’s this good.

When 알다 follows a -지 clause, it can be ambiguous between ‘know’ and ‘think.’

여행간지 알고 있었어. 그래서 전화 안 했어.  
I knew you were gone on a trip. So I didn’t call.

여행간지 알았는데 집에 있었네.  
I thought you were gone on a trip but hey, you were home.
22.4 Nominalization

Nominalization allows a verb or a clause to function as a noun. There are two ways to do this.

22.4.1 By attaching -음 (or -ㅁ)

Except for simple nouns such as 웃음 ‘laughing,’ 싸움 ‘a fight,’ and so on, this type of nominalization is usually employed for an abstract proposition or a completed action. It has a formal and written flavor. (See 10.4.1 for simple nouns.)

친구의 소중함을 알게 되었다.  
I realized the importance of friends.

그 사람이 무죄임이 판명됐다.  
His being not guilty has been proved (by the verdict).

날씨가 추워짐에 따라 난방비 걱정이 늘고 있습니다.  
As the weather gets colder, concern about heating bills is increasing.

우편 분실사고에 대하여 영사관에서는 책임이 없음을 알려드립니다.  
We’d like to let you know that the consulate is not responsible for lost mail.

남자친구임에 틀림없다.  
There’s no doubt that he is her boyfriend.

NOTE: Some of the -음 patterns can be replaced by an adnominal pattern involving -거/것, which tends to be more colloquial.

친구가 소중한 걸 알게 되었다.  
I realized that friends are important.

그 사람이 무죄인 것이 판명됐다.  
It’s been proved that he’s not guilty.

남자친구임에 틀림없다.  
There’s no doubt that he is her boyfriend.

-음 is often used to mark an abbreviated sentence in brochures, public announcements, notes, and letters. It is also used when closing a letter to a superior/older person.

연령제한 없음    No age restriction.
가정교사 구함    Private tutor wanted.
개인상장품 수여함 a certificate granted for perfect attendance
회사로 갈게요. (오늘 수업이 없음) I’ll go to your workplace. (No class today.)
서하늘 올림/드림 Respectfully, Hanul Seo (in closing a letter)

22.4.2 By attaching -기

Except for simple nouns such as 크기 ‘size,’ 보기 ‘sample,’ and so on, a nominalization of this type is used to express an act or a fact. It retains its
actional or stative meaning, even though it functions as a noun. This style of nominalization is more common in colloquial Korean.

Here are some examples of -기 nominalizations organized according to what they are followed by. Many of these patterns are worth learning by heart.

- **Followed by a particle**
  
  이 옷은 행동하기(가) 불편하다. This outfit is uncomfortable to move in.
  사람 만나기를 꺼려요. He’s reluctant about meeting people.
  나를 알기를 우습게 알아. She thinks little of me.
  걸이 좋기는 한데 너무 비싸다. It’s good quality, but too expensive.
  스탬프를 제거하기 좋은 방법이다. It’s a good way to release the stress.
  그 집은 요리 잘하기로 소문났어. The restaurant is famous for its food.
  잠자코 듣기만 해. Don’t say anything, just listen.
  시원하기도 하고 섭섭하기도 I feel relieved and sad at the same time.
  하고 그렇죠. I guess. (It’s bittersweet.)

- **Followed by a noun**
  
  거짓말하기 없기예요. You’re NOT going to lie, okay?
  생각하기 나름이죠. It depends on how you think, of course.

- **Followed by -이다**
  
  정말 그리기야? 혼자 먹기야? Are you really going to do that? Are you going to eat without me?
  거짓말하기 없기예요. You’re NOT going to lie, okay?
  방청권 얻기는 하늘에 별따기다. It’s impossible to get a ticket for the show.
  엇구리 채러 절받기다. (= 엇드려 절받기) It’s like fishing for compliments. [Forcing someone to bow to you. (Receiving a bow while lying down)]
  땅짚고 헤엄치기야. It’s a piece of cake. [Swimming while touching the ground with one’s hands.]

Some -기 patterns can be replaced by the adnominal pattern involving -거/것.

- **Followed by a particle**
  
  늦기가 일하기보다 어렵다. To play is harder than to work.
  노는 게 일하는 것보다 어렵다. Playing is harder than working.

However, some -기 patterns cannot be replaced in this way. Notice the difference in meaning and acceptability illustrated in the following pairs.

- **Followed by a noun**
  
  고기 먹기(가) 좋다. This meat is easy to eat.
  고기 먹는 게 좋다. (게 < 것이) Meat eating is good; I like to eat meat.
여기서 수영하기(가) 좋다.  
여기서 수영하는 게 좋다.  
비오기(가) 쉬워.  
(no appropriate -는 것 counterpart)  
(no appropriate -기 counterpart)  
걸어가는 게 낫겠다.  

*Here is good for swimming.*  
*I like to swim here.*  
*It’s likely to rain.*  
*I think it’ll be better to walk.*
English Index

abbreviations 115–16, 118
address terms 32–37
  address terms vs. reference terms
  family members 35–37
  non-family members 32–34
adnominal clauses 308–12
  tense and aspect 211–14
aspect (see tense and aspect)
classifiers (see counters)
clipping 118
commands
  honorifics 21–22
  negation 236
  sentence endings 7–8
comparison 269–75
  differences 273–74
  equality and similarity 269–72
  proportions and gradation 275
  superlatives 274–75
compounding 93–95
  compound nouns 93–94
  compound verbs 94–95
conjunctives 276–98
  background 279–80
  cause/reason 286–90
  concession 294–97
  condition 293–94
  contrast 297–98
  equal status clauses 276–79
  intention/purpose 290–91
  purpose/result 291–92
  tense and aspect 205–06
  time 272–78
  unequal status clauses 279–98
counters (classifiers) 170–72
  (see also numbers)
daily situations (see formulaic expressions)
direct objects
  choice of particles 246–48
expressions denoting feeling/touch
  163–65
fillers 56–58
formulaic expressions 46–55
  apologies 50–51
  condolences 52–53
  congratulations 55
  encouragement 52–53
  ‘excuse me’ 51–52
  good wishes 55
  greetings 46–47
  invitations 53
  leave-taking 47–48
  offers 53
  regrets 50–51
  telephone expressions 53–54
honorifics 17–31
  and complex verbs 25–26
  and impersonal language 31
  and sentence endings 20–21
  and tricky subjects 24–25
  commands and proposals 21–22
  honorific nouns 29–30
  honorific particles 30
  object-honorific verbs 26–28
  statements and questions 17–19
  subject-honorific verbs 22–23
  subject honorification and –섯 17–26
idioms 136–50
  based on animals/insects 145–46
  based on body parts 139–43
  based on food/taste/eating/cooking 143–45
  based on other factors 146–48
  figurative uses of verbs 148–50
  four-syllable Sino-Korean idioms 136–39
interjections 64–66
intransitive verbs 188–93 (see also verbs)
  with the -어요/어요/ società suffix 188–90
  with 지다 190–92
  with 되다 192–93
  others 193–94
loan words 89–92
  and grammar 92
  and innovations 89
and phonetic changes 91–92
local dialects 75–77
Cheju 77
Cheolla 75–76
Ch’ungch’ŏng 75
Hamgyŏng 77
Kyŏngsang 76
P’yŏng’an 77

mimetic expressions 157–63
and appearance 157–59
and behavior/motion/manner 160–63
modality 222–23
ability 215–16
deserving quality 226
desire/wish 225
doubt 225
evidentiality 226–29
exclamatory 231–32
explanatory, emphatic 230–31
‘nearly/almost’ 225–26
obligation/necessity 222
permission 220–21
possibility 223–24
prohibition 221
regret 224–25
requests 219
suggestions/advice/instructions 220

negation 233–39
double negation 238
expressions requiring 238–39
fixed expressions 234–35
negative prefixes 236
of commands and proposals 236
of complex verb constructions 235–36
short vs. long 233–34
with positive meaning 237–38
nominalization 315–17
numbers 166–80
and plurality 180
and transportation 178
approximate quantities 178
arithmetic/fractions 177
cardinal 166–67
counters 170–72
counting 169–73
money/currency 177

native 166
native vs. Sino-Korean 169–78
ordinal 166, 168
Sino-Korean 167–68
time/date/age 175–76
units of measurement 173–75

onomatopoeia 152–57
and animal sounds 152
and human sounds 152–54
and inanimate objects/forces 155–57

particles 240–68
contrast 243–46
name 243
omission of 240
topic 243–44
(see also subjects, direct objects)

prefixation 96–100
pronouns 37–45
first person pronouns 38
indefinite pronouns 44–45
reflexive pronouns 43
second person pronouns 38–40
third person pronouns 40–42

propositions
and negation 236
honorifics 22
sentence endings 8–9

proverbs 126–36
how to use proverbs 129–36
with approximate English equivalents 127–28
with identical English equivalents 126–27
unique to Korean 128–29

quantity
non-numerical 178–79
numerical (see numbers)

questions
honorifics 20
sentence endings 3–7
quoted clauses 299–307
and 302–04
and colloquial speech/hearsay 305–07
direct 299–300
indirect 300–04
quoting verbs 304–05
reduplication 95–96
reported clauses (see quoted clauses)

sentence endings 3–16
  casual style 3–9, 11–12, 14–15
  formal style 3–9
  minor styles 15–16
  politeness vs. distance 4
  speech vs. writing 11–12
softening strategies 67–74
  use of questions 67–68
  use of special endings 71–72
  use of special verbs 68–71
  others 73–74
sound symbolism (see onomatopoeia,
  mimetic expressions, expressions
denoting feeling/touch)
statements
  honorifics 20–21
  sentence endings 3–7
styles (see sentence endings)
subjects
  and honorifics 17–26
  choice of particles 241–46
suffixation 100–115
  creating a noun 100
  creating an adverb 102–04
  creating a descriptive verb 101
  relating to address terms 104–05
  relating to classification 109–11
  relating to language and writing
    112–13
  relating to monetary transactions
    111–12
  relating to people 105–08
  relating to place/institution 108–09
  relating to quantity/approximation
    114–15
  relating to speaker’s perception/
    emotion 113–14
  (see also intransitive verbs, transitive
  verbs)
tense and aspect 199–218
  and adnominal constructions 211–14
  and conjunctive constructions 211
  and sentence-final verbs 199–210
  beginning/changing into 214–15
  completion 215–17
  continuation 215
  experience 217
  habit 218
  repetition 218
transition expressions 58–64
transitive verbs 194–99 (see also verbs)
  with the suffix-에요/어요/어요/어요/
    쓰 194–97
  with -게 하다 197–98
  with -מיד리다 198
  with 시키다 198
verbs 183–98
  action vs. descriptive 183–85
  English vs. Korean 186
  intransitive verbs 188–93
  intransitive vs. transitive 185
  of cleaning 124–25
  of playing 123–24
  of taking off 122
  of wearing 119–22
  transitive verbs 194–99
  (see also intransitive verbs,
  transitive verbs)
vocabulary (see words)

word formation 93–118 (see also
  compounding, reduplication,
  prefixation, suffixation,
  abbreviations)
words 85–92
  native vs. Sino-Korean 85–88
  recently created 117–18
  (see also loan words)
writing 11–15
written vs. spoken language 78–82
  contraction 80–81
  honorifics 79
  particles 78–79
  pronouns 79
  sentence endings 78
  spelling–pronunciation mismatch
    81–82
  vocabulary 79
  (see also words)
Korean Index

<ㄱ>
-가 240–42
-같다 270
-같은 270
-같이 270
-거 같다 74, 227, 229
-거/것 309, 311–12
-거나 277
-거늘 297
-거니와 278–79
-거든 294
-거리다/대다 150
-건대 280
-건만 298
-것과는 달리 298
-것과는 대조적으로 298
-게
  adverb 103–04
  conjunctive 291–92
-게 되다 69–70, 215
-게 생기다 134, 228
-게 아닌데 225
-게 하다 197–98
-게/기 마련이다 133
-겠 207–10, 228–29
-고
  conjunctive 276–78, 282–83
  quote/report 300–04
-고나 231
-구나 232
-구(요) 72, 82
-군요 231
- 그렇게 ...-을 수가 없다 237
- 그렇게 70–71
-기 100, 317–17
-기 때문에 288
-기 시작하다 214
-기 위하여/위해 290
-기 좋아다 316–17
-기 (직)전 285
-기 짓이 없다 238
-기가 무섭게 284
-기까지 286
-기로서니 296
-기에 288
-길래 288
-김에 310
-까지 263–65
-께서 289
-께서 289
-께서 30, 255
-께서 30
-께서 267

<ㄴ>
-ㄴ (adnominal; see -은)
-나보다 228–29
-나요? 15, 72
-내(요) 15, 231
-느니 273
-느니...느니 277
-느라(고) 289
-는 (adnominal) 183, 212
-는 (topic/contrast; see -은/는)
-는 건대 224–25
-는 격이다 132
-는 게 어때? 220

-느(으)나 231
-느만 232
-느(으)요 72, 82
-느(으)군요 231
-느키가 ...-을 수가 없다 237
-느키다 70–71
-느기 100, 317–17
-느기 때문에 288
-느기 시작하다 214
-느기 위하여/위해 290
-느기 좋아다 316–17
-느기 (직)전 285
-느기 짓이 없다 238
-느기가 무섭게 284
-느기까지 286
-느기로서니 296
-느기에 288
-느길래 288
-느김에 310
-느기까지 263–65
-느리(으)나 289
-느리(으)나 30, 255
-느리(으)나 30
-느리(으)나 267

-느(으)로 231
-느(으)만 232
-느(으)요 72, 82
-느(으)군요 231
-느(으)키가 ...-을 수가 없다 237
-느(으)키다 70–71
-느(으)기 100, 317–17
-느(으)기 때문에 288
-느(으)기 시작하다 214
-느(으)기 위하여/위해 290
-느(으)기 좋아다 316–17
-느(으)기 (직)전 285
-느(으)기 짓이 없다 238
-느(으)기가 무섭게 284
-느(으)기까지 286
-느(으)기로서니 296
-느(으)기에 288
-느(으)길래 288
-느(으)김에 310
-느(으)기까지 263–65
-느(으)리(으)나 289
-느(으)리(으)나 30, 255
-느(으)리(으)나 30
-느(으)리(으)나 267
-는 대로 284
-는 바람에 288–89
-는 반면에 298
-는 벌이다 133
-는 순간 284
-는 즉시 284
-는 통에 311
-는 한 294
-는계 298
-는/은 거다 230
-는/은 테도 (불구하고) 295
-는/은 적이 있다/없다 217
-는/은 편이다 74
-는/은테 279–80, 298
-니까 280, 286–88
-님 36, 104

<ㄷ>
-다 (exclamatory) 231
-다(가) 211, 285
-다/나/자/라구요 231
-다/나/자/라니? 231
-다/나/자/라니까 231
-다…-다 한다 285
-다고 132, 289, 300–04
-다는 거 아니니? 231
-다는 거/말 130
-다더니 131
-다다라(구요) 227
-다든지…-다든지 278
-다면 293
-다면서? 307
-다시피 했다 226
-다시피 한다 226
-다잡아 131
-단/난/편/편 말이다 231
-단다 305–07
달라고 302–04
-담/는담 232
-담니다 305–07
-담다 101

KOREAN INDEX

-당하다 193
-대로 284, 310
-대신 310
-댄다 227, 305
-대(요) 305–07
-더 273
-더 205–207
-더니 280, 307
-더하(구요) 82, 205–06
-더라도 295
-더러 255
-던 213
-던 잘라 311
-던가 retrospective 205
‘or’ 278
-던하(요) 205
-털 273
-테(요) 71, 205, 231
-도 248–49
-도…-고…-도 278
-도 아니고 -도 아니다 235
-도록 292–92
-도록 하다 220
-도중에 281–82
-도안(에) 281
-또 298
-되다 192–93 (see also -계 되다)
-든지 278
-둘 266
-뜻 하다/싶다 227
-뜻(이) 270
-더? 205–06
-따라 268
-뜨리다 198

<ㄹ>
-ㄹ (adnominal; see -을)
-라고 299, 302
-돌다 101
-를 (see -을/를)
-리 (adverb) 102
-리가 없다 224
-리다 16

<ㅁ>
-ㅁ (see -음)
-마다 266
-마저 264
-만 260–62
-만…-게 아니라 279
-만 큼 269
-만하다 269
-맞다 101, 193
-면 된다 220
-면 안 됨? 221
-면 안 된다 221
-면 안 했을텐데 224
(면) -을수록 275
-모양이다 228–229
못 223, 233–36
및 258

<ㅂ>
-밖에 260–62
-보고 255
-보다 273
-부터 262–63
-뿐 261

<ㅅ>
-사이(에) 281
-수(가) 있다/없다 223
-수밖에 없다 222
-스럽다 101
-시 (honorific) 17–26, 30–31
-시 (time) 282
시키다 198
-써 34, 104–05
-쓰 266
-씩이나 265

안 233–36
 아니고/아니라 235
 아니 다 235
-앗/쓰 (see -엇)
-어 가다 215
-어 가지고/갖고 288–89
-어 내다 215
-어 놓다 216–17
-어 대다 218
-어 두다 216–17
-어 버리하다 218
-어 버리다 216
-어 보다 69, 95, 217
-어 보이다 228–29
-어 본 역사가 없다 217
-어 봤자 296
-어 쌓다 218
-어 오다 215
-어 있다 200–01, 203
-어 주다 68, 219, 302–04
-어 치우다 216
-어(라) 219
-어(서) 282–83, 286–88
-어다 284
-어도 294–95
-어도 펼차다 220–21
-어도 된다 220–21
여섯개 73
-어서 282, 286–88
-어서라도 295
-어선 안 된다 221
-어/야 (see -어)
-어야 296
-어아 되는 거 아니니 237
-어아 되다 222
-어아 하다 222
-어아(만) 294
-어지다 184, 190–92, 215
-어치 115
얼마나 -지 모른다 237
-었 201–04
-었겠 208
-었다(가) 285
-었다 205–07
-었더니 280
-었더라면 293
-엇던 213
-었던들 293
-었어야 된다 224
-었어야 한다 224
-었었 204–05
-었으면 좋겠다 225
-었으면 한다 225
-었을 214
-었을 거 208
-었을까(요) 208
-에 250–53
-에 따라 275
-에 비해/비하면 273
-에게(서) 255
-에다(가) 250
-에서 253–54, 262–63
-에/과 258–60
-(으)나 (contrast) 297
-(으)나 ‘(or’) 277
-(으)나마 297
-(으)라…-(으)라 277
-(으)려 290
-(으)려고 290
-(으)러니와 278–79
-(으)로 256–58, 102
-(으)마 16
-(으)며 276
-(으)면 293
-(으)면…-었지 297
-(으)면…-을entine/(으)런만 224, 293
-(으)면서 281, 298
-(으)므로 289
-은 (topic/contrast; see -은/는)
-은 (adnominal) 183, 212
-은 다음 286
-은 뒤 286
-은 즉 280
-은 후 286
-은 반면에 298
-은가 보다 228–29
-은가요? 72
-은/는 243–46
-은/는 커녕 (see -커녕)
-은들 296
-을 (adnominal) 213–14
-을 거 207–09, 229
-을 걸 (그랬다) 224
-을 걸 229
-을 것 229
-을 점 291
-을 경우 294
-을 때 281
-을 때까지 286
-을 만하다 226
-을 망정 296
-을 빼다 225–26
-을 뺀 아니라 278
-을 뺀더러 278
-을 생각 291
-을 채 291
-을 수 없다 221–23
-을 수 있다 221–23
-을 수 있을까? 221
-을 작정 291
-을 적에 281
-을 줄 모른다 223
-을 줄 안다 223
-을 지언정 296
-을 필요 없다 220
-을게(요) 207–08
-을까 (보다) 291
-을까 (하다) 74, 291
-을까(요) 207
-을까 싶다 74, 227
-을까봐 289–90
-울라 232
-을라고? 225
-을석 말략 한다 226
-을래(요) 207
-을/를 (direct object) 240, 246–48
-을지라도 295
-을면서 224, 229
-을 100, 315
-을에도 (불구하고) 295–96
-이 249
-이 (name) 243
-이 (subject; see -이/가)
-이/가 240–42
-(이)고 나발이고 276
-(이)고 뒤고 276–77
-(이)고…-(이)고 276
-(이)나 265–66
-(이)니…-(이)니 277
-(이)다 뭐다 277
-(이)라도/(이)어도 295
-(이)라면서? (see -다면서)
-(이)란다 307
-(이)랄지…-(이)랄지 278
-(이)랑 258–60
-(이)며…-(이)며 277
-(이)요 279
-(이)야 267
-(이)아말로 267
-(이)자 279
-이/히 (adverb) 102–03
-이/히/기/리 (passive) 186–90
-이/히/기/리/우/구/추 (causative) 194–97

-줄 223, 314
-중에 281–82
-지 (indirect questions) 312–14
-지 그래? 220
-지 (그랬어) 224
-지 마 221
-지 말다 236
-지 못하다 233–36
-지 싫다 227
-지 않다 233–36
-지 않으면 안 된다 222, 234
-지 않으 면 수가 없다 222
-지경 311
-지다 94 (see also -어저다)
-지도 모른다 223
-지도 않고 -지도 않다 235
-(지)도 -(지)도 못하다 235
-지만 297
-지요) 71
-짜리 115
-장 117
-체 115
-赞成 114

-차 290
-처럼 271
-체 311
-체 311
-커녕 267

-투성이 113
-하르고 (particle) 259–60
-하르고 (quote) 299, 302
-하며...하며 277
-한테 30, 255, 274
-한테서 255